

MICROFILMED-1976



additions ith Marsk's additions
ats
tavern, ton-ton-tavern sec. e morning

trooks to the field. Harc To uncouple the Hounds When the Hounds huntag A Recheate when the House The double Recheate The trebble or S' Hewits 9 The Earthing of a fox if rec If not to call away. The fox The death of a Hare. The death of a Buck The death of a Stage or Ho

The death of a fox The call for a Keeper in Pa The prize of a Hart Royall

The Staga a Game unknown Tounds hunt a right Game s Recheate recoverable The Hinde 000000 300 Hart. Park or forrest 100001-100001-100001-100

The Stroaks for the Terrier. The Badger To draw the Company out of A Recheate or farewell at Their State are Taugh The Otter

The Buck iers when the fox is earthed of the ffield at Parting -18nx Taught or Sould by Nichaell Huntfman at Holborne Bridge on The Ree Buck

GENTLEMAN'S Recreation:

In Four Parts,

VIZ.

HUNTING, FOWLING, HAWKING, FISHING.

Wherein these Generous Exercises are largely Treated of, and the Terms of Art for Hunting and Hawking more amply Enlarged than heretofore.

Whereto is prefixt a large Sculpture, giving easie Directions for blowing the Horn, and other Sculptures inserted proper to each Recreation.

With an Abstract at the end of each Subject of such Laws as relate to the same.

The Third EDITION,
With the Addition of a HUNTING-HORSE.

LONDON: Printed by Freeman Collins, for Nicholas Cox. 1 6 8 6.

Whereinster OTS PT Treating I most visually 20 520 THE THE STATE OF T 1 his of the state of th 95411 Literature in the Land and it propag to call florence i With as this east of the end of of fuch falue. s released The Third EDITI With the Addition of the Wife LOWDON: Print Press Nicholas Con. . 4 6 0

E

+ -4

To the Right Honourable

AMES

Earl of ABINGDON, BARON of RICOT, Lord NORREYES,

His Majesties Lord-Lieutenant

OXFORD-SHIRE.

My Lord,

F to admire Worth and Honour were a Crime, it would highly concern me to beg your ordships pardon for the refumption of this Address. For that's the Cause, A 2

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

this the Effect. It is true, the obscurity of my Condition, and remoteness of my Scituation, have placed me out of the reach of your Lordinips Knowledge; yet your Lordships Fame Ecchoing out of Oxford shire through all the very Corners of the Kingdom, could hardly escape my Fars, were I not particularly entitled to the same Coun-ty, which hath given me thereby the greater orportunity both to know, and admire the Greatness of your Generolity, the Magnificence of your Living, and Prudence of you

The Epifle Dedicatory.

e,

E H

of

ę;

re y y

s ie

Governing, adcompanied with all other Goalification ons and Endowhents requifite to render any perfon both Great and Good: Asalfo, that though your Lordship is a great improver of your own natural parts by your elaborate ftudies, and of others Know+ ledge by your Edifying Conversation, yet to obviate Idleness, and to antidote Sickness, as also the better to enapt your active Body to fuit your Loyal Mind for Martial Employments, should the concerns of your King and Country call you forth into the Field,

The Epifile Dedicatory.

your Lordship is a most in-defatigable user of all active Sports and Recreations, and confequently become the great Oracle and Master of them all, and all their Artful Terms. Under what other Wing then could this little Treatife on those Subjects so properly creep for shelter and Protection? Under no other certainly, wirhout some kind of Injustice to your Lordship, and real Injury to the Work it felf. Be pleased therefore a little to unbend your Thoughts (I humbly befeech your Lordship) from your more ferious Studies,

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

allowing your Eyes to run over these few Leaves, and either wouchfafe to correct their Errours; Cif any have escaped those Judicious Sports-men who have been pleased to be my Guilles in perusing this Work, and purging it from many Errors and Milakes of the former Edition) or stamp them with the unquestionable au-Approbation. This will oblige all true Lovers of the fame generous Recreations to become greedy purchafers of these Rules, both to improve their Knowledge, and reduce their Language

to

The Epitte Dedicates

to the famelignificant terms to the great fatisfaction of the Buyers and the benefit of Propriegor and Sellers who humbly craves leave to lay-himself-by your al-ord-Chips Beets in the quality in perufing this Work, and purging it from many Errors a self broth wet short the the self of the short of the self o Edition) or stamp them with the well auto coolers adding leaves how servant, lige all true Lovers of the fame generous Recreations established greedy purcha-fers of these Rules, both to improve their Knowledge, and reduce their Language

GENTLEMAN's Recreation:

OR, A

t

1

3

TREATISE

Giving the best Directions for

HUNTING,

AND

KILLING all manner of CHASES used in ENGLAND.

With the Terms of Art belonging thereunto.

ALSO,

A short Account of some peculiar Beasts not usually Hunted in ENGLAND.

First Collected from Antient and Modern Authors; and how very much Corrected and Enlarged by many Worthy and Experienced Artists of this Recreation.

With an Abstract of such Statute-Laws as relate to FORESTS and HUNTING.

The first Part.

London: Printed by J. C. and F. C. for N. C.

CENTLEMAN'S

I BITARIT

DATEMBE

Minife recent dated of CHASES

DELA M

A from a country the start of t

And the second of the second o

With a Abilitation food Standard 375

Che Fice Part.

to was a second of the second and the second

22242424242

ly babit of quitting ones fied early, and I ving to lit well and I ale upon an Horic. What inhoven and material delights and they, **A** hor of feeth the clay bestking forth those bladly search A of sewitish. Fores and

Wife of Brailes of the print by the of the of the of the control birds to a state of the order o

he draws in the fragrancy and conhele of the hir?
How folly is his spirit, when he will have to be largore
ted with the notic of Buela Force, and the brying

The Introduction.

dable not onely for Kings, Princes, and the Nobility, but likewise for private Gentlemen: And as it is a Noble and Healthy Pallime; fo it is a thing which hath been highly prized in all Ages.

Befides, Hinting trains up Youth to the use of manly Exercises in their riper Age, being encouraged thereto by the pleasure they take in hunting the Stag,
the Generous Buck, the Wilde Boar, the Canne Otter, the Crasty Fox, and the Fearful Hare; also the
catching of Vermin by Engines, as the Fitcher, the
Fulimum, the Ferrer, the Polecate, the Moldwarp, and the
like. Exercise herein preserveth Health, and increaseth
Strength and Activity. Others inflame the hot Splrits of young men with roving Ambition, love of
War, and feeds of Angers. But the Exercise of Hunting neither remits the Minde to Sloth for Softness,

nor (if it be used with moderation) hardens it to inhumanity; but rather inclines men to good Acquaintance and generous Society. It is no fmall advantage to be enured to bear Hunger, Thirft, and Weariness from ones Ghildhood; to take up a timely habit of quitting ones Bed early, and loving to fit well and fafe upon an Horse. What innocent and natural delights are they, when he feeth the day breaking forth those Blushes and Roses which Poets and Writers of Romances onely paint, but the Huntiman truely courts? When he heareth the chirping of fmall Birds pearching upon their dewy Boughs? when he draws in the fragrancy and coolness of the Air? How jolly is his Spirit, when he fuffers it to be imported with the noise of Bugle-Horns, and the baying of Hounds, which leap up and play round about him.

Nothing doth more recreate the Minde, strengthen the Limbs, whet the Stomach, and clear up the Spirit; when it is heavy, dull, and over-cast with gloomy Cares: from whence it comes, that these delights have merited to be in esteem in all Ages, and even amongst barbarous Nations, by the Lords, Princes, and highest Potentates.

Then it is admirable to observe the natural instinct of Enmity and Cunning, whereby one Beast being as it were confederate with man, by whom he is maintained, serves him in his designes upon others. How perfect is the Scent or Smell of an Hound, who never leaves it, but follows it through innumerable changes and varieties of other Scents, even over and in the Water, and into the Earth? Again, how soon will a Hound tix his Eye on the best and fattest Buck of the Herd, single him out, and follow him, and him onely, without changing, through a whole Herd of rascal Game, and leave him not till he kills him? Moreover,

over, is it not delightful and pleasant to observe the Docibleness of Dogs, which is as admirable as their Understanding? For as a right Huntsman knows the Language of his Hounds, so they know his, and the meaning of their own kinde, as perfectly as we can diffinguish the voices of our friends and acquaintance from

fuch as are strangers.

Again, how fatisfied is a curious Minde, havexceedingly delighted, to fee the Game fly before him! and after that it hath withdrawh Tifelf from his fight. to fee the whole Line where it hath paffed over, with all the doublings and crofs works which the amazed and afrighted Beaft hath made, recovered again and all that Maze wrought out by the intelligence which he holds with Dogs! this is most pleasant, and as it were a Master-piece of natural Magick. Afterwards. what Triumph there is to return with Victory and Spoils, having a good Title both to his Appetite and Repose! Neither must it be omitted, that herein there is an especial need to hold a strict Rein over our alfections, that this Pleasure, which is allowable in its season, may not intrench upon other Domestical affairs. There is great danger left we be transported with this Pattime, and so our selves grow Wild, haunting the Woods till we refemble the Beafts which are Citizens of them; and by continual conversation with Dogs, become altogether addicted to Slaughter and Carnage, which is wholly dishonourable, being a fervile employment. For as it is the priviledge of Man, who is endued with Reason, and Authorized in the Law of his Creation, to Subdue the Beasts of the Field; so to tyrannize over them too much, is brutish in plain English.

Mistake me not, I intend this Resection not for the Nobility and Gentry of this Nation, whose expense of time in this noble and delightful Exercise can no

2/570

ways prejudice their large Pollettions, fince it is to far from being wery chargeable, that it is exceeding profitable to the bodily health of such who can disperce with their flaying at home without any injust to their Families. Ev Salvac

might much enlarge my felt in the commendation of Hunting, but that I am loath to detain you toollong from the knowledge of what will make a right and perfeet Huntiman and feall, therefore thus conclude: No Mutick can be more ravishingly delightful than a Pack of Hounds in full Gry, to lugh, a man whole Heart and Fars are to happy to be fet to the tune of fuch charming and sir gitted Beatt hath made, accovered to mustink

a Matter-viewe of namical Magick. Afterwards, Trignelate T is preserved Hittory and de cavons a good Title book to his Appetite and

all that ware wrought out by the intelligence which

D. Riore, we in the ment of the Method that is to be D used in the obtaining pleasure in the profecution of this Royal Game, it will be very requilite, as an Introduction to this Work, full to understand those Terms of Art. Huntimen, Foresters, and Wood - men use, when they are discouring of their commendable and highly recreative Profession. And first, let us con-Dogs become altogether addicted to Stanghter This

1

C

C

al pl

re

Fa

Si

d

Which are Beatts of Forest, pr Venery, for Kepary, Chafe, and who is an erd with Reafon and Author surre.

law of his Creation to Cobduc the Beath of the Lord acquainted with Hunting, do reckon that there are five Beafts of Venery, fithat are also called Beafts of Forest) which are these: the Hart, the Hinder the Hare, the Boar, and Walf: this is the Opinion of Badens

Who likewife, in his Treatife of Philologie, speaking of the former Beafts, Semper Forest a Venera babentur Bestie: These (faith he) are always accounted Beafts of Venera and Forest.

Some may here object and fay, Why should the Hears and Hinde, being both of one kinde, be accounted two several Beasts? To this I answer, That shough they are Beasts of one kind, yet they are of several seasons: for the Harr hath his season in Summer, and the season of the Hinde begins when the Harr's is over.

Here note, that with the Heart is included the Stag,

and all other Red Deer of Antlier.

ar

0-

ce

ir

m

8

T-

la

k

d

B

7

ac

41

m

fe

q

de

n.

1

10

18

el

of of

he

45

There are also five wild Beasts that are called Beasts of Chase; the Buck, the Doe, the Fox, the Martron, and the Roe.

The Beafts and Fowls of Warren, are the Hare, the Coney, the Pheafant, and the Partridge; and none office, faith Mr. Manwood, are accounted Beafts for Fowls of Warren.

My Lord Cook is of another Opinion, in his Commentary on Littleton 233. There be both Beagls and Fowls of the Warren, faith he: Beagls, as Hares, Coneys, and Roes: Fowls of two forts, Terrestres, (and they of two forts) Silvestres, & Campellies. The first, Phiestant, Wood - cock, &c. The Jecond, Pattridge, Quais, Rail, &c. Then Aquatiles, as Mallatd, Herri, &c.

There is great difference between Bealts of Forelf, and Chafe; the first are Silvestrer fantism, the latter Compessive tantism. The beasts of the Potes make their abode all the day-time in the great Coverts and secret places in the Woods; and in the night season they repair into the Lawns, Meadows, Pastures, and pleasant seeding places; and therefore they are called Silvestres, Beasts of the Wood. The Beasts of Chase do reside all the day-time in the Fields, and B 4

2

k

t

F

T

T

th

Ar

T

Th

Th

Th Th

fo

Si

and

upon the Hills or high Mountains, where they may fee round about them afar off, to prevent danger; but upon nights approach they feed as the rest in Meadows. erc. and therefore these are called Campefres, Bealts of the Field.

Let us in the next place discover their Names, Seafons, Degrees, and Ages of Forest or Venery, Chase and Warren: and because the Hart is the most noble, worthy, and stately Beast, I shall place him first; and

must call a

Hart

The first year, a Hinde-calf, or Calf. The second year, a Knobber. The third year, a Brocke, The fourth year, a Staggard. The fifth year, a Stag. The fixth year, a Hart.

If hunted by the King, a Hart Royal. If he efcape, and Proclamation be made for his fafe return without let or detriment, he is then called a Hart Royal Th

Proclaimed.

It is a vulgar errour, according to the Opinion of Mr. Guillim, to think that a Stag, of what age foever he be, shall not be called a Hart till he be hunted by the King or Queen, and thence he shall derive his Title. Mr. George Turbervile faith politively, he shall not obtain that Name till he be hunted or killed by a Prince. But late Huntlmen do agree, he may be called a Hart at and after the age of fix years old.

Now if the King or Queen shall happen to hunt or chase him, and he escape with life, he shall ever after be called a Hart Royal: But if he fly to far from the Forest or Chase, that it is unlikely he will ever return of his own accord to the place aforclaid,

ly at this on !

and that Proclamation be made in all Towns and Villages thereabouts, that none shall kill or offend him, but that he may safely return if he list; he is then called a Hart Royal Proclaimed.

The fecond Beaft of Venery is called a

fee

ws,

of

ca-

ale de,

nd

2

of

er

nis all

a

nt er

ar ill

d.

d

Hinde.

And the is called the first year, a Calf.

The second year, a Hearse; and sometimes we say Brockets Sister, &c.

The third year, a Hinde.

The next and third, which by old Foresters is called the King of all Beasts of Venery, is the deposit of

Hare.

The second year, a Hare.

The third year, a Great Hare.

The fourth Beaft of Venery is called the

Wilder Boar.

The first year, he is a Pig of the Sounder.

The second year, he is a Hogs Steer.

The third year, he is a Hogs Steer.

The fourth year, he is a Boars, at which age, if not before, he leaveth the Sounder, and then he is called a Singler or Sanglier.

The fifth and last Beast of Venery is the

Wolf.

The

and that Proclemation be made in all Towns and Ud-The home do goede de Blank of Chafe 240 de la phie charche may lafely return if he lift; he is dissectful a Han beyal Prochancel.

The first is the

The fecond Beaff, of Vener, is called a

Buck. Hinde.

It is called the first year, a Fann. The fecond year, W. Present of the soller at soil but The fecond year, a thurfe; and forcumes while of I. The fourth year, a Sore. bets Silier. &c. The fifth year, a Buck of the first Head rany brief out The fixth year, a Great Buck. The next and third, which by old Foresters is called

The fecond Bear of Charles the Bils to anid adt

Doc or Dog.

She is called the first year, a Ramafin ont boller at Land The second year, a Tegg. The bound year, a Hare. The third year, a Grest Hare. The third year, a Doe.

The third Beath of Schafe 18 16 to fles direct of I

Wilder Tour.

And is called the fifty water to a right year, he is a least said and a The fecound year, a Fox, and afterwards an old Fox. The third year, he is a Hogs Steen.

-. The fourth Bedft of Chafe is the i and any danger on & three the leaveth the Smader, and then he is called a

The first year, it is called a Cab. 123 fed bar dad ad I . The second year, a Martern. 201

The

F

1

1

T

T

(p

R

M

laf laf

Hi

Ca

laft ma

Mi Ceal

Ani gin

Lac

AH

AH

The fifth and last Beast of Chase is called the wall A

A Sounder of Sprine.

A Rout of Wolver. . son

A Richele of Martenns.

A Brace or Lease of Facel.

A Brace or Lease of Facel.

A Brace or Lease of Facel.

A Brace or Lease of Harry.

A Brace or Lease of Harry.

A Coupl for Harry of Buck of the fourth year, a Rose-Buck of the fifth year, a Fair Rose-Buck.

A Couple of Coneys.

As for the Beafts of the Warren, the Hare hath been spoken of already and The Good smalled the first year a

Rabbet, and afterwards an old Coney

1

A Hart ilarboureth.

A Ree Beddein A Ree Beddein

A Hart or Buck beginneth Latelth resid of Fencer Month, which is 15 days after Midfiennianday, and lasteth till Holy-rood-day. The Found Circlinate, and lasteth till the Annunitation of the Biosed Kinging The Hinde or Doe beginneth at Holy-rood-day, who lasteth till Candlemas. The Roe-Buck beginneth and lasteth till Michaelmas. The Roe beginneth at Michaelmas, and lasteth till Candlemas. The Hare beginneth at Michaelmas, and lasteth till Candlemas. The Hare beginneth at Michaelmas, and lasteth till the control February. The season of the Wolf is said to be from Christmas till the Annuntiation of the Virgin Mary, and Eastly, Frie Biol begins at Christmas, and continues to the Partification of bur Lady.

Terms to be used for Beasts of Penery and Chase, as they are in Company one with the other.

Rear the Boar.

A Herd of Harts. A Herd of all manner of Deer. A Bery of Ries, al abold to the thether at

A Sounder of Spine. A Rout of Welves.

A Richels of Marterne.

A Brace or Leafe of Bunky.

A Brace or Leafe of Foxes.

A Brace or Leafe of Haver

A Couple of Rabbers A Gouple of Coneys.

course made of the Warren, the jam had been Ang han all Terms for their Lodging. O blo on threvolate but

A Hart Harboureth.

A Buck Lodgeth

A Roe Beddeth.

A Hare Scateth, or Formeth.

A Geney Sitteth. A 2011

A Face Kennelleth.

A Martern Treeth.

An Otter Watcheth.

A Bedger Earthoth, and shadows of the shadows of the A Bear Couchethed with a first shadows of the shadows of t

Terms for their Diflodging. levil is faid to be from Coc fair till ?

Unharbour the Hart, walk will be only some Rouze the Buck of or the military berg unemy all stage a Start the Hare. Bolt the Cones. Unkennel the Fox Tree the Mortern. Vent the Ouer. Dig the Badger. Rear the Boer.

Term Of

DE

Df.

DE.

DF:

An

Terms for their Noise at Rutting time.

A Hart Belleth.

Buck Growneth or Troateth.

A Roe Belloweth.

A Hare Beateth or Tappeth.

An Oster Whineth.

Boar Freameth.

A Fox Barketh.

Badger Shricketh.

Wolf Howleth.

A Goat Ratleth.

Terms for Copulation.

A Hart or Buck goeth to Rut. A Roe goeth to Tourn.

A Boar goeth to Brim. A Hare and Coney goeth to Buck.

A Fox goeth to Clickitting.

A Wolf goeth to Match or to Make.

Terms for the Footing and Treading of all Beafts of Venery and Chafe.

Of a Hart, the Slot.

of a Buck and all Fallow Deer, the View.

of all Deer, if on the Grass, and scarce visible, then it is called Foiling.

of a Fox, the Print; and other such Vermin, the Footing.

of an Otter, the Marks.

of a Bear, the Tract.

of a Hare, diversly; for when the is in open Field,

fhe

the Soreth: When the winds about to deceive the Hounds, then the Doubleth: When the beateth on the hard High-way, and her Footing can be perceived, then the Pricketh; and in the Snow, it is called the Trace of the Hare.

Terms of the Taill to the and souls A

Of a Hart, Buck, or other Deer, the Single.

Of a Boar, the Wreath.

Of a Fox, the Brush or Drag; and the Tip at the end is called the Chape.

Of a Wolf, the Stern.

Terms for their Ordure.

Of a Hart, and all Deer, their Exerement is called Fewmets or Fewithing.

i

4

t

i

t

r

Of a Hare, Crotiles or Crotiling.
Of a Boar, Leffes.

Of a Hare and Coney, the Scut.

Of a Fox, the Billiting; and all other fuch Vermin, the Fuants.

Of an Otter, the Spraints.

Terms for the Attire of Deet.

Of a Stag, if perfect, the Bur, the Pearls (the little Knobs on it) the Beam, the Gutters, the Antlier, the Sur-Antlier, Royal, Sur-Royal, and all at top the Croches.

Offa Buck, the Bor, the Beam, the Brow-Antlier, the Back-Antlier, the Advancer, Palm, and Spellers.

If the Croches grow in form of a mans Hand, it is then called a Palmed Head. Heads bearing not above three or four, the Crotches being placed aloft all

of one height are called Crowned Heads. Heads having doubling Groches are called Horked Heads becall the Croches are planted on the sop of the Beam.

like Forks licenser to have a Sing bears, you are onely, to recken crockes he bears, and never to express an order number. As, if he hath four Grockes on his near Horn, and five on his near Horn, a falle Right on his near Horn (for all that the Beam bears are called Rights.) If but four on the near Horn, and fix on the far Horn, you must say he bears twelve, a double salle Right on the near Horn, for you must not onely make the number even, but also the Horns even with that diffinction.

When a Hers, breaketh Heyd, and draweth to the Thickets or Coverts, we usually fay he taketh his Hold.

or he goeth to Harbour,

All kind of Deers fan is called Sewit; and yet you, may lay, This Deer was a high Deer of Greafe. The fat of a Boar is called Greafe. The fat of a Roe onely, is called Beavy Greafe.

We fay the Deer is broken up. The Fax and Hare is

cased

he

en

ace

the

lled

oin.

the

the

the

, it

rt 2-

t all

A Neft of Robbus,

Venifor, or Venaiton, is to called, from the means whereby the Beatls are taken, quantum as Venations capi-

Bealts of Venary (not Venery; as some call it) are so

termed, because they are gotten by Hunting.

but because he is no beast of the Forest, and whatsoever is Venison must be a beast of the Forest; fed non & converfo. On the other fide, Animalia gregalia non funt nocive. as the Wilde Boar ; for naturally the first three years he is Animal gregale; and after truffing to his own firength, and for the pleasure of man, becometh Solivagum. He is then called Sanglier, because he is Singularis: but he is Venison, and to be exten. The Hare is Venison too, which Martial preferreth before all others.

Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus.

So are the Red-Deer and Fallow-Deer Venison: vide Cook Inft. 4. pag. 316. Give me leave to infert here. out of the same Author two Conclusions in the Law of the Forest, which follow from hence. First, Whatsoever Beaft of the Forest is for the food of man, that is Venison: and therewith agreeth Virgil, defcribing of a Feaft,

Implentur Veteris Bacchi pinguifque ferina.

They had their belly full of Old Wine and Fat Veni-So Venison was the principal Difh of the Feast. Secondly, Whatfoever Beaft is not for the food of man, is not Venison. Therefore Capriolin, or the Roe. being no Beaft of the Forest, is by the Law of the Forest no Venison unless Hunted. Nature hath endewed the Beafts of the Forest with two qualities, Swiftnels, and Fear and their Fear increaseth their Swiftnels.

- Pedibin timor addidit alas. 115.3 0/1

Vert is any thing that beareth green Leaf, but especially of great and thick Coverts, and is derived a Viris

ditate,

n

I

C

B

1

O

be

n

ft

0

-

e.

30

11

de

TC.

of

0-

is (a

ni-

aft.

of

Roe.

the

endir-

spe-

ini

tate,

ditate. Vert is of divers kinds & fome that beareth Fruit that may ferve for food both for man and beafts, as Service-trees, Nut-trees, Crab-trees, &c. and for the thelter and defence of the Game. Some called Hantboys, serving for Food and browse of and for the Game, and for the defence of them; as Oaks, Beeches, &cc. Some Hamboys for Browse, Shelter, and Defence onely; as Albes, Poplars, Scc. Of Sub-boys, forme for Browle and Food of the Game, and for Shelter and Defence as Mables, &cc. Some for Browse and Defence; as Birch, Sallow, Willow, &c. Some for Shelter and Defence onely; as Elder, Alder, &c .: Of Bushes and other Vegetables, some for Food and Shelter, as the Ham-thorn, Black-thorn, &c. Some for hiding and fhelter, as Brakes, Gorfe, Heath &cc. Vert, as I faid, comes à Viridi; thence Viridarii. because their Office is to look after the prefervation of the Vert, which in truth is the preservation of Venison.

Terms for Flaying, Stripping, and Cafing of all manner of CHASES.

The Hart and all manner of Deer are flain: Huntimen commonly fay, Take off that Deer's Skin. The Hare is Stripped or Cased; and so is the Boar too, according to the opinion of the Antients! The Fox, the Badger, and all manner of Vermin are cased, beginning at the Snout or Nose of the Beast, and so turn his Skin over his Ears down to the Body till you come to the Tail.

Proper Terms for the Noises of Hounds.

When Hounds are first cast off, and find some Game or Chase, we say They Challenge. If they are too busic before they find the scent good, we say, They Band. If they

they be too buse after they find good scent, we say, They Babble. If they run it end-ways orderly, making it good, and then hold in together merrily, we say, They me in full Cry. When Spaniels open in the string, (or a Grey-hound in his course) we say, They Lapse. When Hounds hang behinde, and bear too much upon the scent or place, we say, Thy Plod. And when they have either Earthed a Virmin, or brought a Deer, Boar, or such-like to turn head against them, then we say, They Bay:

Different Terms for Hounds and Grey-bounds.

Of Grey-hounds, two make a Brace; of Hounds, a Couple. Of Grey-hounds, three make a Leace; and of

Hounds, a Comple and half.

We let flip a Grey-hound, and cast off a Hound. The string wherewith we lead a Grey-hound, is called a Leate; and for a Hound, a Lyome. The Grey-hound hath his Collar, and the Hound hath his Couples. We say, a Kennel of Hounds, and a Pack of Beagles. Some other differences there are, but these are the most usual.

d

a

th

or

the

Ch

the

the

she

Where we find Deer have lately passed into Thickets, by which we guess their greatness, and then put the Hounds or Beagles thereto for the View, we account such places Entries.

The Impression where any Deer hath reposed or har-

boured, we call a Layr.

When the Hounds or Beagles hit the scent of their Chase contrary, as to hit it up the wind when they should it down, we then say, they Draw amiss.

When the Hounds or Beagles take fresh scent, hunting another Chase, until they stick and hit it again, we

fay, they Hunt Change.

When the Hounds or Beagles hunt it by the Heel, we fay, they Hunt Counter. When

y,

g

2

en

he

ve

or

ney

of

nd.

led

ind

We

les.

noft

ets,

put

unt

har-

heir

they

unt-

, WO

, we

V hen

When the Challe goes off, and comes on again traverling the fame ground, to deceive the Hounds or Beagles, we fay, they Hunt the Fail:

When we fet Hounds in readiness where we expect the Deer will come by, and then cast them off when the other Hounds are pass'd by, we account that a Relay.

When Hounds or Beagles have finished their Chase by the death of what they pursued, and then in requital are fed by the hands of the Huntsman or others, we call that their Remarks.

Huntimen when they go drawing in their Springs at Ham Hunting, usually make Dew rounds, which we call Ringwalks.

When any Deer is hard hunted, and then betakes himself to swimming in any River, be, then we say he takes Soyl.

When Deer cast their Horns, we say, they Ment. A

When Huntimen endeavour to find a Harr by the Slor, &c. and then minde his step to know whether he is great and long, they then say, they know him by his Gate.

When Deer rub and push their heads against Trees to cause the Pills of their new Horns compost, we say, they Fray.

When Deer, after being hard run, turn head against the Hounds, we fay, they Bay.

When Hounds of Beagles run long without opening or making any cry, we fay, they run Mute.

When Hounds or Beagles at first finding the scent of their Game presently open and cry, we then say, they Challenge.

When Hounds run at a whole Herd of Deer, we fay, they Run Riot.

When the Hounds touch the fcent, and draw on till they rouze or put up the Chafe, we fay, they Draw on the Slot:

When a Roe croffes and doubles, it is called Trajoning. When a Hare, as fometimes (shough feldom) takes the ground like a Coney, we then fay, the Goes to the Vault.

When we beat the Bulhes, &c. after the Fox, we call

it Drawing.

When a Hare runs on rotten ground, or in a Proft fometimes, and then it flicks to her Feet, we say, the Carryeth.

When the Fox hath young ones in her, we fay, the

is with Cub.

When Beagles bark and cry at their Prey, we fay, they Yearn.

A Red Male Heart of an year old, is called a Spitter.

A Rayn-Deer, is a beaft like an Heart, but hath his Head fuller of Antliers.

A Pricker, is a Huntiman on Horfe-back.

Engines that we take Deer withal, are called Wiles.

When we fet Hounds or Beagles in readiness, expeding the Chase to come by, and then cast them off before the rest come in, we call it a Vauntlay.

When Hounds or Beagles find where the Chafe hath been, and made a proffer to enter, but returned, we say,

there is a Blemifh.

We fay How to a Deer. I wind tothe And I wall

When we start a Hare, we say, That, that, or There, there.

The Call, a Leffon blowed on the Horn to comfort the Hounds.

A Recheat, a Leffon likewife blown on the Horns. The Mort or Death, is blown at the death of any Deen There are several other Leffons, which you may find in the Sculpture of Notes for blowing on the Horn.

There are several Hounds and Beagles which we have different Titles for; as Gaze-hound, Blood-hound, Staunch-hound, Harrier, and Terrier, &c. But we go

nerally

(

C

C

C

D

D

D

D

D

Da

Da

Da

Dunters Cerms.

nerally in all our Kennels and Packs rank them under thefe heads : Enterers, Drivers, Flyers, Tyers, &cc.

And now to conclude our discourse of general Terms at this place, give us leave to infert, for fuch young Gentlemen as in time may keep a Kennel, some usual Names of Hounds and Beagles.

A CATALOGUE of fome general Names

HOUNDS and BEAGLES.

B Anger Beauty Fancy Fidler Blue-man Blue-cap Boman Bonny Bouncer. Captain Cappen Chanter Countel Fewel Tocky Cryer Cefar, Fenny Foler Dido Driver Drunkard Tuno. Drummer Damofel Keeper Darling : Dutchef Dancer

28

bei

II

A nė:

he

y; 63

nis

e-

130

th

ay,

re,

ort

rni

eer.

in

WE

nd,

ga

Daphne.

Flippant Flurry Fuddle. Gallant Gamdy. Hector. Fuggler Follyboy Jupiter Kilbuck. Lively .

Lovely

Lady Lilly Lillups.

Madam · Maulkin Merryboy Mopfie Motley Musick.

Nancy Nacier. Plunder

Pleafant.

Pluto. Rockwood Ringwood

Rover Ranter Ratler Ruler. Ranger

C 3

Roy-

Trouncer

Truffy

Thube

Truman

Some other Terms and Descriptions relating more particularly to Forest and Forest-Laws.

Terker

Tounker.

A Forest, is a place priviledged by Royal Authority, and differs from Park, Warren, and Chase, and is on purpose allotted for the peaceable abiding and nourishment of the Beasts and Fowls thereto beforiging. For which there are certain peculiar Laws, Officers, and Orders; part of which appear in the Great Charles of the Forest.

A Forester, is an Officer of the Forest, sworn to preserve the Vert and Venison therein, and to attend the wild beasts within his Bailiwick, and to watch, and endeavour to keep them safe by day and night. He has likewise to apprehend all Offenders in Vert and Venison, and to present them to the Courts of the Forest to the end they may be punished according to their offences.

A Purlies, is all that ground adjoyning to Forests, which being made Forest by Henry the second, Richard the first, or King John, were by perambulations granted by Henry the third, and severed again from the same.

A Purlien-man, is he that hath ground within the Purlien, and hath 40 s. a year Free-hold; and fuch a one with some caution may hunt within his own Purlien.

A Regarder, is an Officer of the Kings Forest, that is sworn to take care of the Vert and Venison, and to view and enquire of all the offences committed within the Forest, and of all the Concealments of thems, and whether all other Officers do execute their Office or not.

Woodgeld, is the gathering or cutting of Wood in the Forest, or the money paid for it to the use of the Foresters; or an Immunity for this by the King's Grant.

ore

ity.

ind

ind

ng.

end of

16.

the

ind is

cf

of.

A

A Raunger, In some Forests there are twelve Raungers, whose Offices are to look after the Purlies, and drive back the wild Beasts into the Forest again; and to see, hear, and enquire of offenders there, and to present their offences.

A Verderor, is an Officer of the King's Forest, and chosen by the Free-holders of the County where the Forest is, by the Kings Writ directed to the Sheriff for that purpose. Their Office is chiefly to look after the Wood and Grass in the Forest.

An Agistor, is an Officer of the Forest that takes in to feed the Cattle of Strangers, and receives for the Kings use all such tack-Money as becomes due from those Strangers.

A Chase, is a place used for the receipt of Deer and Beatts of the Forest: It differs from a Forest and Park. It may be in the hands of a Subject, which a

C 4

Forest in its proper nature cannot be. Neither is itinelosed as a Park always is, and it hath a larger compass, more store of Game, and more Keepers and Overfeers.

Expeditate, is (faith Mr. Crompton) the cutting out the ball of the Foot of great Dogs in the Forest; but (saith Mr. Manwood) it is the cutting off the three fore-Glaws by the Skin; and that the owner of every such Dog, unexpeditated in the Forest, shall forseit 3 s.

Fence Month, hath 31 days, begins 15 days before Midfionmer, and ends 15 days after: In which time it is unlawful for any to hunt in the Forest, or to go atmongstithe Deer to disquiet them; because it is the time

of Fawning.

in Frank Chase, is a liberty of free Chase in a Circuit annexed to a Forest, whereby all men that have ground within the circuit are sorbidden to cut down Wood, or discover, &c. within the view of the Forester, though it be his own Demesne.

Green-bue, or Vers, they both signifie one thing, it being every thing that doth drow and bear green Leaf within the Forest, that may cover and hide the

Deer.

Over Vert, is all manner of high Wood.

Nether Vert, is all forts of under-wood. Brushwood is called Cablish.

Horngeld, is a Tax within the Forest for all manner

of horned beafts.

Footgeld, is an Amercement on such as live within the Forest, for not expeditating their Dogs. And to be quit of Footgeld, is a priviledge to keep Dogs there Unlawed without Punishment or Controlement.

Pannage, is Money taken by the Agistors for the feed of Hogs with the Mast of the Kings's Forest;

but

but (Mr. Crompton faith) it is most properly the Mast, Woods, Lands, or hedg'd Rows, or Money due to the owners of the same for it.

in-

afs,

CI-

out

out

rce

ery

15.

ore it

2+

ne

nd

or it.

ne

d

2

n

0

Ĉ.

t

A Scotale, is where any Officer of the Forest doth keep an Ale-house in the Forest by colour of his Office, causing men to come to his House, and to spend their money there for tear of having displeasure; but this is forbidden by Charta Forest.

Perambulation, is the admeasurement and setting down of Bounds and Limits to the Forest.

Drift of the Forest, is an exact view and examination taken at certain times, as occasion shall serve; to know what beasts are there; that none Common there but such as have right; and that the Forest be not over-charged with the beasts of Forteigners.

An Affort, is a great offence committed in the Forcit, by grubbing up the Woods, Coverts, and Thickets, and making them plain as Arable Land, or the like.

Minoverie, is a Trespass or Offence committed by some Engine set up in the Forest to catch Deer, or the like.

Tritin, is a freedo'n that one hath from holding a Grey-hound in ones hand when the Lord of the Forest is hunting there, or to be ameroed for his default.

Protoforestarius, was a grant Officer heretofore in Windsor Forest.

Stablestand, is when one is found standing in the Forest with his Bow ready bent to shoot at any Deer or, with his Grey-hound in a Lease ready to slip.

Swainmate, or Swannimote, is a Court appointed to be held thrice in a year within a Forest; the first, 15 days before Michaelmas; the second, about Martinmas; and the third, 15 days before St. John Baptist.

Chiminage, is taken by Foresters in fee throughout their

their Baltiwick for Bulkes, Timber, &c., and lignifies the

Afforeft, is to turn Land into Foreft.

Difficult, is to turn Land from being Forest to other uses.

Let what hath been faid be sufficient for an Introduction, and let us conclude it with a perswasion to all generous Souls not to slight this noble and worthy Exercise, (wherein is contained so much health and pleasure) for the besetting Sensualities, and wicked Debaucheries of a City, in which the course of Nature seems to be inverted, Day turn'd into Night, and Night into Days where there is little other Recreation but what Women, Wine, and a Bawdy Play can afford them; whereby, for want of Labour and Exercise, Mens Bodies contain as many Diseases as are in a fickly Hospital.

Of DOGS in general.

A S there is no Country in the World wherein there is not plenty of Dogs, so no Animal can boath of

greater variety both in shape and kind.

Some Dogs are very great, as the Wolf-dog, which is shaped like a Grey-hound, but by much taller, longer, and thicker; some are for the Buck, others for the Boar, Bear, and Bull; some for the Hare, Coney, and Hedge-bog; some are both for Water and Land, and they are called Spaniels; other are called Lurchers, Tumblers, Brachers, Beagles, &c. As for Shepherds Dogs, soisting Curs, and such whom some fond Ladies make, their daily, nay nightly Companions

too, I'shall pass over, being neither worthy to be inferted in this Subject, nor agreeable thereunton wherefore I shall onely treat of such whose natures do incline them to Game, for mans Passime and Recreation.

In the first place, let us consider the Nature of Dogs in general, wherein they agree, and their common properties of Nature, such as are not destroyed in the distinction of kinds, but remain like infallible Truths, and invariable in every kind and Country through the Universe. Dogs (as it is to be observed) are generally rough; and their Hair indifferently long (which in Winter they lose every year) is a figne of a good constitution; but if it grow over-long, the Mange will follow. The outward proportion of the Head altereth as the kind altereth, having no commissure or seam in the Skull, being a continued bone without separation.

Ñ

4

É

The best Dogs (in Pliny's Opinion) have flat Nostrils, yet round, solid, and blunt: Their Teeth are like Saws, which they change in the fourth month of their age! and by them is their age discerned; for while they are white and sharp, it discovers the youth of a Dog; but when they grow blackish or dusky, broken and torn, they demonstrate the elder age.

The Breaft of a Dog is narrow, fo is his Ventricle: for which cause he is always in pain in the discharging his Exerements.

After they have run a Courfe, they relieve themselves by tumbling and rowling to and fro. When they lie down, they turn round in a circle two or three times together; which they do for no other cause, but that they may the more commodiously he round, and from the Wind.

In their fleep they often dream, as may appear by their barking. Here observe, that they who love to keep keep Dogs, must have a special care that they let them not sleep too much, especially after their Meat, when they are young: for as they are very hot, so in their sleep doth their heat draw much pain into their Stomack and Ventricle. The time of their Copulation is for the most part at a year old; yet the Fernales will lust after it sooner; but they should be restrained from it, because it debilitates their Body, and dulls their Generosity. After the expiration of a year, they may be permitted to copulate; it matters not whether in Winter or Summer, but it is best in the beginning of the Spring: but with this caution, that Whelps of a Litter, or of one and the same Bitch, be never suffered to couple; for Nature delights in variety.

In antient time, for the more ennobling of their race of Dogs, they would not permit them to ingender till the Male was four year old, and the Female three; for by that means the Whelps would prove more firong and lively. By Hunting, Labour, and Travel, the Males are made more fit for Generation, and they prove best which have their Siers of equal age. When they grow proud, give them Leaven mingled with Milk and Salt, and they will not stray and ramble a-

broad.

It is not good to preserve the first or second Lister, but the third: and after they have littered, it is good to give the Bitch Whey and Barley-bread; for that will comfort her, and increase her Milk: or take the Bones of broken Meat, and seeth them in Goats-Milk; which nutriment will strengthen very much both Dam and Whelps.

There is no great regard to be had as to the Food of a Dog, for he will eat any thing but the Flesh of his own kinde; for that cannot be so dressed by the art of Man, but they find it out by their Nose, and

E

n

E

t

Ì

1

avoid it. It is good to let the Whelps fuck two Months before they be weared, and that of their own Damiethin went

m

én

cir

0-

on

es

h

Ms

r,

ot

ie

at

ie

e

r

Put Commin now and then in their bread, it will cure or prevent Wind in their bellies; and if Oyl be mingled with that Water they lap, they will prove more able and fwift to run. If he refuse and loath his Meat, give him a little bot Bread, or dip brown Bread in Vinegar, and squeeze the liquor thereof into his Nose; and it will ease him.

There is some difficulty to chuse a Whelp under the Dam that will prove the best of the Litter. Some observe that which seeth last, and take that for the best: others remove the Whelps from the Kennel, and lay them several and apart one from the other; then watch they which of them the Bitch first taketh and carrieth into her Kennel again, and that they take for the best; or else that which vomiteth last of all. Some again give for a certain rule to know the best, that the same which weigheth least while it sucketh will prove the best, according to the Verses of Nemelian:

Pondere nam Catuli poerus perpendere virus.

Corporibusque teves gravibus pernoscere ciusus.

it kind is called Am Rucket, and this is

But this is certain, that the lighter Whelp will prove the fwifter, and the heavier will be the stronger.

As foon as as the Bitch hath littered, it is requisite to chuse them you intend to preserve, and throw away the rest: keep the black, brown, or of one colour, for the spotted are not much to be accounted of; but of Hounds, spotted are to be valued.

There is not any Creature irrational, more loving to his Master, nor more serviceable than a Dog, enduring blows from his hands, and using no other means

0

li

d

k

t

to pacific his displeasure, than Humiliation and profiration; and after beating, turneth a Revenge into a more fervent Love. Irrational, did I say, ? I may mistake, if what Elianus reports be true, who thought Dogs have Reason, and use Logick in their Hunting; for they will cast about for the Game; as a Disputant doth for the truth; as if they should say, the Hare is gone either on the left band, the right, or straight forward; but not on the left or right, Therefore straight forward. Whereupon he runneth forthright after the true and infallible sootseps of the Hare-

of Dogs for Hunting. Of the Hound Rache and SLUTH-HOUND, so called in Scotland, and by the Germans SCHLATHUND.

Here are in England and Scotland two kindes of Hunting - Dogs, and no where else in all the World: The first kind is called Ane Rache, and this is a Foot-scenting creature both of wild Bealts. Birds. and Fishes also, which lie hid among the Bocks: The Female bereof in England is called a Brache. A Brach, is a mannerly name for all Hound - Bitches. The fecond in Scotland is called a Slath-bound, being a lietle greater than the Hunting-Hound, and in colour for the most part brown or fandy spotted. The sense of Smelling is so quick in these, that they can follow the Foot-steps of Thieves, and pursue them with violence until they overtake them: nay, should the Thief take the Water, so eager they are in their pursuit, that they will fixim after them; and are reftless till they find the thing they feek after : For this is common in the Borders 13

ré

F

re

11

ne m

rd

j

e

5

,

é

of England and Scotland, where the people were wont to live much upon Thest: and if the Dog brought his Leader to any house where they may not be suffered to enter, they take it for granted that there is both the stolen Goods, and the Thief also.

Thereads enail fled of the

Of the BLOOD-Hound. aT

The Blood-hound different nothing in quality from the Scotish Sluth-hound, saving that they are more largely fized, and not always of one and the same colour: for they are sometimes Red, Sanded, Black, White, Spotted, and of all colours with other Hounds, but most commonly either brown or red.

The Germans call this beaft Langbund, because their Ears are long, thin, and hanging down; and they differ not from vulgar Dogs in any other outward proportion, than onely in their Cry and Barking. Their nature is, being set on by the voice and words of their Leader, to cast about for the sitting of the present Game; and having sound it, will never cease pursuing it with full cry, till it is tired, without changing for any other. They seldome bark, except in their Chase, and are very obedient and attentive to the Voice of the Leader.

They which are white, are faid to be the quickest feented, and surest Nos'd, and therefore best for the Hare: The black ones for the Baar; and the red for the Hart and Roe. This is the Opinion of some, but none of mine; because their colour (especially the latter) are too like the Game they Hunt: although there can be nothing certain collected of their colour, yet is the black Hound hardier, and better able to endure cold than the other which is white. They

muth

must be tied up till they hunt, yet so as they be let loofe now and then a little to eafe their Bellies; for it is necessary that their Kennel be kept sweet and dry, le is questionable how to differn a Hound of excellent sense: yet some are of the Opinion that the square and flat Nose is the best signe thereof; likewise a small Head, having all his Legs of equal length; his Breast not deeper than his Belly, and his Back plain to his Tail; his Eyes quick, his Ears hanging long; his Tail nimble, and the beak of his Nose always to the Earth; and especially such as are most filent, and bark

Confider how the divers and variable dispositions of Hounds in their finding out the Beaft. Some are of that nature, that when they have found the Game, they will stand still the Huntsman come up, to whom in filence, by their Face, Eye, and Tail, they thew the Game: others, when they have found the foor fleps, go forward without any voice or other thew of Ear or Tail: Another fort when, when they have found the footings of the Beaft, prick up their Ears a little, and either bark or wag their Tails; and others will wag their Tails, and not move their Ears.

There are some again that do none of these, but wander up and down barking about the fureft marks, and confounding their own foot-steps with the Beafts they hunt; or elfe forfake the way, and fo run back again to the first head; but when they fee the Hare, are affraid, not daring to come near her, except the flart Thefe, with the other which hinder the cunning labours of their Colleagues, trusting to their Feet, and running before their betters, deface the best mark, or else hunt counter, and take up any false scent for the truth; or, which is more reprehensible, never forfake the High-ways, and yet have not learned to be

filent

ſ

r

t

V

t

3

f

t

Ġ

8

T

1

f

r

1

f

ŀ

i

8

t

1

ł

(

(1 et it

y.

1

rè

Ce

is

to

is

10

k

of

of ic,

to

ne

CT

ey

ir

5;

ir

ut

s, fts

ck

e,

rt

net,

k,

or

be

nt

filent: Unto these you may also adde those which cannot discern the Footing or Pricking of a Hare, yet will they run speedy when they see her, pursuing her hotly in the beginning, and afterwards tire, or hunt lazify. All these are not to be admitted into a Kennel of good Hounds.

On the contrary, those Hounds which are good when they have found the Hare, make shew thereof to the Huntsman, by running more speedily, and with gesture of Head, Eyes, Ears, and Tail, winding to the Fourm or Hares Muse, never give over prosecution with a gallant noise: they have good and hard Feet, and stately Stomacks.

Now whereas the nature of the Hare is sometimes to leap and make headings, fometimes to tread foftly with but a very small impression in the Earth, or fornetimes to lie down, and ever to leap or jump out and into her own Form, the poor Hound is fo much the more busied and troubled to retain the small scent of her pricking which the leaveth behinde her; for this cause it is requisite that you help the Hound, not onely with Voice, Eye, and Hand, but with a seasonable Time also: for in frosty weather the scent freezeth with the Earth, so that there is no certainty of hunting till it thaw, or that the Sun arife. Likewise if very much Rain fall between the starting of the Hare and time of hunting, it is not convenient to hunt till the Water be dried up; for the drops disperse the scent of the Hare, and dry weather collecteth it again. The Summer-time also is not for hunting, because the heat of the weather confumeth the scent; and the night being then but short, the Hare travelleth not far, feeding onely in the morning and evening: besides, the fragrancy of Flowers and Herbs then growing, obliterates the feent the Hounds are guided by. The

The best time for hunting with these Hounds is in Autumn, because then the former Odours are weakned, and

the Earth barer than at other time.

These Hounds do not onely chase their Game while It liveth, but being dead also by any manner of cal fualty, make recourse to the place where it lieth, having in this point an affured and infallible Guide. namely, the Scent and Savour of the Blood sprinkled here and there upon the ground: for whether the Beaft being wounded doth notwithstanding enjoy life, and escapeth the hands of the Huntsman; or whether the faid Beaft, being flain, is conveyed cleanly out of the Park, (so that there be some marks of blood(hed) these Dogs, with no less facility and easiness, than avidity and greediness, disclose and bewray the fame by Smelling, applying to their pursuit agility and nimbleness, without tediousness; for which confideration, of a fingular speciality they deserved to be called Sanguinarii, Blood - Hounds: And although a piece of flesh be subtilly stolen, and cunningly conveyed away, with fuch proviso's and precaveats, as thereby all appearances of Bloud is thereby prevented or concealed; yet these kind of Dogs, by certain direction of an inward affored notice and private mark, pursue these desperate Deer-stealers through craggy Ways, and crooked Meanders, till they have found them out : yea, so effectual is their forelight, that they can discover, separate, and pick them out from an infinite multitude; creep they never fo far into the thickest throng, they will find them out not withtlanding.

1

pe

H

re

it,

To

de

be:

mo

No

Soi

bul

Fo

wa tok and c with

Of the GAZE-HOUND.

This Dog is little beholding in Hunting to his Note or Smelling, but to that pnefs of Sight altogether, by the vertue whereof it makes excellent sport with the Fox and Hare.

d

e,

y.

of

5,

ne

ty

nbe

12

n-

as ed

in

gh

ht,

out

in-

th-

This Dog will chuse and separate from amongst a great Flock or Herd, and such a one will it take by election, as is not lank or lean, but full, fat, and round.

If a Beast be wounded and go astray, this Dog will seek after it by the steadfastness of the Eye; if it happen to return, and be mingled with the residue of the Herd, this Dog will soon spy it out, leaving the rest untouched: and after he hath set sure sight upon it, he separateth it from the company; and having so done, never ceaseth till he hath wearied it to death.

This Dog is called in Latine Agaseus, because the beams of the Sight are so steedfastly settled, and unmoveably sassned. These Dogs are much used in the Northern parts of England, much more than in the Southern; and on Champion ground rather than in bushy and woody places: Horsemen use them more than Footmen.

If it happen so at any time that this Dog take a wrong way, the Master making some usual signe, and familiar token, he returneth forthwith, and taketh the right and ready course, beginning his Ghase afresh, and with a clear Voice, and a swift Foot, solloweth the Game with as much courage and nimbleness as he did at the first.

Of the GREY-HOUND.

A Mong the divers kinds of Hunting-dogs, the Grey-bound, by reason of his Swiftness, Strength, and Sagacity to follow and pursue his Game, deserveth the first place; for such are the conditions of this Dog, as a Philosopher observeth, that he is reasonably scented to find out, speedy and quick of foot to follow, and fierce and strong to take and overcome; and yet filent, coming upon his Prey at unawares, according to the observation of Gratius:

Sic Canis illa suos taciturna supervenit bostes.

The best Grey-hound hath a long Body, strong, and reafonable great, not so big as the Wolf-dog in Ireland; a neat sharp Head, and splendant Eyes; a long Mouth, and sharp Teeth; little Ears, and thin Grissles in them; a straight Neck, and a broad and strong Breast; his fore Legs straight and short, his hinder Legs long and straight broad Shoulders, round Ribs, sleshy Buttocks, but no fat; a long Tail, strong, and full of Sinews. Thus Nemessan eloquently describes the best of Grey-bounds:

Costarum sub fine decenter prona carinam:
Renibus ampla satis validis deductaq; coras
Sit rigidis, multamq; gerat sub pectore lato,
Qua sensim rursus sicca se colligat alvo:
Cuiq, nimis molles fluitent in cursibus Aures.
Elige tunc cursu facilem, facilemq, recursu,
Dum superant vires, dum lato slore juventus.

Of this kind, that is always the best to be chosen among the Whelps, which weigheth lightest; for it will be soonest at the Game, and so hang upon it, hindering its swiftness, till the stronger and heavier Dogs come to help and offer their assistance; and therefore besides the marks or necessary good parts of a Grey-bound already spoken of, it is requisite that he have large sides, and a broad midriss; that so he may take his breath in and out more easily: his Belly must be small; if otherwise, it will hinder the swiftness of his course: likewise he must have long Legs, thin and soft Hairs. And these must the Huntsman lead on his left hand, if he be asoot; and on the right, if on Horse-back.

The best time to try them and train them to their Game, is at twelve Months old; yet some begin sooner with them, that is, at ten Months if they are Males, and at eight if Females: yet it is surest not to strain them, or permit them to run a long Course, till they be twenty Moneths old. Keep them also in the Slip while they are abroad, until they can see their Course; and loosen not a young Dog, until the Game have been on foot for a good season, less being over-greedy of the Prey, he strain his limbs too

much.

nd

he

52

to

rce m-

cr-

ca-

th.

m;

ht

net Ve The Grey-bounds which are most in request among the Germans, are called Windspit, alluding to compare their swiftness with the Wind; but the French make most account of those that are bred in the Mountains of Dalmatia, or in any other Mountains, especially of Turkie; for such have hard Feet, long Ears, and bristle Tails.

The Grey-bound (called by the Latins Leporarius) hath his name from the word Gre, which word foundeth Gradus in Latine, in English Degree; because among all Dogs, these are the most principal, having the chiefest place, and being simply and absolutely the best of the

gentle kind of Hounds,

Of the HARRIER and TERRIER.

The Harrier in Latine is called Leverarius, or Sagax; by the Greeks, Ichneuten, of tracing or chasing by the Foot.

Nature hath endewed this Creature with an admisable gift of Smelling, and is bold and courageous in the pursuit of his Game. There are several forts of them, and all differ in their Services: some are for the Hare, the Fax, the Wolf, the Hart, the Buck, the Badger, the Otter, the Polecat, the Weasle, the Coney, &c. some for

one thing, some for another.

As for the Coney, we use not to hunt, but take it sometimes with a Net, sometimes with a Ferret, and sometimes with a Lurcher or Tumbler. Among the several sorts of Harriers, there are some which are apt to hunt two divers Beasts, as the Fox sometimes, and otherwhiles the Hare; but they hunt not with that good success and towardness, who stick not to one sort of Came.

The Terrier hunteth the Fox and the Badger or Grey onely: And they ore called Terriers, because they (after the manner and custom of Ferrets in searching for Coneys) creep into the ground, and by that means affright, nip, and bite the Fox and the Badger, in such sort, that either they tear them in pieces with their Teeth, (being in the bosome of the Earth) or else hale and pull them by force out of their lurking Angles, dark Dungeons, and close Caves; or at the least, through conceived sear, drive them out of their hollow Harbours, insomuch, it they are not taken by Net or otherwise, they are compelled to prepare for flight,

flight; and being desirous of the next, though not the safest resuge, they are ost-times entrapped with Snares and Nets laid over Holes for the same purpose.

Of LEVINER or LYEMMER.

by

he

m,

re,

he

or

it

nd

e.

ta

rod of

ey y

git r.

h

Ţ

g

c

.

y

The Leviner is fingular in Smelling, and in Swiftness incomparable. This is as it where a middle kinde between the Harrier and the Grey-Hound, as well for his kinde, as the frame and shape of his Body. It is called in Latine Levinariw, à Levitate, of lightness, and therefore may well be called a Light-Hound. This Dog, for the excellency of his Conditions, namely, Smelling, and swift Running, doth follow the Game with more eagerness, and taketh the Prey with a jolly quickness.

Of the TumbleR.

The word Tumbler undoubtedly had its derivation from the French word Tumbier, which fignifies to Tumble; to which the Latioe name agrees, Vertague, from Vertere to turn, and fo they do: for in Hunting they turn and tumble, winding their Bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the Beath do suddenly gripe it at the very cutrance or mouth of their Holes or Receptacles, before they can make any recovery of felf-security.

This Dog useth another craft and subtilty, namely,
D 4 when

when he runneth into a Warren, or fetcheth a course about a Coney - borough, he hunts not after them, he no ways affrights them, he shews no spight against them; but diffembling friendship, and pretending fayour, paffeth by with filence and quietness, marking their Holes diligently, wherein he seldom is deceived. When he cometh to a place where there is a certainty of Coneys, he coucheth down close with his Belly to the ground, provided always by his Skill and Policy that the Wind be against him in that Enterprize, and that the Coneys, discover him not where he lurketh; by which means he gets the benefit of the scent of the Coneys, which is carried to him by the Wind and Air, either going to their Holes, or coming out, either passing this way, or running that way; and so ordereth the business by his circumspection, that the filly Coney is debarred quite from his Hole, (which is the Haven of their hope, and the Harbour of their safety) and fraudulently circumvented and taken before they can get the advantage of their Holes. Thus having caught his Prey, he carrieth it speedily to his Master, waiting his Dogs return in some convenient lurking corner.

These Dogs are somewhat lesser than the Hounds being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-ear'd. By the form and fashion of their Bodies they may be justly called Mungrel-Grey-hounds, if they were somewhat bigger. But notwithstanding they countervail not the Grey-hound in greatness, yet will he take in one days space as many Coneys as shall arise to as big a burthen, and as heavy a load as a Horse can cary: For Crast and Subtilty are the Instruments whereby he maketh this spoil, which pernicious properties supply the places of more commendable qualities.

Let this suffice for a taste: now, after such Dogs as ferve Hunting, will follow such as serve for Hawking

and

an

is

na

no

ne

th

on

fo

th

fe

th

th

no

ma

he

ar

tri

na

SI

OT

pa

220

to

W

ki

pe

and Fowling; among which, the principal and chlefest is the Spaniel, called in Latine Hispaniolus, borrowing his name from Hispania; wherein we English-men, not pronouncing the Aspiration H, nor the Vowel I, for quickness and readiness of speech, say, Spaniel.

Of the SPANIEL.

There are two forts of Dogs which necessarily ferve for Fowling. The first findeth Game on the Land, the other on the Water. Such as delight on the Land, play their parts either by swiftness of foot, or by often queffing to fearch out and to fpring the Bird for further hope of reward, or else by some fecret figne and privy token, discover the place where they fall. The first kinde of such serve the Hamk; the second, the Net or Train. The first kinde have no peculiar names affigned them, except they are named after the Bird which by natural appointment he is allotted to take; for which confideration, some are called Dogs for the Falcon, the Pheafant, the Partridge, and fuch-like: they are commonly called by one name, viz. Spaniels, as if they originally came from Spain.

The Spaniel, whose service is required in Fowling on the Water, partly through natural inclination, and partly by diligently teaching, is properly called Aquaticus, as Water-Spaniel, because he hath usual recousse to the Water, where all his Game lieth, namely, Water-fowl, which are taken by their help in their

kind.

rfe he nft ra-

ng ed.

to cy

nd

of od

er

r-

C

) y

His fize is somewhat big, and of a measurable greatpess, having long, rough, and curled Hair, which must

liv

he

are

go wi

The me

ap

or

or

ar

ch cc he

NF

21

ti

L

C

D

must be clipt in due season: for by lessening that superfluity of Hair, they become more light and swift, and are less hindred in swimming. Ducky and Drakes are his principal Game; whereupon he is likewise named a Dog for a Duck, because in that quality he is excellent.

Of the WHITE-HOUND.

Those Hounds which are all of one colour, as all white, are the best Hounds; in like manner those which are spotted with red: but those which are spotted with a dun colour, are of little value, being faint-hearted, and cannot endure much labour. But should they happen to be whelpt coal-black, which is but seldom, they commonly prove incomparable Hounds. But if white Hounds are spotted with black, experience tells us, they are never the best Hare-hunters. White, and black and white, and grey streak'd white, are also the most beautiful.

Of FALLOW-HOUNDS.

They are hardy, and of good scent, keeping well their Chase without change; but not so swift as the white. They are of a strong constitution, and do not fear the Water; running surely, and are very hardy, commonly loving the Hart beyond any other Chase.

The best complexion for these Fallow-Hounds, is the lively

ft.

Ĉ

is

lively red, and such as have a white spot in their Forehead, or have a Ring about their Neck: but those which are yellowish, and spotted with black or dun, are of little estimation. Those which are well joynted, having good Claws, are fit to make Blood-hounds: and those which have shagged Tails, are generally swift runners. These Hounds are fitter for Princes than private Gentlemen, because they seldom run more than one Chace; neither have they any great stomack to the Hare or other small Chases: and, which is worst of all, they are apt to run at tame Beasts.

Of the Dun - Hound.

These are good for all Chases, and therefore of general use. The best coloured are such as are dun on the Back, having their four quarters tann'd, or of the complexion of a Hare's Legs: But if the Hair on the Back be black, and their Legs freckled with red and black, they then usually prove excellent Hounds: and indeed there are sew dun-coloured to be sound bad; the worst of them are such whose Legs are of a whitish colour. It is wonderful, in these creatures, to observe how much they stick upon the knowledge of their Master, especially his Voice, and Horn, and none's esse. Nay, farther, they know the distinct Voices of their Fellows, and do know who are Babblers and Liars, and who not; and will sollow the one, and not the other.

Now for Hounds, the West-country, Cheshire, and Lancashire, with other Wood - land and Mountainous Countries, breed our Slow-hound; which is a large great Dog, tall and heavy. Worcester - shire, Bedford - shire,

and many well-mixt foils, where the Champaign and Covert are of equal largeness, produce a middle-fized Dog, of a more nimble composure than the former, Lastly, the North-parts, as York-shire, Cumberland, Northumberland, and many other plain Champaign Countries, breed the Light, Nimble, Swift, Slender, Fleet Hound. After all thefe, the little Beagle is attributed to our Country; this is that Hound, which in Latine is called Canis Agalaus, or the Gaze-bound. Mastiff, which seems to be an Indigena, or Native of England, we train up most excellent Grey-hounds (which feem to have been brought hither by the Galls) in our open Champaigns. All these Dogs have deserved to be famous in adjacent and remote Countries, whither they are fent for great rarities, and ambitjoufly fought for by their Lords and Princes; although onely the fighting Dogs feem to have been known to the antient Authors; and perhaps in that Age Hunting was not fo much cultivated by our own Countreymen.

The marks of a good and fair Hound.

His Head ought to be of a middle proportion, rather long than round; his Nostrils wide; his Ears large; his Back bowed; the Fillets great; the Haunches large; the Thighs well truffed; the Ham straight; the Tail big near the Reins, and the rest stender to the end; the Leg big; the Soal of the Foot dry, and formed like a Fox's, with the Claws great.

Mrs Shewill with

and heart to be die a

He lo son

Of the Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps.

Your Bitch must come of a good kind, being strong, and well proportioned in all parts, having her Ribs and Flanks great and large. Let the Dog that lines her be of a good fair breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot Hounds: for if the Dog be old, the Whelps will participate of his Dull and

heavy nature.

n and

-fized

rmer.

Noroun-Fleet

ne is

Our

re of

inds

(15)

fer-

ies,

afly

ne-

the

ng

y-

cr

il

If your Bitch grow not naturally Proud fo foon as you would have, you may make her so, by taking two heads of Garlick, half a Gastor's Stone, the juice of Cresses, and about twelve Spanish Flies, or Cantharides: boil these together in a Pipkin which holds a pint, with some Mutton, and make Broth thereof, and of this give to the Bitch twice or thrice, and she will infallibly grow proud. The same Pottage given to the Dog, will make him desirous of copulation.

When your Bitch is lined, and with Puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her cast her Whelps; but let her unconfined walk up and down in the House and Court, and never lock her up in her Kennel; for she is then impatient of sood; and therefore you must make her some hot Broth once a

day.

If you would spay your Bitch, it must be done before she ever had Litter of Whelps: And in spaying her, take not away all the Roots or Strings of the Veins; for if you do, it will much prejudice her Reins, and hinder her swistness ever after: but by leaving some behinde, it will make her much the stronger and more hardy. Whatever you do, spay her not when she is proud; for that will endanger her life: but you may do it fifteen days after. But the best time of all is, when

How to enter young Hounds to Hunt the Hart; and what Quarries and Rewards you shall give them.

Having first taught your Hounds to know your Hallow, and the found of your Horn, then, about eighteen months old, you must lead them once a Week into the

fields, and not oftner.

The best manner to teach your Hounds, is to take a live Hare, and trail her after you upon the Earth, now one way, now another; and so, having drawn it a convenient space, hide it in the Earth: afterward set forth your Hound near the Trail, who taking Wind, runneth to and fro near the Woods, Fields, Pastures, Path-ways, and Hedges, until he find which way the Hare is gone; but with a soft and gentle pace, until at length coming near the lodged Hare, he mendeth his pace, and bestirreth himself more speedily, leaping on his Prey, and killing it, loadeth himself with his conquest, and bringing it to his Master with Triumph, he must receive both Dog and it, with all tokens of love into his Bosom.

When you hunt, let your Hart be in prime of greafe, for then he is heavier than in April or May, and cannot

stand up so long.

Then chuse your Forest wherein the Relays are of equal proportion: then place all your young Hounds with tive or six old to enter them; and then lead them to the farthest and last Relay, and cause the Harr to be hunted unto them. Being come up, uncouple your old Hounds; and having found the Track of the Hart, being wellentred in cry, uncouple likewise your young Hounds:

and

and

or v

flay whi

by 1

er.

but

hor

u

ak

vh

ha

0

Af

10

10

Ba

la

OI

m

e

e

h

h

ri G

ly

and if you find any of them lag behinds, you must bear or whip them forward.

In what place soever you kill the Hart, immediately flay his Neck, and reward your Hounds: for it is best

whilft it is hot fo to do.

There are several ways of entring Hounds. As first. by taking a Hart in Nets, and after you have cut off one of his Feet, let him go: a quarter of an hour after, affemble your young Hounds; and having found out the View or Slot of the Hart or Buck by your Bloodhounds, uncouple your young Hounds, and let them hunt. Secondly, you may bring them to quarry, by aking half a dozen Huntsmen, swift of foot, each whereof shall have two couple to lead in Liams; and having unlode'd the Hart, pursue him fair and softly, to that you tire not too much your young Hounds. After the Hart hath ran two or three hours, and that you find he begins to link, you may then cast off your young Hounds: but beware it be not when he is at Bay, and his Head full fummed; for fo you may enlanger the lives of your Hounds

But the best way of entring Hounds is at the Hare; for thereby they will learn all Doubles and Turns, better mow the Hallow, will be more tender nosed, and beter scented, by using the beaten ways and Champion.

grounds.

al.

CD.

he

ke

h,

it

et

id,

es,

he

til

115

n

1-

1.

Ç,

t

f

5

0

1

Here note, that with whatsoever you first enter your Hounds, and therewith reward them, they will ever after love that most. Wherefore, if you intend them for the Hart, enter them not first with the Hinde. And for the better hunting the Hart, enter not your young Hounds within a Toil; for there a Hart doth nothing but turn and cast about, since he cannot run end-long, and so they are always in sight of him. If then afterwards you should run him at force out of a Toil, and at length, and out of sight, you will find the Hounds to give him over quickly.

46 Of Courling with Siep-Dounds.

Laftly, enter not your Hounds nor teach them in the Morning; for if so, you will find them apt to give over in the heat of the day.

of COURSING with Grey-Hounds.

Need not declare the Excellencies which are contained in the noble and worthy Exercise of Gourling with Grey-bounds, since it is so well known to all Gentlemen who take delight in this pleasant and healthy Pastime: I shall therefore onely insist upon the breed of Grey-bounds, their Shape, their Diet and the Laws belonging to the same, according a they were commanded, allowed, and subscribed by the Duke of Norsolk, in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

First, for the Breeding of Grey-Hounds, in this you must have respect to the Country, which should be Champain, Plain, or high Downs. The best Valley are those of Belvoir, White-horse, and Evesholm, or any other where there are no Coverts, so that a Hare may stand forth and endure a Course of two or three miles as for high Downs or Heaths, the best are about Marketing the course of the country of the country

borough, Salisbury, Cirencefter, and Lincoln.

Though these places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of Grey-Hounds; yet, in my opinion, the middle, or most part arable grounds are the best: and yet those Gentlemen who dwell of Downs or plain grounds, to keep up the reputation of their own Dogs, assirm, that they are more nimble and cunning in turning than the Vale-Dogs are and Mr. Markham confesset that he hath seen a Vale-Dog so much deceived, that upon a turn he hath

Of Concling with Step Pounds.

lost more ground than hath been recoverable in the whole Course after: however, with a little care, in a short time this errour may be rectified; and then you will experimentally find The good Dogs upon the Deeps will ever beat the good Dogs upon the Plains.

It is a received opinion, that the Grey-bound-Bitch will beat the Grey-bound-Dog, by reason she excelleth him in nimbleness: but if you consider that the Dog is longer and stronger, you must look upon that opinion no more

than as a vulgar errour.

Here note, as to the breeding of your Grey-bounds, that the best Dog upon an indifferent Bitch, will not get so good a Whelp as an indifferent Dog upon the

best Bitch.

On

our.

7 to

and

Pon

)iet

3 2

24

you

b

leys

any

nay

les:

th

my

an

On

ion

im

re:

1 2

ath

loft

Observe this in general as to breeding, let your Dogs and Bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal age, not exceeding four years old: however, to breed with a young Dog and an old Bitch, may be the means of producing excellent Whelps, the goodness whereof you shall know by their Shapes in this manner.

If they are raw-bon'd, lean, loofe made, fickle or crooked-hough'd, and generally unknit in every Member; these are the proper marks of excellent shape and goodness: but if after three or four months they appear round and close-trust, fat, straight, and as it were full summed and knit in every Member, they never prove

good, fwift, nor comely.

The goodness of shape in a Grey-bound after a year and a half old, is this: his Head must be lean and long, with a sharp Nose, rush-grown from the Eye downward; a full clear Eye, with long Eye-lids; a sharp Ear, short and close falling; a long Neck a little bending, with a loose hanging Weasand; a broad Breast, straight Fore-legs, hollow Side, straight Ribs; a square slat Back, short and strong Fillets, a broad space between the Hips, a strong Stern or Tail, a round Foot, and good large Cless.

The Dieting of Grey Hounds confilts in these four things: Food, Exercise, Airing, and Kennelling.

Food of a Grey-hound is two fold: general, that is, the maintaining of a Dog. in good bodily condition; and particular, when the Dog is dieted for a Wager, or it may be for fome Diftemper he is afflicted with.

hi in lik Ai

in

w

hi

u

be

m

al

tal

fre

an

Bu

fee

th

D

C

be

be ke

th

ne

ot

di

A Grey-bound's general Food ought to be Chippings, Cruits of Bread, foft Bones and Grittles. Your Chippings ought to be scalded in Beef, Mutton, Veal or Venison-Broth; and when it is indifferent cool, then make your Bread onely float with good Milk, and give it your Grey-bounds Morning and Evening; and this

will keep them in good state of body.

But if your Dog be poor, fickly, and weak, then take Sheeps-heads, Wool and all, clean wash'd, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a Pot; and when it boils, scum the Pot, and put therein good store of Oatmeal, and such Herbs as Pottage is usually made of; boil these till the Flesh be very tender: then with the Meat and Broth seed your Dogs Morning and E-

vening, and it will recover their.

If you defigne your Grey-Hound for a Wager, then give him this Diet-bread: Take half a peck of the finest and driest Oat-meal, and a peck of good Wheat, having ground them together, boult the Meal, and scattering an indifferent quantity of Liquorish and Anniteeds well beaten together; knead it up with the Whites of Eggs, new Ale and Barm mix'd together, and bake it in small Loaves indifferent hard; then take it and soak it in Beef or any of the aforesaid Broths; and half an hour after Sun-rising, and half an hour before its setting, having first walkt and air'd your Grev-bound, give it him to eat. This will not onely increase his strength, but enlarge his Wind.

Having thus fpoken of a Grey-Hound's Feeding, either

Of Courling with Step-Dounds. 40

either generally or particularly, either for keeping him in health, or refloring it when it is loft, I shall in the next place proceed to his Exercise; and this likewise consists in two things, that is, Coursing, and

Airing.

1

n

e

3

n

1

e

e

h

•

e

ì

1

1

•

•

1

t.

As to the first, he ought to be Coursed thrice a week, in such manner that you usually reward him with Blood, which will animate and encourage him to profecute his Game: but be not unmindful to give the Have all just and lawful advantage, so that she may shand long before the Grey-bound, that thereby he may shew his utmost strength and skill before he reap the benefit of his labour.

If he kill, suffer him not to break the Hore, but take her from him; and having cleans'd his Chaps from the Wool of the Hare, then give him the Liver, Lights, and Heart, and so take him up in your Leash; and having led him home, wash his Feet with some Butter and Beer, and then put him into the Kennel, and feed him half an hour afterwards.

Upon your Grey-bounds Courling-days, give him in the Morning before you air him, a Toalt and Butter or Oyl, and nothing elle; then Kennel him till he to to his

Course.

The reason of Kennelling your Grey-hounds is this, because it breeds in Dogs Lust, Spirit, and Nimblenels is besides, it prevents several dangerous Casualties, and keeps the Pores from spending till time of necessity: and therefore do not permit your Dog to stir out of the Kennel but in the hours of Feeding, Walking, Coursing, or other necessary business.

The Laws of the Leash or Courfings

Though the Laws of Courfing may alter according to some mens swaying Fancies; yet these, sub-

feribed by the chief of the Gentry, were ever held an thentical. Take them thus in order, according to my

collection out of Mr. Markham.

First, it was ordered, that he who was chosen Fenterer, or Letter-loose of the Grey-bounds, should receive the Grey-bounds Match to run together into his Leah as soon as he came into the Field, and follow next to the Hare-finder till he came unto the Form: and no Horse-man or Foot-man, on pain of disgrace, to go before them, or on any side, but directly behinde, the space of forty yards or thereabouts.

2. That not above one Brace of Grey - bounds do

C

1

1

t

f

1

1

1

t

.2

.

course a Hare at one instant.

3. That the Hare-finder should give the Hare three Soboe's before he put her from her Lear, to make the Grey hounds gaze and attend her rising.

4. That the Fewterer shall give twelve-score Law end he loofe the Grey-bounds, except it be in danger of losing

fight.

5. That Dog that giveth the first Turn, if after the Turn be given there be neither Cost, Slip, nor Wrench extraordinary; I say, he which gave the first Turn shall be held to win the Wager.

6. If one Dog give the first Turn, and the other bear the Hare, then he which bare the Hare shall

win.

7. If one give both the first and last Turn, and no other advantage be between them, the odde Turn shall win the Wager.

8. That a Coar stiall be more than two Turns, and a Go-by, or the Bearing of the Hare equal with two

Turns.

9. If neither Dog turn the Hare, then he which leadeth last at the Covers shall be held to win the Wager.

io. If one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, and

Of Coursing with Grey Dounds.

turn her again, those two Turns shall be as much as a Coat.

au-

my

em. ive

alh t to

no be-

ace

do

ree

he

TC

ng

he

ch

1

T

11

11. If all the Course be equal, then he which bears the Hare (hall win onely; and if the be not born, the

Course must be adjudged dead.

12. If he which comes first in to the death of the Hare takes her up, and faves her from breaking, cherisheth the Dogs, and cleanfeth their Mouths from the Wool, or other filth of the Have, for such courtefie done he shall in right challenge the Hare: but not doing it, he shall have no Right, Priviledge, or Title therein.

13. If any Dog shall take a fall in the Course, and yet perform his part, he shall challenge the advantage

of a Turn more than he giveth.

14. It one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, and give divers Coats, yet in the end fland fill in the field. the other Dog, without Turn giving, running home to the Covert; that Dog which flood fill in the field shall

be adjudged to lofe the Wager.

15. If any man shall ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his Course, (though the Dog were the worse Dog in opinion, yet) the party for the offence thall either receive the difgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the Parties it shall be adjudged no Courfe.

16. Lastly, those which are chosen Judges of the Leash shall give their judgments presently before they depart from the Field, or else he in whose default it lieth shall pay the Wager by a general Voice and Sentence.

Here note, that it lieth in the power of him that hath the Office of the Leash conferred on him, to make Laws according to the Customs of Countries, and the Rule of

Reafon.

Of the Stiles of Hunting different from the English both Antique and Forrein.

tl

C

t

3

He Hunting used by the Antients was much like that way which is at present taken with the Rain-Deer, which is seldom hunted at force or with Hounds, but onely drawn after with a Blood-hound and forestall'd with Nets and Engines. So did the with all Beafts, and therefore a Dog is never commended by them for opening before he hath by fignes discovered where the Beaft lieth in his Layre, as by their drawing stiff our Harbourers are brought to give right judgement. Therefore I do not finde that they were curious in the Musick of their Hounds, or in a compolition of their Kennel or Pack, either for deepnels, or loudness, or sweetness of cry like to ours. Huntlinen were accustomed to shout and make a great noise, as Virgil observes in the third of his Georgicks :

Ingentem clamore premes ad retia Cervum.

So that it was onely with that confusion to bring the Deer to the Nets laid for him.

But we comfort our Hounds with loud and courageous Cries and Noises, both of Voice and Horn, that they may follow over the same way that they saw the

Hart pals, without croffing or coafting.

The Sicilian way of Hunting was this: when the Nobles or Gentry were informed which way a Herd of Deer passed, giving notice to one another, they appointed a meeting, and every one brought with him

him a Cross-bow, or a Long bow, and a bundle of Staves. These Staves had an Iron-spike at the bottom, and their Head is bored, with a Cord drawn through all of them; their length is about four foot: Being thus provided, they come to the Herd, and there casting themselves about into a large Ring, they surround the Deer; and then every one of them receives a peculiar stand, and there, unbinding his Faggot, ties the end of his Cord to the other who is fet in the next flation; then to support it, slicks into the ground each Staff, about the distance of ten foot one from the other. Then they take out Feathers, which they bring with them, dyed in Crimfon for this very purpose, and fafined upon a Thred which is tied to the Cord, so that with the least breath of wind they are whirled round about. Those which keep the several Stands, withdraw and hide themselves in the next Covert. After this, the chief Ranger enters within the Line, taking with him onely such Hounds which draw after the Herd; and coming near with their cry, 'rouze them: Upon which the Deer fly till they come towards the Line, where they turn off towards the left, and flill gazing upon the shaking and shining Feathers, wander about them as if they were kept in with a Wall or Pale. The chief Ranger pursues, and calling to every one by name, as he paffeth by their Stand, cries to them, that they shoot the tirst, third, or fixth, as he shall please; and if any of them miss, and single out any other than that which was affigned by the Ranger, it is counted a difgrace to him: by which means, as they pals by the several Stations, the whole Herd is killed by several hands. This Relation is of undoubted truth, as you may finde it in Pierius his Hieroglyphicke, Lib. 7. Chap. 6.

like the

ith

nd ici

n-

Boar-hunting is very usual in France, and they call it Sanglier. In this fort of Hunting the way is to use furious terrible Sounds and Noises, as well of Voice as Horn, to make the Chase turn and sly; because they are slow, and trust to their Tusks and defence: which is Agere Aprum, to bait the Boar. Yet this must be done after his Den or Hold is discovered, and the

Nets be pitched.

The Huntsmen give judgement of the Wild-Boar by the print of his Foot, by his Rooting. A wild Swine roots deeper than our ordinary Hogs, because their Snouts are longer; and when he comes into a Comfield, (as the Caledonian - Boar in Ovid) turns up one continued Furrow, not as our Hogs, routing here and there; and then by his soil he soils and wallows him in the myre: these are his Volutabra Silvestria, where his greatness is measured out; then coming forth, he rubs against some Tree, which marks his height; as also when he sticks his Tusk into it, that shews the greatness thereof. They observe the bigness of his Lesses, and the depth of his Den; where note, that they call his Dung by the name of Lesses.

Whenfoever the Boar is hunted and stands at Bay, the Huntsmen ride in, and with Swords and Spears striking on that side which is from their Horses, wound or kill him. This is in the French Hunting: but the antient Romans standing on foot, or setting their Knees to the ground, and charging directly with their Spear, did Opponere ferrum, and Excipere Aprum: for such is the antier of a Boar, that he spits himself with sury, running upon the Weapon to come at his Adversary; and so, seeking his revenge, he meets with his own destru-

Ction.

Though these Wild-Boars are frequent in France, we have none in England; yet it may be supposed that here-tofore we had, and did not think it convenient to preserve that Game: For our old Authors of Hunting reckon them amongst the beasts of Venery; and we

Lave

hat

fin

hu

ple

Sco

COL

acl

the

m

pel

in

pr

of

ar

(

ft

N

ai

h

T

L

t

-

Ł

have the proper terms belonging to them, as you may find them at the beginning of the Book. Of Bearhunting you will read more hereafter.

There are no Ros-Deer in England; but there are plenty of them in Scotland, as Six James Lindfay an old

Scottish Writer testifies.

Yet it may be thought that they have been more common in England, because our antient Huntimen acknowledge the proper terms for this Chafe; and in the first place we have distinct Ages for these Dorces, which you shall find in the Terms aforesaid. make good Chafe, stand long, and fly end-way. Compellere Dorcas, is to force the Berry, and to drive them

into the Towls.

3

Although we have no Wolves in England at this present, yet it is certain that heretofore we had Routs of them, as they have to this very day in Ireland; and in that Country are bred a race of Grey - bounds, (which are commonly called Wolf - Dogs) which are ftrong, fleet, and bear a natural enmity to the Wolf. Now in these the Grey-bounds of that Nation there is an incredible force and boldness, so that they are in great estimation, and much sought after in forrein parts, so that the King of Poland makes use of them in his hunting of great Beafts by force. Wherefore it may well be intended of the great fierceness which there Dogs have in affaulting, that when the Romans faw them play, they thought them to wonderful violent, as that they must needs have been Ferreis caveis advecti. brought up in Iron Dens.

In Poland when the King hunts, his fervants are wont to furround a Wood, though a Mile in compass, with Toyls which are pitched on firm Stakes. This being done, the whole Town, all Sexes and Ages promiscuously rush into the Inclosure, and with their loud shouts rear all the Beatls within that Wood; which making making forth, are intercepted in the Nets. Therefinall and great Beafts are entangled together, after the same manner as when amongst us we draw a New over a Pond, and after beating it all over with Poles, we bring out not onely Pike and Carp, but lesser Fry so they inclose at once Deer, Boar, Rosebuck, and Hare. For so they order their Nets, that the space of those Meshes which are twisted with greater Cords, for the entangling of greater Beafts, that space, I say, is made up with smaller Whip-cord, for the catching smaller Prev.

He hath a great race of English Mastiss, which in that Country retain their generosity, and are brought up to play upon greater beasts. It is not counted among them disagreeable to the Laws of the Chase, to use Guns. I shall now proceed to the manner of English-Hunting both antient and modern, according to the best information I could gather either out of Books, experienced Huntsmen, and my own pra-

dice.

Of Hart-Hunting.

A Hart can naturally fwim a great way; infomuch that I have heard of fome fo fore hunted in Forests near the Sea, that they have plung'd into it, and have been killed by Fisher-men a dozen miles from land.

It is reported of them when they go to Rut, and must for that purpose cross some great River or Arm of the Sea, they affemble in great Herds, the strongest goes in first, and the next of strength follows him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves

by

by

the

m

ter

an

ly

in

fa

Te

H

er d d

ć

2

by flaying their Heads on the Buttocks of each o-

The Hinde commonly carries her Calf eight or nine moneths, which usually falls in May, although fome later: fome of them have two at once, eating the Skin up wherein the Calf did lie.

As the Calf grows up, the teacheth it to run, leap, and the way it must keep to defend it felf from the

Hounds.

Ve

C .

le

he

cr

0

Harts and Hindes are very long-liv'd, living common-

The nature of a Hart.

The Hars is firangely amazed when he bears any one call, or whistle in his Fist; For trial of which, fome seeing a Hars in the Plain in motion, have called after him, saying, Ware, Ware, or Take beed; and thereupon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little stand. He heareth very persectly when his Head and Ears are erected; but heareth impersectly when he holdeth them down. When he is on foot, and not assaid, he wonders at every thing he seeth, and taketh pleasure to gaze at them.

They bear fometimes few, and fometimes more Croches; and that is the reason that many men have

erred in their judgments as to their age.

Harts are bred in most Countries; but the Antients do prefer those of Britain before all others, where they

are of divers colours.

These do excel all others in the beauty of Horns; which are very high, yet do not grow to their Bones or Scalps, but to their Skin, branching forth into many Speers, being solid throughout, and as hard as Stones, and fall off once a year: but if they remain abroad in the Air, and that thereby they are sometimes wer

244

wet and dry, they grow as light as any vanishing or other substance, as I have proved by experience, finding some which have been lost by them in the Woods; wherefore I gather, that they are of an earthly substance, concrete, and hardned with a strong heat, made like unto Bones. They lose these Horns every year in the Spring. At one year old they have nothing but Bunches, that are small significators of Horns to come: at two years they appear more perfectly, but straight and simple; at three years they grow into two Spears: at four, into three; and so increase every year in their Branches till they be six; and above that time their age is not certainly to be discerned by their Head.

Having loft their Horns in the day-time, they hide themselves, inhabiting the shades, to avoid the annoyance of Flies, and feed, during that time onely in the night. Their new Horns come out at first like Bunches, and afterwards (as I faid before) by the increase of the Sun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough Skin, which is called a Velvetbead; and as that Skin drieth, they daily try the ffrength of their new Heads upon Trees; which not onely scrapeth off the roughness, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows: for at last, when in their chafing and fretting of their new Horn against the Tree they can feel no longer pain and smart in them, they take it for high time to forfake their folitary dwellings, and return again to their former condition.

The reason why Harts and Deers do lose their Horns yearly, are these: First, because of the matter whereof they consist; for it is dry and earthy, like the substance of green Leaves which have an yearly fall, likewise, wanting glewing or holding moisture

to

110

on

for

co

ce

fte

fa

th

n

f

H

0

tl

E

V

d

b

t

I

1

-

to continue theth; wherefore the Horn of a Haw cannot be bent. Secondly, from the place they grow upon; for they are not rooted upon the Skill, but onely within the Skill. Thirdly; flow the efficient cattle; for they are hardned both with the heat of Summer, and cold of Winter; by means whereof the Pores to receive their nourithing Liquor are utterly fluir up and flopped, so as of necessity their native heat dieth; which falleth not out in other Beasts, whose Horns are for the most part hollow, and sitted for longer continuance; but these are of lesser, and the new Bunches swelling up towards the Spring, do thrust off the old Horns, having the assistance of Boughs of Trees, weight of the Horns, or by the willing exeustion of the Beast that beareth them.

de de de de como como en ce

ir

T

It is observed, that when a Hatt pricketh up his Ears, he windern tharp, very far, and fure, and difcovereth all treachery against him; but if they harre down and wag, he perceivech no danger. By their Teeth is their Age discerned, and they have four on both fides wherewith they grinde their meat; besides two other, much greater in the Male than in the Female. All thefe Beatls have Worms in their Head underneath their Tongue, in a hollow place where the Neck-bone is joyned to the Head, which are no bigger than file-blows. His Blood is not like other Beafts, for it fiath no Fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congested. His Heart is very great, and to are all those of fearful Beafts, having in it a Botte like a Cross. He hath no Gall, and that is one of the causes of the length of his life; and therefore are his Bowels so bitter, that the Dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat. The Genital-part is all nervy; the Tail finall; and the Hinde hath Udders betwixt her Thighs, with four Speans like a Gow. These are above all other four footed Beasts, both

deth

and

meal

ore li

Lim

the I

by fl

who

grea

on I

for

For

pro

tak

the

ma

wh

fou

ski

tle.

Jay

ing

ry

de

Gi

2

25

Iti

la

fo

m

fh

0

1

ingenious and fearful, who although they have large

is to run away.

And now if you will credit Gefner as a Huntsman pray here observe what account he gives of Hunting the Hart: This wild deceitful and subtile Beaft (favs he) by windings and turnings does often deceive its Hunter, as the Harts of Meandros flying from the terrible cry of Diana's Hounds. Wherefore the prudent Hunter must frame his Dogs as Pythagoras did his Scholars, with words of Art to fet them on, and take them off again at his pleasure; wherefore he must first of all compass in the Beast (en son gifte) in her own Layr, and so unharbour her in the view of the Dogs, that so they may never lose her Slot or Footing: neither must be set upon every one; either of the Herd or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one; but partly by fight, and partly by their Footing and Fumets, judge of their Game; also he must observe the largeness of his Layr. Being thus informed, then Discouples les chiens, take off your Dog - Couplings ; and some on Horse-back, others on foot, follow the Cry with greatest art, observation and speed, remembring and preventing (cer frage) the subtile turnings and headings of the Hart; straining with all dexterity to leap Hedge, Pale, Ditch, nay Rocks; neither fearing Thorns, down Hills, nor Woods, but providing frest Horse if the first tire, follow the largest Head of the whole Herd, which you must endeavour to fingle out for the Chafe; which the Dogs perceiving must follow, taking for a prohibition to follow any other.

The Dogs are animated by the winding of Horns, and voices of the Huntimen, like Souldiers to the battle, by the noise of Trumpets and other Warlike Instruments. But sometimes the crafty great beaff sendeth

deth forth his little Squire to be facrificed to the Dogs and Huntimen, instead of himself; lying close in the mean time: Then must a Retreat be sounded, and (rompre te chiens) the Dogs be broken off, and taken in (te Limier) that is, Learne again, until they be brought to the fairer Game; who ariseth in sear, yet still striveth

by flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The Nobles call this beaft (Cerf fage) a wise Hart, who, to avoid all his Enemies, runneth into the greatest Herds, and so bringeth a Cloud of errour on the Dogs, to keep them from further profecution; fometimes also beating some of the Herd into his Footings, that so he may the more easily escape, and procure a Labyrinth to the Dogs; after which he betaketh himself to his Heels again, running still with the Wind, not onely for refrigeration, but because he may the more easily hear the voice of his pursuers, whether they be far or near. At last, being for all this found out again by the observance of the Hunters, and skilful Scent of the Dogs, he flieth into the Herds of Cattle, as Cows, Sheep, &c. leaping on an Ox or Cow, laying the foreparts of his body thereon, that so touching the Earth onely with his hinder Feet, to leave a very small or no scent at all behinde for the Hounds to descern.

The chief Huntsman to Lewis the twelfth, called (le Grand Venieur) affirmeth, that on a time, they having a Hare in chase, suddenly the Hounds were at a fault, so as the Game was out of sight, and not a Dog would once this foot, whereat the Hunters were all amazed; at last, by casting about, (as it is usual in such cases) they found the fraud of the crafty beast, which is worth the memory.

There was a great White-thorn, which grew in a shadowy place as high as a Tree, and was environed with other small shrubs about it; into the which the said

t

T

10

in

İý

d

C

di

ir

2

21

C

ti

t

tl

b

F

a

n

ti

ti

H

t

4

t

8

Flate leaped, and there stood aloft the Boughs fores ding from one another, and there remained till is was thrust through by a Huntsman, rather than be would yield to the angry and greedy Hounds. Ye their manner is when they fee themselves every when intercepted, to make force at him with their Hom who first comes unto him, except prevented by Swor or Spear; which being done, the Hunter with his Horn windeth the fall of the Beaft, and then even one approacheth, luring with triumph for fuch a conquest, of whom the skilfullest openeth the Beast, to warding the Hounds with what properly belonged tinto them for their future encouragement; and for that purpose the Huntsmen dip Bread in the Skin and Blood of the Beaft, to give unto the Hounds their ful Catisfaction.

> Veloces Sparta extulos, acremq, Mollossum Pasce fero pingui, &c.

Much more might be faid of this prefent subject which is not proper in this place; wherefore I that refer you to what followeth, and your own experience.

Of the Rut of Harts.

The time of their Rutting is about the midft of September, and continues two months: the older the are, the hotter, and the better beloved by the Hinder and therefore they go to Rut before the young ones and, being very fiery, will not fuffer any of them to come near the Hinder till they have fatisfied the Venery. But the young ones are even with the old for when they perceive the old are grown weak by excess of Rutting, the young will frequently attaque them.

them, and make them quit the place, that they may be

mafters of the fport.

They are easily kill'd in Rutting-time: for they follow the scent of the Hindes with such greediness, laying their Noses to the ground, that they mind that solely, and nothing else.

They are such great lovers of the sport, it is very dangerous for any man to come near them at this season, for then they will make at any living creature of

different kind.

SHAP SHE SHE SHEET

In some places, in October their Lust artieth, and also in May; and then, whereas at other times the Males live apart from the Females, they go about like lastivious Lovers, seeking the company of their Females, as it were

at the Market of Venus.

The Males in their raging defired Lust have a peculiar noise, which the French call Reere. One Male will cover a many Females, continuing in this carnal appetite a month or two. The Females are chafte, and unwilling to admit of Copulation, by reason of the rigour of the Male's Genital; and therefore they fink down on their buttocks when they begin to feel his Seed, as it hath been often observed in tame Harts; and if they can, the Females run away, the Males striving to hold them back within their fore-Feet. It cannot be well faid, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather runnings for fo are they filled with greatest severity. month or fix weeks is over of their Rutting, they grow tamer bymuch, and laying afide all fiercenels, they return to their folitary places, digging every one by himfelf a feveral Hole or Ditch, wherein they lie, to affwage the firong favour of their Luft; for they flink like Goars; and their Face beginneth to look blacker than at other times: and in those places they live till some Showers distil from the Clouds; after which, they return to their Pasture again, living in Flocks as before.

The Female, thus filled, never keepeth company again with the Male until the is delivered of her butthen, which is eight months; and but one at a time feldom two, which the lodgeth cunningly in fome Covert; it the perceive them stubborn and wilde the will beat them with her Feet till they lie close and quiet.

Offentimes the leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run and leap over buthes, flones, and small shrubs; and so continueth all the Summer long, while their own

frength is most considerable.

It is very pleafant to observe them when they go to Rut, and make their Vaut. For when they smell the Hinde, they raise their Nose up into the Air, looking aloft, as though they gave thanks to the God of Nature, who gave them so great delight and pleasure. And if it be a great Hart, he will turn his Head and look about to see whether there be none near to interrupt or spoil his sport. Hereat the young fly away for fear: but if there be any of equal bigness, they then strive which shall Vaut first; and in the opposing each other, they scrape the ground with their Feet, shocking and butting each other fo furioufly, that you shall hear the noise they make with their Horns a good half mile so long, till one of them is Victor. The Hinde beholding this Pastime, never stirs from her station, expecting, as it were, the Vauting of him who hath the Maftery; and having got it, he bellows, and then instantly covers her.

During the time of their Rut, they eat but very little; for they feed onely on what they fee before them, minding more the track of the Hindes. Their chief meat is the red Mushrome, which helps them to evacuate their Grease: they are then extraordinary hot, infomuch, that every where as they pass and find waters,

they tumble and lie therein.

Harry Blay Color.

The time of Harts Mewing, or Casting

me,

me

and

to

nd

Wn

to

he

ng

3-

e.

d

r-

r

n.

The old Harr casteth his Head sooner than the young: and the time is about the months of February and March.

Here note, that if you geld an Hart before he hath an Head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he hath it, he will never after Mew or calt it: and so, if you geld him when he hath a Velvethead, it will ever be so, without fraying or burnishing.

Having cast their Heads, they instantly withdraw unto the Thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient places where they may have good Water, and strong Feeding, near some ground where Wheat or Pease is sown: But young Harts do never betake themselves to the Thickets till they have born their third Head, which is in the sourth year.

After they have Mewed, they will begin to Button in March and April; and as the Sun grows strong, and the season of the year puts forward the Crop of the Earth, so will their Heads increase in all respects: so that in the midst of June their Heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the year.

Of the Coats and Colour of Harts:

The Coats of Harts are of three fundry forts, Brown, Red, and Fallow; and of every of these Coats there proceeds two forts of Harts, the one are great, the other little.

Of brown Harri, there are forme great, long, and hairy, bearing a high Head, red of colour, and well F 2 beam'd.

beam'd, who will fland before Hounds very long, being longer of breath, and swifter of foot than those of a shorter stature.

There are another fort of brown Harts, which are little, thort, and well-fet, bearing commonly a black Main, and are fatter and better Venison than the former, by reason of their better feeding in young Copfes.

m

F

th

10

r

2

They are very crafty, especially when in grease; and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after: besides, they are very sensible they cannot then stand long before the Hounds. If they be old, and feed in good ground, then are their Heads black, sair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The Fallow-Harts bear their Heads high, and of a whitish colour, their Beams small, their Antliers long, slender, and ill-grown, having neither Heart, Courage, nor Force. But those which are of a lively Red-sallow, having a black or brown List down the Ridge of the Back, are strong, bearing fair and high Heads, well

furnished and beam'd.

Of the Heads and Branches of Hearts, and their diversities.

As there are several sorts of Harrs, so have they their Heads in a divers sort and manner, according to their Age, Country, Rest, and Feeding. Here note, that they bear not their first Head, which we call Broches, and in a Fallow-Deer Pricks, until they enter the second year of their Age. In the third year they bear sour, six, or eight small Branches: At the fourth, they bear eight on ten: at the fifth, ten or twelve: at six, sourteen or sixteen: and at the seventh year they bear their Heads Beam'd, Branched, and Summed with as much as ever they will bear; and do never multiply but in greatness offely.

How to know an old Hart by the Slot, Entries, Abatures and Foils, Fewmets, Gate and Walks, Fraying-Stocks, Head and Branches.

I shall proceed in order, and first of the Slot. You must carefully look on the Treadings of the Hart's Foot: If you find the Treadings of two, the one long, the other round, yet both of one bigness; yet shall the long Slot declare the Hart to be much larger than the round.

Moreover, the old Harr's hind-foot doth never over-

reach the fore-foot; the young one's doth.

But above all, take this Observation: When you are in the Wood, and have found the Slot of a Harr, mark what manner of Footing it is, whether worn, or tharp; and accordingly observe the Country, and thereby, judge whether either may be occasioned thereby. For Harts bred in mountainous and stony Countries, have their Toes and sides of their Feet worn, by reason of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not on the Heel: whereas in other places they stay themselves more on the Heel than Toes: For infost or sandy ground they slip upon the Heel, by reason of their weight; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the Heel grow broader and greater. And thus you may know the age of a Harr by his Slot or Treading.

The next thing to be confidered, is the Fewmishing; and this is to be judged of in April or May. If the Fewmets be great, large, and thick, they fignific the Hars.

to be old.

ing

are

or-

p.

nd

cn

cy be

k,

he

6,

L

of

1

In the midst of June and July, they make their Fewmets or Fewmilling in great Croteys, very fost; and from that time to the end of August, they make them great, long, knotty, anointed and gilded, let-

F 3

ting them fall but few and scattered. In September and October there is no longer judging, by reason of the Rut.

Thirdly, If you would know the height and thicknels of the Hart, observe his Entries and Galleries into the Thickets, and what Boughs he hath over-stridden, and mark from thence the height of his Belly from the ground.

By the height of the Entries, we judge the age of a Hant: for a young Deer is such as creeps usually; but

the old is stiff and stately.

His greatness is known by the height of his creeping as he passes to his Harbour; the young Deer creeping

low, which the old will not stoop to.

Fourthly, Take notice of his Gate, by which you may know whether the Hart be great and long, and whether he will stand long before the Hounds or not For all Harts which have a long step will stand up very long, being swift, light, and well breath'd; but if he leave a great Slot, which is the signe of an old Deer, he will never stand long when he is chasted.

Laftly, Take notice of his Fraying-post: Where note, the elder the Hart is, the sooner he goeth to Fray, and the greater is the Tree he seeketh to Fray upon, and

such as he cannot bend with his Head.

All Stags as they are burnish'd, beat their Heads dry against some Tree or other, which is called their Fraying-post: The younger Deer against weaker and lesser Trees, and lower; the elder against bigger and stronger, and Fray higher; so that accordingly we considently judge of their age, and of the nearness of their Harbour; for that is the last Ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the Head and Branches, the Hart is old, Fire, when the compass of the Bur is large, great, and well pearl'd.

Second-

th

de

gi

u

Ь

to

d

ti

F

ŀ

b

Of Part hunting.

Secondly, when the Beam is great, burnished, and well pearl'd, being straight, and not made crooked by the Antliers.

Thirdly, when the Gutters therein are great and

deep.

nd

he

k-

to

n,

10

18

Fourthly, when the first Antlier, called Antoiller, is great, long, and near to the Bur; the Surantsier near unto the Antlier: and they ought to be both well

pearl'd.

Fifthly, The rest of the Branches which are higher, being well ordered and set, and well grown, according to the bigness and proportion of the Head; and the Croches, Palm or Crown being great and large according to the bigness of the Beam, are the signess of an old Hart.

Now fince many men cannot understand the names and diversities of Heads according to the Terms of Hunting, I shall in the following Chapter give you a brief account thereof.

The Names and diversities of Heads, according to Hunting - Terms.

The thing that beareth the Antliers, Royals, and Tops, is called the Beam; and the little streaks therein are called Gutters.

That which is about the Crust of the Beam, is termed Pearls: and that which is about the Bur it self, formed like little Pearls, is called Pearls bigger than the

reft.

The Bur is next the Head; and that which is about the Bur, is called Pearls. The first is called Antlier; the second, Surantlier: All the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the Crown, Palm, or Croche, are called Royals, and Sur-royals: The little Buds of Broches about the Top, are called Groches.

F 4

Their

Their Heads go by feveral Names: The first Head is called a Crowned Top, because the Groches are ranged in form of a Crown.

6

gr

O

f

h

O

tl O

The second is called a Palmed Top, because the Cro-

ches are formed like a mans Hand.

Thirdly, all Heads which bear not above three or four, the Croches being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of Nuts, are to be called Heads of fo many Croches.

Fourthly, all Heads which bear two in the Top, or having their Croches doubling, are to be called Forked

Heads.

Fifthly, all Heads which have double Burs, or the Antliers, Royals, and Croches turned downwards, contrary to other Heads, are onely called Heads.

How to seek a Hart in bis Haunts or Feeding-places according to the seasons of the year.

All Haris do change their manner of Feeding every month; and therefore I shall treat orderly of every one till I have concluded the year; beginning with that month which is the conclusion of their Rutting-time, and that is November, in which month they feed in Heaths and Broomy places.

In December they Herd together, and withdraw themselves into the strength of the Foress, to shelter themselves from the cold Winds, Snows, and Fross, and do feed on the Holm-trees, Elder-trees, Brambles, with whatsoever other green thing they can find, and

it it fnow, they will skin the Trees like a Goat.

In January, February, and March, they leave Herdding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the Forest will feed on the Winter-pafture; sometimes making their incursions into the neighbouring Corn-Fields, if they can perceive the blades

31

blades of Wheat, Rie, or fuch-like, appear above

ground.

Or

ıc,

of

or

4

C

In April and May they rest in their Thickets, and other bushy and shady places, during that season, and stir very little till Rutting-time, unless they are diffurbed.

There are some Hearts are so cunning, that they will have two several Layrs to harbour in, a good distance one from the other; and will frequently change (for their greater security) from the one to the other, taking still the benefit of the Wind.

In these months they go not to the Soil, by reason of the moisture of the Spring, and the Dew that continual-

ly overspreadeth the Grais.

In June, July, and August, they are in their pride of grease, and do resort to Spring-Copies, and Comfields; onely they seldom go where Rye or Barley grow.

In September and Odober they leave their Thickets and go to Rut; during which feafon they have no cer-

tain place either for food or harbour.

In what manner the Huntsman shall go drawing in the Springs.

Let him not come too early into the Springs or Hewts where he thinketh the Harr feedeth, and is at relief. For they usually go to their Lays in the Springs; and if they be old crafty Deer, they will return to the border of the Copfe, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching danger: and if they chance once to vent the Huntsman or the Hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntiman's proper time. Let him beat the outlides of the Springs or Thickets: if he find the Track of an Harr or Deer, let him observe

whe-

Dew will be beaten off, the Foil fresh, or the ground broken or printed, with other tokens: so he may judge

and

the

low

Alfe

nef

in C

opp

ing

VOL

dr

ho

ne

ea:

hi

W

13

w

W

(1

1

h

his Game lately went that way.

Having found this Slot or Treading, and the Hound flicking well upon it, let him hold him short, for he shall better draw being so held, than if he were let a length of the Lyam: and thus let him draw till he is come to the Covert, if possible, taking notice by the way of the Slot, Poss, Entries, and the like, till he had harboured him. That done, let him plash down smal Twigs, some above, and some below, as he shall think fit; and then, whilst the Hound is hot, let him beat the outsides, and make his Ring-walks twice or thrice about the Wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the Eye; another while through the thick and Covert, for fear lest his Hound should overshoot it, having still better Scent in the Coverts than High-ways.

If he doubt the Harr is gone out of the Ring-walks, of fears he hath drawn amifs; then let him go to the mark which he plashed, and draw counter, till he may take up

the Fewmet.

The directions for Harbouring a Stag are thefe:

The Harbourer having taught his Hound to draw mute always round the outlide of the Covert, as foon as his Hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing, and straining his Lyam, he then is to seek for his Slot: If he findes the Heel thick, and the Toe spreading broad, it argues an old Deer, especially if it is fringed, (that is, broken on the sides.) However, if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the Slot, he is to draw into the Covert, as he passes observing the size of the Entries; the larger and

and higher, the elder the Deer; as also his Croppings of the Tenders as he paffes: (the younger the Deer, the lower; the elder the Deer, the higher he branches.) Also observe his Fewmishings as your pass, whose largenels bespeak the largeness of the Deer; also be curious in observing his Fraying-post, which usually is the last opportunity you have to judge by, the eldest Deer Fraying highest against the biggest Trees; and that found. you may conclude his Harbour not far off; therefore draw with more circumfpection, checking your Draughthound to fecure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the Deer in the Wind: and then by his eagerness you having discovered that, ought to draw him; and having retired some distance back, you are with your Hound to round the place first at a considerable distance; and then, if you find him not disturbed, a little within that make your fecond round; which will not onely secure you that he is in his Harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (unforc'd) pass that Taint your Hound hath left in the rounding of him. So that having broken a bough for his direction, he may at any time unharbour that Hart. hot weather, Grais, Hor

The state of the s

How to find a Hart loft the night before.

A Huntiman may fail of killing a Hart divers ways; sometimes by reason of great heat, or overtaken with the night and the like. It any such thing should happen, then thus you must do. First, they which follow the Hounds, must mark the place where they left the Chase, and at break of day bring your Bloodhound to it with your Kennel after him. If any hound vents, whom he knows to be no Lier or Babler, he shall put his Hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two Notes with his Horn, to call all his fellows about

about him: and if he find where the Hars is gone into some likely Govert or Grove, then must be draw he Hounds about it, and beat cross through it. And it there he renews his Slot-or View, let him first consider whether it be the right or not: if it be the right, he him blow his Horn. Now if he find five or six Layn let it not seem strange; for Hars hunted and spent, de frequently make many Layrs together, hecause the cannot stand, but lie and seed.

Hars which are hunted, most commonly run up the Wind, and straight forwards as far as they are able, and finding any Water or Soil, do stay a long time therein by which means their Joynes are so benummed and stiffned, that coming out they cannot go sat, nor stand up long; and therefore are compelled to take any Harbour they can finde, which may be a present Covert to

them.

Hore to find a Hart in bigh Woods.

In the feeking of a Harrin high Woods, regard must be had to two things; that is, the Thickets of the Fo-

rest, and the Season.

If it be in very hot weather, Gnats, Horse-flies, and such-like, drive the Deer out of the high Wood, and they disperse themselves into small Groves and Thickets near places of good feeding. According to the Coverts which are in the Forest, so accordingly the Huntsman must make his coquiry. For sometimes the Harts lie in the Tusts of White-thoma sometimes under little Trees; otherwhiles under great Trees in the high Woods; and sometimes in the Skirts of the Forest under the shelter of little Groves and Copses. And therefore the Huntsman must make his Ring-walk great or small, according to the largeness of those Harbours or Coverts.

Hom

F

Hu

Ho

not

obí

he

Th

to

ter Hu

fha

bin

me

fh

Hurth

do

fo

hi

п

d

F

2

t

How to Unbarbour a Hart, and east off the Hounds.

When the Relays are well set and placed, let the Huntsman with his Pole walk before the Kennel of Hounds: Being come to the Blemishes, let him take notice of the Slot, and such other marks as may be observed from the View of the Deer, to the intent he may know whether the Hounds run Riot or not. Then let the Huntsmen cast abroad about the Covert, to discover the Hart-when he is unharboured, the better to distinguish him by his Head or otherwise. The Huntsman having unharboured him, all the Hounds shall be cast off, they crying one and all, To him, to him; That's be, that's be, with such words of encouragement.

STALL STATES

If the Blood-hound as he draweth chance to overfhoot, and draw wrong or counter, then must the Huntsman draw him back, and say, Back, back, Soft, soft, until he hath set him right again: and if he perceive that the Hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down, and observing the Slot or Ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on the Back, and giving him some encouraging words. Thus let him draw on with his Hound till the Deer be described.

Now some are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their Layr, they will coast round about to finde some other Deer, whereby the Hounds may be consounded in the change of hunts.

If the Huntiman have the Hart in view, let him ftill draw upon the Slot, blowing and hollowing until the Hounds are come in. When he feeth they are in full cry, and take it right, he may then mount, keeping under the Wind, and coast to cross the Hounds that are in chase, to help them at default, if need require.

What subtilties are used in Hunting a Hart at force.

Let the Huntiman never come nearer the Hound in cry, than fifty or threescore paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off their Relays. a Hart make Doublings, or wheel about, or cross before the Hounds, as he feldom doth; if then you come in to hastily, you will spoil the Slot or View; and so the Hounds, for want of Scent, will be apt to overshoot the Chase: but if after hunting an hour, the Huntsman perceive that the Hart makes out end-ways before the Hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right then he may come in nearer, and blow a Recheat to the Hounds to encourage them. Hereupon the Hart will frequently feek other Deer at Layr, and rouze them, on purpose to make the Hounds hunt change, and will lie down flat in some of their Layrs upon his Belly, and & let the Hounds over-shoot him: and because they shall neither scent or vent him, he will gather up all his four Feet under his Belly, and will blow and breath on forme moist place of the ground, in such fort, that I have feen the Hounds pass by such a Hart within a yard, and never vent him.

For which cause Huntsmen should blemish at such places they see the Hart enter into a Thicket, to this end, that if the Hounds should fall to change, they may return to those Blemishes, and put their Hounds to the right Slot and View, until they have roughed or found

him again.

The Hart hath another way to bring the Hounds to change; and that is, when he feeth himself closely pursued, and that he cannot shun them, he will break into one Thicket after another to finde Deer, rouzing and herding with them, continuing to to do sometimes above an hour before he will part from them, or break

break Herd. Finding himself spent, he will break herd, and fall a doubling and crossing in some hard High-way that is much beaten, or else in some River or Brook, in which he will keep as long as his breath will permit him: and if he be far before the Hounds, it may be then he will use his sormer device, in gathering his Legs up under his belly as he lies stat along upon some hard and dry place. Sometimes he will take soil, and so cover himself under the water, that you shall perceive nothing but his Nose.

In this case the Huntsman must have a special regard to his old Hounds, who will hunt leisurely and fearfully; whereas the young Hounds will over-shoot their

Game.

the

r if

fore

too

the

the

nan the

be

he

vill

on

lie

6

all

ur

ne

en e-

h

is

e

If it so chance that the Hounds are at a default, and hunt in several companies, then it may be guessed that the Hart hath broken herd from the fresh Deer, and that the fresh Deer have separated themselves also: then regard how the old Staunch-hounds make it, and observe the Slot; and where you see any of the old Hounds challenge, cherish and encourage him, hastening the rest in to him, by crying Hark to such a Hound, calling him by his Name.

Here is to be noted, that they cannot make it so good in the hard High-ways as in other places, because they cannot have there so perfect a scent, either by reason of the Tracks or Footing of divers sorts of beasts, or by reason of the Sun drying up the moissure, so that the dust covereth the Slot: now in such places (such is the natural subtilty of that beast for self-preservation) the Hart will make many Crosses and Doublings, holding them long together, to make the Hounds give over the Chase.

In this case, the first care of the Huntsman is, to make good the Head, and then draw round apace, first down the Wind, though usually Deer go up the Wind:

and if the way is too hard to Slot, be fure to try far a neigh back. This expert Hounds will frequently door themselves.

But if a Hart break out into the Champion-country, and that it be in the heat of the day, between Noon and three of the clock; then if the Huntiman perceive his Hounds out of breath, he must not force them much but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the Slot or View, yet it is sufficient if they but was their Tails; for, being almost spent, it is painful for them to call.

The last Refuge of a Hart forely hunted is the Water, (which, according to Art, is termed the Soil) (wimming oftness down the Stream, keeping the middle, fearing left by touching any bough by the Water-side

he may give fcent unto the Hounds.

Always when you come to a Soil, (according to the old Rule: He that will bis Chase finde, let bim stry up the River, and down the Wind) be fure if your Hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the River: for though he should keep the very middle of the Stream, yet will that, with the help of the Wind, lodge part of the Stream, and Imbosh that comes from him on the Banks, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many. Therefore first try up the Stream: and where a Den sirst breasts soil, both Man and Hound will best perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a Harr is fpent, are these: First, He will run stiff, high, and lompering. Secondly, If his Mouth be black and dry without any Foam upon it, and his Tongue hanging our; but they will often close their Mouths, to deceive the Spectators. Thirdly, By his Slot: for oftentimes he will close his Claws together, as if he went at leisure; and straightway again open them wide; making great

glidings,

tr &

lod

try,

Oon

ive

rch,

noc

vag

for

CT.

m-

te

de

to

I

at

glidings, and hitting his Dew-claws upon the ground, tollowing the beaten Paths without Doublings; and fometimes going all along by a Ditch-fide, feeking some Gap, having not strength to leap it otherways: yet it hath been often seen, that Dead-run Deer have taken very great leaps.

Thus must a Huntsman govern himself according to the subtlety and Crast of the Deer, observing their Doublings and Grossings, and the places where they are made; making his Rings little or great, according to the nature of the place, time, and season: For Hounds are subject to shoot where Herbs and Flowers have their most lively scent and odoriferous smell. Neither must you be unmindful of the perfection and impersection of your Hounds. Thus doing, it will be very hard suck if you loose a Hart by default.

How to kill a Hart at Bay:

It is very dangerous to go in to a Hart at Bay, and especially at Rutting-time; for then they are most fierce.

There are two forts of Bays; one on the Land, the other on the Water. If now the Hart be in a deep Water, where you cannot well come to him, then couple up your Dogs; for should they long continue in the Water, it would endanger surbating or foundering. Get then a Boat, or swim to him with a Dagger; or else with a Rope that hath a Noose, and throw it over his Horns: for if the Water be so deep that the Hart swims, there is no danger in approaching him; otherwise you must have a care.

As to the Land-bay, if the Harr be burnished, then must you consider the place: For if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no Wood nor Covert, it is dangerous and hard to come in to him; but if

R

it be in a Hedge-side or thicket, then, whilst the Haris staring on the Hounds, you may come covertly among the bushes behinde him, and cut his Throat. If you miss your aim, and the Hart turn head upon you, the make some Tree your refuge; or when the Hart is at Bay, couple up your Hounds; and when you see the Hart turn head to sly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your Sword.

Directions at the Death of Buck or Hart.

The first Ceremony when the Huntsmen come in to the Death of a Deer, is to cry Ware Hanneh, that the Hounds may not break into the Deer; which having fecured, the next is cutting his Throat, and there blooding the youngest Hounds, that they may the bet ter love a Deer, and learn to leap at his Throat; then, having blown the Mort, and all the company come in, the best person, that hath not taken Say before, is to take up the Knife that the Keeper or Huntiman is to lay cross the Belly of the Deer, standing close to the left Shoulder of the Deer, some holding by the Fore-legs, and the Keeper or Huntsman drawing down the Pizle, the person that takes Say, is to draw the edge of the Knife leifurely along the very middle of the Belly, beginning near the Brisket; and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to discover how fat the Deer is, then he that is to break up the Deer first flits the Skin from the cutting of the Throat downward, making the Arber, that so the Ordure may not break forth; and then he is to pounch him, rewarding the Hounds therewith. Next, he is to present the same person that took the Say with a drawn Hanger, to cut off the Head; which done, and the Hounds rewarded therewith, the concluding Ceremony is, if a Buck a double, if a Stag a treble Mort

Mort blown by one, and then a whole Recheat in Confort by all that have Horns; and that finished, immediately a general Whoo whoop.

It was formerly termed, Winde a Horn, because (as I suppose) all Horns were then compassed; but since straight Horns are come into fashion, we say, Blow aHorn,

and fometimes, Sound a Horn.

In many cases heretofore, Leasing was observed; that is, one must be held, either cross a Saddle, or on a mans back, and with a pair of Dog-couples receive ten pound and a Purse; that is, ten stripes, (according to the nature of the Crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh, that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a Purse.

There are many Faults, as coming to late into the Field, missaking any term of Art; these are of the lesser fize: of the greater magnitude, hallowing a wrong Deer, or leaving the Field before the death of the Deer,

&cc.

art is

ong

you

then

is at

the

kill

hat

ha-

ere et-

en,

ne

is is to

g

Buck-Hunting.

This Beast is common in most Countries, being as corpulent as a Hart; but in quantity resembleth

more a Roe, except in colour.

The Males have Horns, which they lofe yearly; but the Fernales none at all. Their colours are divers, but most commonly branded or fandy on the back, having a black list all down along on the back; their bellies and sides spotted with white, which they lose by their old age: and the Does do especially vary in colour, being sometimes all white; and therefore like unto Goats, except in their hair, which is shorter:

Iti their Horns they differ not much from a Hare;

except in quantity, and that they grow out of the Heads like Fingers out of the Hand; such is this Faller Deer, being therefore called Cervus Palmais. As in their other parts, they much refemble a Roe-buck. The flesh is excellent for nourishment, but their blood ingenders too much Melancholy.

Now know, the Buck is Fawn'd about the latter en of May, and its nature and properties differ little from

the Hart.

There is not so much art and skill in Lodging a Bad as in the Harbouring a Hart; noither is there require so much drawing after, but onely you are to judgeb the View, and mark what Grove or Covert he entreth for he will not wander and rove up and down so often a Hart, nor so frequently change his Layr.

He maketh his Fewmishings in divers manners and forms, as the *Hart* doth, according to the diversity of Food, and time of the day, Morning and Evening; but

most commonly they are round.

The Hart and Buck differ thus in parallel. When the Buck is hunted, he oft-times betakes himself to such firong Holds and Coverts as he is most acquainted with, not flying far before the Hounds, not crosting not doubling, using no such subtleties as the Hart is accufromed to.

The Buck will beat a Brook, (but feldom a great River, as the Hart) but it must not be so deep; nor can he stay so long at Soil as the Hart will do: onely he leapeth lightlier at Rut than the Hart; and groanesh or treateth, as a Hart belleth, but with a lower Voice, ratling in the Throat. And here is to be noted, they love not one another, nor will they come near each other's Layr.

Buck Venison is incomparable food, and is dressed like Hart-Venison; onely this last will be preserved low

ger than the former.

The

d

tl

H

h

O

I

The Buck herds more than the Hars, and lieth in the drieft places: but if he be at large, unconfined within the limitary Precincts of a Park, he will herd but little from May to August, because the flies trouble him. He takes great delight in hilly places; but the Dales are his joy to feed in.

llow for her gen

end

ad.

re

by th

n

Bucks have feldom or never any other Relays than the

old Hounds.

The greatest subtlety a Huntsman need use in the Hunting of the Buck, is to beware of Hunting Gounter or Change, because of the plenty of Fallow-Deer, which use to come more directly upon the Hounds than the Red-Deer doth. Now upon the breaking up of a Buck the Hounds Reward is the same with that of the Hart.

Roe-Hunting.

The Roe-Buck is called by the Greeks and Latines by one name, viz. Dorens. These beasts are very plentiful in Africa, Germany, and Helvetian Alps.

Their swiftness doth not onely appear upon the Earth, but also in the Waters, cutting them when they swim as with Oars; and therefore they love the Lakes and strong Streams, breaking the Floods to come at fresh Pasture, feeding deliciously on sweet Rushes, and Bull-rushes. Horns onely grow upon the Male, and are set with six or seven branches, not palmed, but branchy, yet shorter than Follow Deer: They differ not much from common Deer, but in their Horn; and whereas the Horns of other Beatts are bollow towards the root, whereinto entereth a certain long substance; the Horns of these, as also of the vulgar Buck and Elk,

are folid whithout any fuch emptiness, onely they are full of Pores.

It is supposed by the Learned, that a Roe was called in Greek Dorcas, by reason of the quickness of her sight; and that she can see as perfectly in the night as in the day. Physitians have observed a certain viscous humour about her bowels, which by anointing Eyes that are dark, heavy, and near blinde, quickens the sight most wonderfully.

It is reported of them, that they never wink, no not when they fleep; for which conceit their blood is prescribed for them who are dim-fighted or pur-blinde. The tail of this beaft is leffer and thorter than a Fallow-Deer's; infomuch that it is doubtful whether it be a

tail or not.

They keep for the most part in the Mountains among the Rocks, being very swift; and when they are hunted (Martial saith) they hang upon the Rocks with their Horns, to delude the Dogs, after a strange manner, ready to fall and kill themselves, and yet receive no harm, where the Dogs dare not approach, as apgeareth in his Epigram.

Pendentem summa Capream, de rupe videbis, Casuram speres, decipit illa Canes.

This might be more properly meant of the Wild-

They are most easily taken in the Woods. When they are chased, they defire to run against the Wind, because the coldness of the Air retresheth them in their course; and therefore they who hunt them place their Dogs with the Wind. They are often taken by the counterseiting of their Voice, which the skilful Huntsman deth by the affistance of a Lease in his Mouth.

This

(

This Beaft is very easie to hunt, and goeth to Rut (or Town most properly) in October, the extent whereof consists of fifteen days, and never parteth with the Doe

till Fawning-time.

full

led

it;

he

ur

ire

Ac

of

1

The Doe, finding her self near her time, secretly departs from the Buck, and sawneth as far from him and his knowledge as she can; for could he finde the Fawn, he would kill it. Now when the Fawn grows big, and can run and seed, she then returns to the Buck again very lovingly, with all expedition: the cause whereof, is the Roes sawning Twins, which are commonly Buck and Doe; so that being accustomed together in youth, they do love to keep company ever after.

As foon as the Roe-Buck cometh from Rut, he casts his Horns; and there are few after two years old which Mew not at Alballontide, but their Heads grow quickly

out again.

The Venison of a Roe is never out of season, being never sat, and therefore they are to be hunted at any time: onely this, some savour ought to be shewn the Doe whilst she is big with Fawn, and afterwards till her Fawn is able to shift for himself: besides, some Roe-Does have been killed with tive Fawns in their belly.

They usually when hunted, take a large first Ring,

and afterwards hunt the Hounds.

When they are hunted, they turn much and often, and come back upon the Dogs directly: When they can no longer endure, they then take Soil, as the Hart doth, and will hang by a bough in such manner, that nothing shall appear of them above Water but their Snout, and will suffer the Dogs to come just upon them before they will sir.

He is not called by the skilful in the Art of Hunting a Great Roe - Buck, but a Fair Roe - Buck. The Herd of them, is called a Reavy: And if he hath nor Beavy-

4

greafe.

greafe on his Tail when he is broken up, he is morefit

to be Dogs-meat than Mans-meat.

The Hounds must be Rewarded with the Bowels the Blood, and Feet flit afunder, and boiled all toget This is more properly called a Dofe than a Reward. For what might be faid farther concerning Roe-Hunting, I shall refer you to the Chapters of Han and Buck-Hunting.

Rain-Deer-Hunting.

He Rain-Deer is not unlike a Hart, onely his Head is fuller of Antliers, being bigger and wider in compass; for he bears four and twenty branches and more according to his age, having a great Palm on the top, as a Hart, and his Fore-Antliers are Palmed alfo.

He flieth end-ways when he is Hunted, by reason of the great weight of his Head. When he hath stood up a great while, doubled, croffed, and used other crafty tricks to thun the Hounds, he makes a Tree his last refuge; so planting himself, that nothing can affault him but just before, placing his buttock and Haunches against the Tree, and hanging down his Head low to the ground, whereby all his Bedy is covered.

As the Hart strikes with his Head, the Rain-Deer strikes with his Feet against any one that comes in to him to help the Dogs, not in the least turning his Head, that being his chiefelt defence, and feems very terrible to the Hounds.

He feedeth like the Hart, and maketh his Fewmets fometimes long, and fometimes flat, and beareth fatter

Venison,

V

áI

tl

is

f F

n

Venison, when he is in pride of Greate, than any other Deer doth, and is very long liv'd. He is more commonly drawn after with a Blood-hound, than hunted, and intrapped with Nets and Englines, and that in the thick and greatest Holds, if it may be; which is the best and speediest way, by reason of his great and spreading Head. Since there are but sew of them in England, I shall desist from discoursing farther concerning him,

els

ge-

ng

Of the Nature and Properties of a Hare.

A N Hare is called in Hebrew Arnebet in the Ferninine gender, which word possessed a great many that all Hares were Females: He is called Lagus by the Greeks, for his immoderate Lust; and by the same Nation Ptoox, for his Fear; and by the Latines Lepus, quasi Levi-pes, signifying Swiftness of feet (alias) Lightfoot.

There are four forts of Hares; some live in the Mountains, some in the Fields, some in the Marshes, some every where, without any certain place of abode. They of the Mountains, are most swift; they of the Fields, less nimble; they of the Marshes, most slow; and the wandering Hares are most dangerous to follow; for they are so cunning in the ways and muses of the Fields, running up the Hills and Rocks, because by custom they know the nearer way, with other tricks, to the consusion of the Dogs, and differencouragement of the Hunters.

In the next place, a description of the parts of an Hare will not be unnecessary, since it is admirable to brabold how every Limb and Member of this Beast is

composed for celerity. In the first place, the Head is round, nimble, short, yet of convenient longitude, prone to turn every way. The Ears long, and losty, like an Asses: for Nature hath so provided, that every fearful and unarmed creature should have long and large Ears that by hearing it might prevent its Enemies, and save it self by slight. The Lips continually move sleeping and waking; and from the slit they have in the middle of their Nose, cometh the term of Harre-lips which are so divided in men.

The Neck of an Hare is long, small, round, soft, and stexible: The Shoulder-bone straight and broad for her more easie turning: her Legs before soft, and stand broader behinde than before, and the hinder Legs longer than the former: a Breast not narrow, but sitted to take more breath than any Beast of that bigness: a nimble Back, and sleshy Belly, tender Loins, hollow Sides, fat Buttocks, silled up, strong and nervous Lines. Their Eyes are brown, and they are subtile, but not bold; seldom looking sorward, because going by jumps. Their Eye-lids coming from the Brows are too short to cover their Eyes, and therefore this Sense is very weak in them: when they watch they shut their Eyes, and when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little Bladders in their Belly filled with matter, out of which both the one and the other Sex suck a certain humour, and anoint their Bodies all over therewith, and so are desended against Rain.

Though their light be dim, yet they have visum indefession, an indefatigable sence of Seeing; so that the continuance in a mean degree, countervaileth in them the want of excellency.

They feed abroad, because they would conceal their forms; and never drink, but content themselves with

the

the

it i

leri

he

of

ot

als

nc

fh

(e

8

0

t

i

t

¢

(

the Dew, and for that cause they often sall rotten. As it is before, every Limb of a Hare is composed for celerity, and therefore she never travelleth, but jumpeth: her Ears lead her the way in her Chase; for with one of them she harkneth to the cry of the Dogs, and the other she firetcheth forth like a Sail, to hasten her course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former; and yet not hindering them at all; and in Paths and High-ways she runs more speedily.

The Hares of the Mountains do often exercise themfelves in the Valleys and Plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the nearest ways to their Forms or places of constant abode. So that when at any time they are hunted in the Fields, such is their subtile dodging, that they will dally with the Huntsmen till they seem to be almost taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest way to the Mountains, and so take Sanctuary in the inaccessible places, whither Dogs nor Horse dare as-

cend.

die

One

fal

ITS.

Ve

ng

ik ch

ft,

d

Hares which frequent Bushes and Brakes, are not able to endure labour, and not very swift, by reason of the pain in their Feet, growing fat through idleness and discontinuance of running. The Campeltrial or Field-Hare, being leaner of Body; and oftner chased, is taken with more difficulty, by reason of her singular agility; the therefore when the beginneth her courle. leapeth up from the ground as if the flew, afterwards paffeth through Brambles, and over thick Bushes and Hedges with all expedition; and if at any time the come into deep Grass or Corn, the easily delivereth her felf, and flideth through it, always holding up one Ear, and bending it at her pleasure to be the Moderator of her Chale. Neither is the fo unprovident and prodigal of her strength, as to spend it all in one Courle, but observeth the force of her Prosecutor, who if he be flow and fluggish, she is not profuse of

her celerity, but onely walketh gently before the Dogs, and yet fafely from their Clutches, referving her greatest strength to her greatest necessity: for she knoweth she can out-run the Dogs at her pleasure, and therefore will not trouble her self more than she is urged. But if there be a Dog following her more swiftly than the residue, then the setteth forward with all the force she can; and when she hath lest both Hunters and Dogs a great way behinde her, she getteth to some little Hill or rising of the Earth, where she raiseth her self upon her hinder-Legs, that thereby the may observe how far or near her Pursuers are distant from her.

The younger Hares, by reason of their weak Members, tread heavier on the Earth than the elder; and therefore leave the greater Scent behinde them. At a year old they run very swift, and their Scent is stronger in the Woods than in the plain Fields; and if they lie down upon the Earth (as they love to do) in red Fallow-grounds, they are easily described.

Their foot-steps in the Winter-time are more apparent than in the Summer, because, as the Nights are longer, so they travel farther: neither do they scent in the Winter-mornings so soon as it is day, until the Frost be somewhat thawed; but especially their footsteps are uncertain at the Full of the Moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering and putting out their scent or savour; and in the Spring-time also, when they do ingender, they consound one another footsteps by multitudes,

Hare-Hunting.

IT is the judgement of all, that a Hare doth naturally know the change of Weather from twenty four hours to twenty four hours. When the goeth to her Form, the will fuffer the Dew to touch her as little as the can, but followeth the High-ways and beaten Paths.

They go to Buck commonly in January, February, and March, and fometimes all the warm Months; fometimes seeking the Buck seven or eight miles distant from the place where they usually sit, following the High-ways, &c.

If when a Hare rifeth out of her Form, the couches her Ears and Scut, and runs not very fast at first, it is an

infallible fign that the is old and crafty.

ore

nan the

m.

eth

he

he

nt

7-

ıt

You may know a Buck-Hare as you hunt him to his Form by his beating the hard High-ways. He feedeth farther out into the Plains, and maketh his doublings and croffings much wider, and of greater compais than the Female doth: for the will keep close by some Covert-side, turning and winding in the bushes like a Coney; and if the go to relief in the Corn-fields, the feldom croffeth over the Furrows, but followeth them along, staying upon the thickest tusts of Corn to feed.

Likewise you may know a Buck at the rising out of his Form by his Hinder-parts, which are more whitely, or if you observe his Shoulders before he rise, which will be redder than the Does, having some loose long Hairs growing on them. Again, his Head is shorter, and better trussed; his Hairs about his Lips

longer; and his Ears shorter and more gray. The Hairs upon the Female's Chine will be of a blacks.

gray.

Besides, when Hounds hunt a Female-Hare, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making our end-ways before the Hounds: whereas the Male act contrary; for having once made a Turn or two about his Form, then farewal Hounds; for he will frequently lead them sive or six miles before ever he will turn his head;

When you fee that your Hounds have found where an Hare hath pass'd to Relief upon the High-way-side, and hath much doubled and crossed upon dry places, and pever much broken out nor relieved in the Com, it is a sign she is but lately come thither; and then commonly she will stay upon some high place to look about her, and to chuse out a place to form in; which she will be loth to part with:

Of the Craft and Subtlety of an Hare.

As of all Chales the Hare makes the greatest passime and pleasure; so it is a great delight and satisfaction to see the crast of this little poor Beast in her own self-

prefervation,

And that you may understand what these Subtleties are, you must first take notice what Weather it is. If it be rainly, then the Hare will hold the High-ways more than at any other time: and if the come to the side of any young Grove or Spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the side thereof until the Hounds have over-shot her; and then she will return the self-same way she came to the place from whence she was started, and will not by the way go into any Covert, for fear of the wet and Dew that hang upon the Boughs.

be

if

ba

th

th

F

w

in

y

n

tl

G

V

(

*

t

t

In this case, let the Huntsman stay a hundred paces before he comes to the Wood-side, by which means he shall perceive whether she return as aforesaid; which if she do, let him hallow in his Hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the Hounds may not think it the Counter she came first.

The next thing to be observed, is the place where the Hare sitteth, and upon what wind she makes her Form: for if she form either upon the North or Southwind, she will not willingly run into the Wind, but run upon a side or down the Wind. But if she form in the Water, it is a sign she is foul and measled. If you hunt such a one, have a special regard all the day to the Brook-sides, for there and near Plashes she will

make all her croffings, doublings, &c.

if

vill ut as int ly is

I have feen a Hare to crafty, that as foon as the heard the found of a Horn, the would instantly start out of her Form, though it was a quarter of a mile distant, and go swim in some Pool, and there rest her self upon some Rush-bed in the midst thereof, from whence she would not stir till she heareth the Horn again; and then I have seen her start out again swimming to Land, and she hath stood up before the Hounds sour hours before we could kill her, swimming, and using all her Subtle-

ties and croffings in the Water.

Such is the Natural craft and subtlety of a Hare, that sometimes, after the hath been hunted three hours, she will start a fresh Hare; and squat in the same Form. Others, having been hunted a considerable time, will creep under the Door of a Sheep-coat, and there hide themselves among the Sheep; or when they are hard hunted, will run in among a slock of sheep, and cannot be gotten out from among them by any means, till the Hounds are coupled up, and the Sheep driven into their Pens. Some (and that is something strange), will take the ground like a Coney, and that is called

fo

ho

21

tl

0

f

going to the Vaut. Some Harrs will go up one fit of the Hedge, and come down the other, the thickness of the Hedge being the onely distance between the

courfes.

I have seen a Hare, that being forely hunted, got up on a Quick-set-hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then lept off upon the ground. And they will frequently betake themselves to Furz-bushe and will leap from one to the other, whereby the Hounds are frequently in default. Nay, which is more, I have heard of a Hare, that being hunted two hours or more, at length, to save her self, got upon an old Walfix soot high from the ground, and hid her self in the hole that was made for a Scaffold: and that several have swam over Trent and Severn.

A Hare liveth not above seven years at most, especially the Buck; and if he and the Doe shall keep on quarter together, they will never suffer any strange Hometo sit by them; and therefore it is proverbially said, The more you hunt, the more Hares you shall have; because when you have killed one Hare, another will come and possess

his Form.

An Hare hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the Hounds, when the feeds and relieveth upon green Corn, than at any other time in the year; and yet there are fome Hares which naturally give a greater Scent than others; as the great Wood-Hares, and such as are foul and measted, and keep near to the Waters: But the little red Hare, which is not much bigger than a Coney, is neither of so strong a Scent, nor so eagerly hunted. Such as feed upon the small branches of wild Time, or such-like Herbs, are commonly very swift, and will stand long up before the Hounds. In like manner you have some Hares more subtile and cunning than others. Young Hares which have not been hunted are soolish, and are neither of sore

force nor capacity to use such subtleties and crasts, but hold on end-ways before the Hounds most commonly, and do squat and startagain oftentimes, which doth much encourage the Hounds, and enters them better than if the Hare slies end-ways, as sometimes they will five or six mile an end.

The Females are more crafty and politick than the Bucks; for they double and turn shorter than they, which is displeasant to the Hounds; for it is trouble-some for them to turn often, delighting more in an end-way-chase, running with all their force: for such Hares as double and cross so often, it is requisite at default to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out, for so you will find all her subtilities, and yet need to stick upon none of them, but onely where she went on forwards: By this means you will abate her force, and compel her to leave doubling and crossing.

How to Enter Hounds to the Hare.

Let the Huntsman be sure in the first place to make his Hounds very well acquainted with him and his Voice, and let them understand the Horn; and to this end let him never blow his Horn or hallow but when there is good cause for so doing, and let him be sure that his Hounds want no encouragement.

Here by the way observe two remarkable things. The first is, if you intend to enter a young Kennel of Hounds, you must take notice of the Country where you will make your first Quarry, and whereof you make it. For according to the places wherein they are first entred, and the nature of the Quarry given them, they will prove accordingly for the suture. Thus it they are first entred in the Plains and Champain-countries, they will ever after more delight to hunt there

than in any other place: and so it is the same with the Coverts.

But, fay fome of our Huntsmen, all strange Countries that differ from that to which Hounds are accustomed causes them at first to be at seek: But good Hounds will foon be master of any Country; and therefore he that would have the best Hounds, must use them to all kinds of Hunting: And it is easie to bring Hounds to enjoy a Scent from a bleak Down to a tresh Pasture. And therefore many of us love to enter in the world Countries.

Do not accustom your Hounds to hunt in the Morning, because of the Dew and moisture of the Earth; and befides, you will find by experience, that if afterwards you hunt them in the heat of 'the day, they will foon give over the chase; neither will they call on willingly or chearfully, but feek out the shades to sleep Yet many of us agree, that to hunt both early and late in the morning by Trayling, advantageth the Hounds to use their Noses; and by keeping them sometimes in the heat of the day, or till night, moves them to floutness.

The best season to enter your young Hounds is in September and October; for then the weather is temperate, neither too hot nor too cold; and then is the time to find young Hares which have never been hunted, which are foolish, and ignorant of the politick croffings, doublings, &c. of their Sires, running commonly end-ways, frequently fquatting, and as often starting, by which encouragement the Hounds are the

better entered.

A Hare hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the Hounds, when she feedeth and relieveth on green Corn, than at any other time of the year.

More-

C

2

Moreover, some Hares have naturally a greater scent than others, as the great Wood-Hares, and such as are foul and measled, having their greatest resort near the Water and Plathes.

ic

ed, ds

he

to

The little small red Hare, not much bigger than a Coney, is very feeble, and not much coveted by the Hounds, having a bad scent: but such as feed on the small branches of wilde Time are commonly very swift, and will stand up a long time before the Hounds.

The Does are much craftier than the Bucks, doubling and turning oftner and shorter, which is very vexatious and troublesome to the Hounds. Now for such Hares as double and cross so often, it is requisite at a default to cast the greater compass about when you draw to make it out; so shall you find all their subtilities; though it is needless to sick upon any, but where they went onwards: by so doing you will abate the sorce of a Hare, and sorce her from crossing and doubling.

Some Hares hold the high beaten ways onely, where the Hounds can have no fcent: wherefore when the Huntsman finds his Hounds at a default in the Highway, let him hunt on until he find where the Hare hath broken from the High-way, or hath found some Dale or fresh place where the Hounds may recover scent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goeth, if he can

find the Footing or Pricking of the Hare.

There are other places wherein a Hound can finde no scent; and that is in fat and rotten ground, and it sticketh to the Foot of the Hare, which is called Carrying, and so consequently she leaves no scent behinde her. So likewise there are certain Months wherein a Hound can find no scent, and that is in the Springtime, by reason of the fragrant smell of Flowers, and the like.

Shun, as much as you can, hunting in hard frofty wea-H 2 ther, ther, for so you will surbate or sounder your Hound, and make them lose their Claws: besides, at that time a Hare runneth better than at any other time, the Soul of her feet being hairy.

To conclude, the best way of entring your your. Hounds, is by the help of old Staunch-Hounds; so will they the better learn to cast for it at a doubling or determined to the control of t

fault.

What time of the year is best for Hate-Hunting: How to find ber, start her, and chase her.

The best time to begin Hare-Hunting, is about the middle of September, ending towards the latter end of February, lest you destroy the early brood of Lewrets. Moreover, upon the approach of Winter the moittness and coolness of the Earth increaseth, which is agreable to the nature of the Hounds, and very acceptable, they ever hating extream heats and hot weather.

Your Hounds being two years old and upwards, you may exercise them thrice a Week, and they will be the better for so often hunting, provided you feel well; and keep out your Hounds the greatest part of the day, both to try their stoutness, and to make them

flout.

If there be any Hound which hath found the Tril of a Hare where the hath relieved that night, let the Huntsman then forbear being over-hasty, but let the Hounds make it of themselves: and when he shall perceive that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freshly, then let him encourage them, especially that Hound which hunteth best, frequently calling him by his name.

Here note, that a Hare leaveth better scent when

the goeth to relief, than when the goeth towards her Form: for when the relieveth in the Field, the coucheth her body low upon the ground, passing often over one piece of ground, to find where lieth the best food; and thus leaveth the better Scent, crotying also sometimes.

une

2.00

Besides, when she goes to her Form, she commonly takes the High-ways, doubling, crossing, and leaping as lightly as she can; in which places the Hounds can have no scent, (as is said before) by reason of the dust, &c. And yet they will squat by the sides of the High-ways; and therefore let the Huntsman beat very well the sides of those High-ways.

Now having found where a Hare hath relieved in fome Passure or Corn-field, then must you consider the season of the year, and what Weather it is: for if it be in the Spring-time, or Summer, a Hare will not then sit in the Bushes, because they are frequently offended with Pismires, Snakes and Adders, but will sit in Cornfields and open places.

In winter they love to fit near Towns and Villages in Tufts of Thorns and Brambles, especially when the Wind is Northerly or Southerly.

According to the season and nature of the place where the Hare is accustomed to sit, there beat with your Hounds and start her; which is much better sport than Trailing of her from her Relief to her Form.

When the Hare is started and on foot, then step in where you saw her pass, and hallow in your Hounds until they have all undertaken it and go on with it in full cry: then Recheat to them with your Horn, following fair and softly at first, making neither too much haste nor noise with Horn or Voice: for at the first Hounds are apt to over-shoot the chase through too much heat. But having ran the space of an hour,

H 3

and

and that you fee the Hounds are well in with it, slicking well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the Hounds, because by that time their heat will be cooled, and they will hunt more soberly. But above all things mark the first doubling, which must be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that she afterwards shall make will be like the former: and according to the policies that you shall see her use, and the place where you hunt, you must make your compasses great or little, long or short, to help the defaults, always seeking the moistest and most commodious places for the Hounds to scent in.

To conclude, those who delight in the commendable Exercise of Hunting the Hare, must rise early, lest they be deprived of the scent of her soot-steps, by which means the Dogs will be incapacitated to follow their Game; for the nature of the scent is such, that it will not remain long, but suddainly, in a manner every hour, vanisheth

away.

Of Parks and Warrens.

Aving thus discoursed of the Nature and Properties of the Hare, together with the manner of hunting them; in the next place I hold it not improper in short to speak something of Parks and enclosed Warrens, wherein Hares, Coneys, Deer, &c. may always be ready as it were out of a Store-house or Seminary to serve the use and pleasure of their Masters.

The first Roman that ever enclosed wild Beasts, was Fulvius Herpinus; and Varro had the first Warren of Hares. The largest Hare-Parks that ever I heard

ot,

of, and the best surnished with those searful, yet subtile Creatures, are in Ireland; the one belongs to the Lord-Lieutenant of that Kingdom, near Dublin; and the other in the North, and belongs to the Lord of Mazareen. It will be a tedious task for me to give you an account of the variety of Parks and Warrens within the three Kingdoms; I shall therefore onely tell you in what manner they are erected, and that very briefly.

The Walls or Pales must be high, or close joynted, so as neither Badger nor Cat can creep through, nor Wolf, nor Fox can leap over; wherein ought also to be Bushes and broad Trees to cover the Beasts against heat and cold, and other secret places to satisfie their natures, and to defend the lesser beasts, as Hares, Coneys, &c. from Hawks, Kites, and other ravening Fowls: in which three or sour couple of Hares will quickly multi-

ply into a great Warren.

It is very good to fow Gourds, Misceline, Corn, Barley, Pease, and such-like, wherein Hares delight,

and will thereby quickly grow fat.

Warreners have a very crafty device to fatten Hares, which by experience is found effectual, and that is by putting Warrener to their Ears, and so make them deat; then turn them into the place where they should feed, where being freed from the sear of Sounds (for want of hearing) they grow sat before other of their kind.

Here note, that when you have pitched your Hays for Coneys, found a Trumpet in some of the Burroughs, and scarce a Coney in the whole Warren but will start a-

broad.

be

70

ı

ıÈ

d

d

I shall end this Chapter with Martial's praise of a Hare and a Thrush.

Inter Aves Turdus si quis in Judice certet, Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus.

Amongst all Birds none with the Thrush compare, And no Beaft hath more glory than the Hare.

Of Coney-Catching.

B Efore we speak of the Hunting of the Coney, it will not be amiss to take notice of her nature and properties, which are thefe: the carrieth her young in her Belly thirty days; as foon as the hath kindned the goes to Buck. They begin to breed in England at a year old (but sooner in other places) and so continue, bearing at least seven times in a year if they Litter in March; this is the reason that a small stock will serve to increase a large Warren. The Does cannot fuckle their young till they have been with the Buck, which must be done prefently, or the will not be inclined fourteen days after.

When the Buck goes to Doe, he will beat very strongly with his fore-Foot upon the ground, and by that means he heateth himself. When he hath buckt, he is accustomed to fall backwards, and lie as if he were in a Trance or half dead, at which time he is eafily

taken.

The Latines call a Coney, Cuniculus, because it maketh holes in the Earth; and Cuniculus was a Latine word for a Hole or Cave in the Earth, before it was taken for a Conev.

The Bucks will kill the young if they can come at them, like to your Bore-cats; and therefore the Doe prevents that mischief, by covering her Stop or Nest

with

di

p

C

with Earth or Gravel, that so they may not easily be

discovered.

Those who keep Coneys tame for profit, may give them to eat Vine-leaves, Fruits, Herbs, Grass, Bran, Oatmeal, Mallows, Milk-thistles, Apple-parings, Cabbage, Lettise, or Carret-tops. In Winter they will eat Hay, Oats, and Chaff, being given to them thrice a day: but when they eat green things, they must not drink at all, because of the Dropsie which will follow: At all other times a little drink must serve their turn, and that must be always fresh. Here note, give them not too much green juicy meat, unless you entermix therewith what is dry, as Oats, Chaff, &c. otherwise they will be Catbed, or tun-bellied.

Now the way of taking them is either by small Curs or Spaniels bred up for that sport; and their places for hunting are among Bushes and Hedges; or else by coursing them with small Grey-hounds. In their default they are commonly driven into their Burrows; and therefore it will be very requisite to set Purse-nets on the Holes, then put in a Ferret close muzzled, and she will make the Coneys, bolt out again into the Purse-nets, and so you may take them. Some say the Drone of a Bag-pipe, put into a Coney-borrow, and blown on a sud-

den, will make Coneys bolt.

For want of a Ferret, you may take the powder of Orpine and some Brimstone, and therewith make a smother in the Burrows, and so they will bolt out. But this way is not to be approved of; for by that means the Coneys will forsake those Burrows, and so in a little time a Warren will be destroy'd, should this course be used fre-

quently.

But above Nets and Ferrets, Hays are to be preferred for the taking of Coneys; neither is the drawing Ferret to be despised when they are young. Likewise there is excellent sport to be made with our Tumblers, who will kill Coneys abundantly.

in fu

is

of bu

ni he G

Ty

OI

W

th

B

th

ft

tl

fl

tl

i

n

ipg

Let this suffice, fince any farther discourse here is neither proper, nor pertinent to my present purpose.

Of the Ferret.

The Ferret is a little creature that is not bred in Spain, Italy, France, nor Germany; but in England the breed naturally, and are tamed for the benefit of sud who keep Warrens, and others.

It is a bold and audacious Beaft, Enemy to all other but his own kind, drinking and fucking in the bloods

the beaft it biteth, but eateth not the flesh.

When the Warrener hath an occasion to use his Freet, he first makes a noise in the Warren to frighten what Coneys are abroad into their Burrows, and then he pitcheth his Nets; after that, he puts his Ferret into the Earth, having a long Strick, with Bells about her Net whose Mouth must be muzzled, so that he may not seiz, but frighten the Coneys out of their Burrows, and afterwards driven by Dogs into the Nets or Hays so planted for them.

The Body is longer for the proportion than the quantity may afford. Their colour is variable, fometimes black and white on the Belly, but most commonly of a yellowish fandy colour, like Wool died in Urine. The Head is little, like a Mouse's; and therefore into whatsoever Hole she can put it in, all he body will easily follow after. The Eyes are small, but fiery like red-hot Iron, and therefore the seeth most clearly in the dark. Her Voice is a whining cry without changing it: She hath onely two Teeth in her peither Chap, standing out, and not joyned and grow-

ing together. The Genital of the Male is of a bony substance, and therefore it always standeth stiff, and is not lesser at one time than another. The pleasure of the sence in Copulation is not in the Genital-part, but in the Muscles, Tunicles, and Nerves wherein the said Genital runneth. When they are in Copulation the Female lieth down, or bendeth her Knees, and continually crieth like a Cat, either because the Male claweth her with his nails, or by reason of the roughness of his Genital.

She usually brings forth seven or eight at a time, carrying them forty days in her little belly: The young ones newly littered are blind thirty days together; and within forty days after they can see, they may be used as

their dam for profit and recreation.

When tamed, they are nourished with Milk or with Barley-bread, and they can fast a very long time. When they go, they contract their long back, and make it stand upright in the middle round like a Bowl: when they are touched, they smell like a Martel; and they sleep very much. Thus much of the Ferret, which I thought good to place after the Chapter of Coney-catching, because this little Animal is such a necessary Instrument for that purpose,

Of Fox-Hunting.

His Shape and Proportion is so well known, being a beast so common, that it will be needless to describe him.

His nature in many respects is like that of a Wolf; for they bring as many Cubs at a Litter one as the other: but thus they differ; the Fox Litters deep under the ground, so doth not the Wolf.

A Bitch-Fox is hardly to be taken when the is bug ged and with Gub; for then the will lie near her har row, into which the runs upon the hearing of the lat noise. And indeed at any time it is somewhat discult; for the Fox (and so the Wolf) is a very subtle

E

th

Ы

fo

gi

ne

W

th

m

di

m

T

W

ge

CI

li

0

b

B

0

e

F

2

crafty creature.

Fox-hunting is very pleasant; for by reason of his firong hot scent he maketh an excellent Cry: And his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies soonest. Beside he never slies far before the Hounds, trusting not on his Legs, Strength, or Champion ground, but strongs Coverts. When he can no longer stand up before he Hounds, he then taketh Earth, and then must he be dig ged out.

If Grey-hounds course him on a Plain, his last refig is to piss on his Tail, and flap it in their Faces as in come near him; sometimes squirting his thicker Exa ment upon them, to make them give over the Course

pursuit.

When a Bitch-Fox goes a clicketing and feeketh a Dog, the cryeth with a hollow Voice, not unlike thowling of a mad Dog; and in the fame manner a cries when the miffeth any of her Cubs: but not makes any cry at all when the is killing, but define her felf to the last gasp.

A Fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome and feeds upon all forts of Carrion; but their daints and the food which they most delight in, is Poulty They are very destructive and injurious to Coney-Warrens, and will sometimes kill Hares by deceit and substitute the control of the control

ty, and not by fwift running.

The Fox is taken with Hounds, Grey-hounds, To-

riers, Nets, and Gins.

Of Terriers there are two forts. The one is crooked leg'd, and commonly short-hair'd; and these will take

Earth well, and will lie very long at Fox or Badger. The other fort is shagged and straight Legg'd: and these will not onely hunt above-ground as other Hounds, but also enter the Earth with much more sury than the former; but cannot stay in so long, by reason of their

great eagerness.

The time of entring these Terriers, is when they are near a twelve-month old; for if you enter him not in within this time, you will hardly after bring him to take the Earth. And to encourage the young Terrier the more, put in an old one before him, that can better endure the sury of the Fox or Badger: and be careful that neither of them be old when you engage your young

Terrier with him.

The entring and fleshing them may be done several ways. In the first place thus: When Foxes and Badgers have young Cubs, then take your old Terriers and enter them in the ground; and when they begin to bay, you must then hold every one of your Terriers at a fundry Hole or Mouth of the Earth, that they may liften and hear the old ones Bay. Having taken the old Fox or Badger, and that nothing remains within but the young Cubs, then couple up all your old Terriers, and put in the young in their flead, encouraging them by crying, To him, to him, to him. And if they take any young Cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they please with him; and forget not to give the old Terriers their reward, which is the Blood and Livers, fryed with Cheefe and some of their own Greafe, thewing them the Heads and Skins to encourage them. Before you reward them, wash them with Soap and warm Water, to clear their Skins from Earth and Clay that is clodded to the Hair, otherwife they are apt to be mangie. You may also enter them in this manner: Take an old Fox, or Badger, and cut away the neither Jaw, but meddle not with the other, leaving

leaving the upper to thew the fury of the Beaft, a though it can do no harm therewith. Then dig Earth in some convenient place in your own ground and be careful to make it wide enough, to the inter the Terriers may turn therein the better, and that the may be room enough for two to enter together: the cover the Hole with boards and Turf, putting the Fa or Badger first therein, and afterwards put in your Teners both young and old, encouraging them with work that are the usual terms of Art. When they have bay! fufficiently, then begin to dig with Spades and Man tocks, to encourage them against such time as you aren dig over them: then take out the Fox or Badger with the Clamps or Pinchers, killing it before them, or ke a Grey-hound kill it in their fight, and make then reward thereof. Here note, that instead of cutting away the Jaw, it will be every whit as well to break out all his Teeth, to prevent him from biting the Toriers.

Now to fay the truth, there is not much passime or pleasure in Hunting of a Fox under ground; for a soon as that subtle creature perceiveth the Terriers, it they bay hard, and lie near unto them, they will bot out immediately, unless it be when the Bitch hat young Cubs, then they will sooner die than stir.

They make their Earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in Clay, Stoney-ground, or amongst the Roots of Trees; and their Earths have commonly but one Hole, and that is straight a long way in before it come at their Couch. Sometimes craftily they possess themselves of a Badger's old Burrow, which hath variety of Chambers, Holes, and Angles.

When a good Terrier doth once binde the Fox, he then yearns, and defends himself very notably, but not so strenuously as the Badger, nor is his biting half so

dange

da

fh

CO

w

th

W

in

ex

to

2

af

ri

pl

bυ

F

ar

ki

is

TU

PI

th

g

ſe

Pi

to

a

it

2

dangerous. Here note, if you take a Bitch-Fox when the goeth a Clicketing, and cut out that Gut which containeth her Sperm, together with the Kidneys which Gelders deprive Bitches of when they spay them, and cut them into small gobbets, mingling therewith the Gum of Maftick, and put them hot as they are into a Pot, and cover the same close, it will serve for an excellent Train for a Fox, and will keep the whole year Take the Skin of Bacon, and broil it well on a Gridiron, then dip it in the ingredients of the Pot aforesaid, and make a train thereof, you will experimentally find, that if there be any Fox near to any place where the train is drawn, he will follow it; but let him who makes the train rub the foals of his Feet with Cow-dung, left the Fox vent his footing: and thus you may train a Fox to a standing, and kill him in an Evening with Gun or Cross-bow. It is likewise found by experience, that if a Terrier be rubbed with Brimftone, or with Oil of Cade, and then put him into an Earth where either a Fox or Badger is. they will leave that Earth, and come not to it again a good while after.

I shall conclude this discourse with what I have observed in Gesner's History of Beast's tending to the same
purpose: saith he, As he frequently cheats the Badger of
his Habitation by laying his Excrements at the month of his
Earth or Burrow; so, for as much as the Wols is an Enemy
to the Fox, he layeth in the month of his Earth an Herb
called a Sea-onion, which a Wols naturally hates, and is so
averse thereunto, that he will never come near the place where

it either lies or grows.

Of Fox-Hunting above ground.

To this purpose you must draw with your Hounds about Groves, Thickets, and Bushes near Villages: for

a Fox will lurk in fuch places, to prey on young Pip

and Pullein.

But it will be necessary to stop up his Earths, if yo can find them, the night before you intend to hunt, and the best time will be about midnight, for then the Fox goeth out to seek his Prey. You may stop his Holes by laying two white sticks a cross before them which will make him imagine it is some Gin or Tra laid for him: or else you may stop them up close win black-Thorns and Earth together.

The best hunting a Fox above-ground, is in Janus, February, and March, for then you shall best see you Hounds hunting, and best find his Earthing; besides, a

those times the Fox's Skin is best in season.

Again, the Hounds best hunt the Fox in the cold weather, because he leaveth a very strong scent behind him; yet in cold weather it chills fastest.

At first onely cast off your sure Finders, and as a Drag mends, so adde more as you dare trust them.

Shun casting off too many Hounds at once, became Woods and Coverts are full of sundry Ghases, and it you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let such as you cast off at first be old Staund-Hounds, which are sure; and if you hear such a Hound call on merrily, you may cast off some other to him and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the reand thus you shall compleat your passime.

The words of comfort are the same which are und in the other chases, attended with the same Hallowing

and other ceremonies.

Let the Hounds kill the Fox themselves, and wom and hare him as much as they please: many Hounds

will eat him with eagerness.

when he is dead, hang him at the end of a Pike-flut, and hallow in all your Hounds to bay him: but reward them not with any thing belonging to the Fox; for it is not good, neither will they eat it.

Of Badger-Hunting.

A Badger is called by feveral names, viz. a Gray, Brock, Boreson or Bauson, and in France Tausson. The Male is called a Badger or Boar-pig; and the Female is called a Som.

These Beasts are plentiful in Naples, Sicily, Lucane, and in the Alpine and Helvetian Coasts; so are they also

here in England.

unt

the his

our s

There are two kinds of this beaft, (faith Gefner) one refembling a Dog in his feet, and the other a Hog in his cloven hoof: they differ too in their fnout and colour; for the one refembles the fnout of a Dog, the other of a Swine: the one hath a greyer coat, or whiter coat than the other, and goeth farther out in feeking of its prey. They differ also in their meat, the one eating Flesh and Carrion like a Dog, the other Roots and Fruits like a Hog: both these kinds have been found in Normandy, France, and Sicily.

Mr. Turbervil makes mention of two forts of Badgers likewise, but in a different manner. For the one (saith he) casteth his Fiaunts long like a Fox, and have their residence in Rocks, making their Burrows very deep. The other fort make their Burrows in light ground, and have more variety of Cells and Chambers than the former. The one of these is called the Badger-pig, and the other the Badger-phelp; or call one Canne, and the other Swinish. The first hath his Nose, Throat, and Ears yellowish like a Martern's Throat; and are much blacker, and higher Leg'd than the Badger-whelp. Both sorts live upon all Flesh, hunting greedily after Carrion. They are very mischievous and hurt-

fe

fi

th

21

in

he

ta

1

0

ful to Warrens, especially when they are big with

young.

Badgers when they Earth, after by digging they have entred a good depth, for the clearing of the Earth out one of them falleth on the back, and the other layer. Earth on the belly, and so taking his hinder feet in his mouth, draweth the Belly-laden-Badger out of the Hole or Cave; and having disburdened her self, re-enter, and doth the like till all be finished.

These Badgers are very sleepy, especially in the day time, and seldom stir abroad but in the night; so which cause they are called Lucifuge, avoiders of the

Light.

It is very pleasant to behold them when they gether materials for their Couch, as straw, leaves, most and such-like; for with their Feet and their Head they will wrap as much together as a man can well carry under his arm, and will make shift to get it into their Cell and Couches.

He hath very harp Teeth, and therefore is accounted a deep biting beaft: his back is broad, and his legs are longer on the right fide than the left, and therefore he runneth best when he gets on the side of an Hill, or a Cart - road - way. His fore-Legs han very sharp Nails, bare, and apt to dig withal, being five both before and behinde, but the hinder very much shorter, and covered with hair. His favour is strong and much troubled with Lice about the fecrets. Both Male and Female have under their Hole another Hole outwardly, but not inwardly in the Male. hunted abroad with Hounds, she biteth them most grievously where-ever she lays hold on them. For the prevention thereof, the careful Huntsmen put great broad Collars made of Grays Skins about their Dogs Necks. Her manner is to fight on her back, using thereby both her Teeth and her Nails; and by blowing up her Skin after a strange and wonderful manner, the desendeth her felf against any blow and teeth of Dogs; onely a small stroke on her Nose will dispatch her presently; you may thrash your heart weary on her back, which she values as a matter of nothing.

In Italy they eat the flesh of Badgers, and so they do in Germany, boiling it with Pears: some have eaten it here in England, but like it not, being of a sweet rankish

tafte.

The flesh is best in September if it be fat; and of the two kinds, the Swinish Badger is better flesh than the other.

They love Hogs-flesh above any other; for take but a piece of Pork and train it over a Badger's Burrow, if he be within, you shall quickly see him appear without.

Their nature is very cold; and therefore when it fnoweth they will not come out of their holes for three

or four days together.

They live long, and by mere age will grow blinde; then will they not flir out of their Holes, but are fed by

those who have their fight.

This subtilty they have, that when they perceive the Terriers begin to yearn them, they will stop the hole between the Terriers and them: if the Terriers continue baying, they will remove their baggage with them, and go into another apartment or chamber of the Burrow, (for know that some of their Houses have half a dozen rooms at least;) and so will remove from one to the other, till they can go no surther, barricadoing the way as they go.

The Hunting of a Badger must be after this manner: You must first seek the Earths and Burrows where he lieth, and in a clear Moon-shine night go and stop all the holes but one or two, and therein place some Sacks fastned with some drawing Strings, which may that him

in as foon as he straineth the Bag.

Thie

th

b

The Sacks or Bags being thus set, cast of you Hounds, and beat all the Groves, Hedges, and Tust within a mile or two about. What Badgers are abroad being alarm'd by the Dogs, will straight repair to their

Earths or Burrows, and so be taken.

Let him that standeth to watch the Sacks, stand close, and upon a clear Wind, for else the Badger will foon find him, and sly some other way for safety. But if the Hounds either encounter him, or undertake the chase before he can get into his Earth, he will then stand at bay like a Boar, and make most incomparable sport.

What Instruments are to be used in digging, and bow to dig for Badger or Fox.

In the first place, you must have such as are able to dig: next, you must have so many Terriers garnished with Bells hung in Collars, to make the Fox or Badga bolt the sooner; besides, the Collars will be some small

defence unto the Terriers.

The Instruments to dig withal are these: a sharp pointed Spade, which serveth to begin the Trench when the ground is hardest, and broader Tools will not so well enter; the round hollowed Spade, which is useful todig amongst Roots, having very sharp edges; the stat broad Spade, to dig withal when the Trench is better opened, and the ground softer; Mattocks and Pick-axes, to dig in hard ground where a Spade will do but little service; the Goal-rake, to cleanse the Hole, and to keep it from stopping up; the Clamps, whereby you may take a Fox or Badger out alive to make sport therewith asterwards. And it would not be amiss to have a Pail of Water, to refresh your Terriers after they are come out of the Earth to take breath.

In this order you may beliege a Fox or Badger in their

their strongest Holes or Castles, and may break their Casmats, Platforms, Parapets, and work to them with Mines and Counter-mines, until you have obtained your satisfaction. But there is a shorter method than this, which by reason of its commonness I shall forbear to mention.

eir

nd

Of the Otter.

IT is supposed by some that the Otter is of the kind of Beavers, being it is an amphibious creature living both in the Water and on the Land; besides, the outward form of the parts beareth a similitude of that beast. Some say, were his tail off, he were in all parts like a Beaver, differing in nothing but habitation: For the Beaver frequenteth both the Salt-water and the Fresh; but the Otter never goeth to the Salt.

Though the Otter live in the Water, yet it doth not breath like Fishes through the benefit of the Water, it doth breath like other four-footed beasts, yet it will remain a long time underneath the Water without respiration.

If he want prey in the Waters, then will he quit them for the Land; and if by painful hunting afthere he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on Herbs, Snails, or Frogs: neither will he take lefs pains in the water to fatistie hunger; for he will fwim two miles together against the stream, that so, when his belly is full, the current of the stream may carry him down again to his designed Lodging, which is near the water, very artificially built with boughs, sprigs, and sticks couching together in excellent order, wherein he sitteth to keep him from the wet.

13

In the hunting of the he often pops his Nose above water to take bream. It is a creature of wonderful swittness and nimbreness in taking his prey, and for greediness takes more than he knows what to do with.

It is a very fubtile and crafty beaft, and indowed with a wonderful fagacity and fense of smelling, infomuch that he can directly wind the Fishes in the waters

a mile or two off.

The flesh of this beast is both cold and filthy, because it feedeth on stinking Fish and therefore not fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in Germany; and the Caribusian Fryers, who are forbidden to eat all manner of flesh of other sour-footed beasts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of Otters. There are those in England, who lately have highly valued an Otter-pie, much good may it do them with it.

These Otters must be hunted by special Dogs, such as are called Otter hounds, and also with special Instruments called Otter-spears. When they find themselves wounded with a spear, they then come to Land, where they fight with the Dogs suriously; and except they be first wounded, they forsake not the Water: for they are not ignorant how safe a refuge the Waters are unto them, and how unequal a combat they shall sustain with Men and Dogs upon the Land: yet, because the cold Water annoyeth their green wounds, therefore they spin out their lives to the length of the thread, chusing rather to die in torments among Dogs, than to die in the Waters.

The Food of an Otter (as I said) is Fish; and her abode is commonly under the Root of some Tree near Rivers, Brooks, Pools, Meers, or Fish-ponds; and sometimes she will lie in a hollow Tree sour or five foot above ground: and no Vermin can be more destructive to a Warren, than the Otter is to a Fish-pond;

for

fo

W

3

ti

п

tl

u

f

1

V

for the diveth and hunteth under water after that most wonderful manner, that few fish escape her, unless they are very swift and great.

An Otter and Ferret grow falt much about the fame time, and bring forth their young much after the fame

manner, neither having their constant number.

There is much craft and cunning in the hunting them; yet with pains-taking you may enfinare them under the water, and by River-fides, as you may a Hare with Hare-pipes and such-like Gins. They bite fore and venomously, and when occasion serves they will defend themselves stoutly. If after their ensinaring they chance to abide there long, they will soon enlarge themselves with their teeth.

These creatures are footed like your water-Fowl, having a web between their claws, and have no heel, but a round ball under the soal of their Feet: and their Track is called their Mark, as the Slot of a Hart; and

their Excrements are called Spraints.

An Otter will not abide long in a place; for he is apt to be afraid and take diffaffe, (having an excellent Ear and Nofe, for hearing and finelling;) and then he will for fake his Couch, and shift a mile or two up or down the River: and this he will do according as he findes

scarcity of fishing.

ful

or

do

0-

13

In hunting of the Otter observe this, to send some to one side of the River whilst you are on the other, and so beat on the banks with your Dogs, and so you will soon find if there be an Otter in that quarter: for an Otter cannot endure long in the water, but must come forth to make his Spraiots, and in the night sometimes to feed on Grass and such Herbs as the fields afford.

If any of the Hounds find out an Otter, then look in the loft grounds and moist places to see which way he bent his head: if the marks make no discovery,

you may partly perceive it by the spraints, and so solve low the Hounds, and lodge him as a Hart or Deni If you find not the Otter quickly, you may then imagine he is gone to couch somewhere farther off from the River: for sometimes he will seek his sood a mile from the place of his rest, chusing rather to go up the River than down, because upwards he meets with better scent of Fish; and bearing his nose into the wind he shall the sooner finde any fault that is above him.

u

1

d

Ł

Remember, in the Hunting of the Otter, that you and your friends carry your Otter-spears to watch his Vents, for that is the chief advantage: and if you perceive where the Otter swims under water, then strive to get to a stand before him where he would vent, and there endeavour to strike him with your spear; but if you miss, pursue him with the Hounds, which if they be good Otter-hounds, and persectly entred, will come chaunting and trailing along by the River-side, and will beat every Tree-root, every Osier-bed and tust of Bullrushes; nay, sometimes they will take the Water, and beat it like a Spaniel. And by these means the Otter can hardly escape you.

Of the Squirrel.

The first Author that ever wrote of this little Animal was Oppianus who liv'd in the days of Anto-

niss Cafar, and wrote a Book also of Hunting.

A Squirrel is greater in compass than a Weasle, but the later is longer than the other; the back-parts and all the body is reddish except the belly, which is white. In Helvetia they are black and branded, and they they are hunted at the fall of the Leaf, when the Trees grow naked: for they run and leap from bough to bough in a most admirable and agile manner; and when the Leaves are on, they cannot be so well discerned. They are of three colours, in the first age black, in the second of a rusty Iron-colour, and lastly, when old, they are full of white hoar Hairs. Their Teeth are like the Teeth of Mice, having the two under-Teeth very long and sharp. Their Tail is always as big as their Body, and it lieth continually on their back when they sleep or sit still, and it seemeth to be given them for a covering.

In the Summer-time they build them Nests (which by some are called *Drays*) in the Tops of the Trees very artificially with Sticks and Moss, with other things the Woods afford, and then they fill it with Nuts for Winter-provision, and do sleep like the *Alpine* Mouse most part thereof very soundly, in such fort, that the beating of the outside of their Drays will not

wake them.

ma-

rom

nile the

et-

nd,

370

OU

T-

to

When they leap from Tree to Tree, they use their Tail instead of VVings, leaping a great distance, and are supported without linking to any one's appearance; nay, they will frequently leap from a very high Tree

down to the ground, and receive no harm.

Many must go together to hunt them, and must carry Dogs with them: and the fittest place for the exercise of this sport, is in little and small slender Woods, such as may be shaken by the hand. Bows are requisite to remove them when they rest in the twists of Trees; for they will not be much terrified with all the hallowing, except they be struck now and then by one means or other. VVell do they know what harbour a high Oak is unto them, and how secure they can lodge therein from Men and Dogs; wherefore since it is too troublesome to climb every Tree,

that labour must be supplied with Bows and Bolts, that when the Squirrel resteth, presently he may be thumpt by the blow of an Arrow: the Archer need not fear to do her much harm, except he hit her on the head; for by reason of a strong back-bone, and stelly parts, she will abide as great a stroak as a Dog.

If they be driven to the ground from the trees, and they creep into Hedges, it is a fign of their wearines; for such is the losty mind of this little beast, that while her strength lasteth she saveth her self in the tops of high trees; but being wearied, she descendeth, and falls into the mouths of the yelping curs that attend

her.

The admirable wit of the Squirrel appeareth (if is be true) in her swimming, or passing over a River, for when hunger constraineth her so to do, she seeks out some rind, or small bark of a tree, which she setteth upon the water, and then goeth into it, and holding up her Tail like a Sail, letteth the wind drive her to the other side; and carry meat in their mouths, to prevent samine whatsoever should befalt hem.

Of the Martern and Wild-Cat.

A Martern is about the bigness of a Cat, having a longer body, but shorter legs, with head and tail like a Fox; its skin is commonly brown, white on the throat, and somewhat yellowish on the back.

Their teeth are exceeding white, and unequal, being above measure sharp; the canine teeth both above and

below hang out very long.

This and the wild-Cat are a fort of Virmine which we use here in England commonly to Hunt, and as

ne-

nece

quel

ger

are

Kin

the

tha

cry

cia

ne

Ca

le

n

F

Of the Martern and wild-Cat.

121

neceffary to be hunted as any Virmin can be: For the question may be doubtful, whether either Fox or Badger do more hurt than the wild-Cat doth, since there are so many Warrens every where throughout the Kingdom of England which are very much insessed by the wild-Cat.

It is the opinion of long-experienced Huntsmen, that she leaveth as great scent, and maketh as good a cry for the time as any Vermin that is Hunted, especially the Martern passeth all other Vermin for sweetness of scent, and her Case is a noble Fur. The wild-Cat's Case is not so good, but it is very warm, and medicinable for several Aches and Pains in the bones and joynts: also her Grease is very good for Sinews that are shrunk.

These two Chases are not to be sought purposely, unless the Huntsman do see them where they prey, and can go readily to them; but if a Hound chance to cross them, he will hunt it as soon as any Chase, and they make a noble cry as long as they stand up; when they can do it no longer, they will take a tree, and so deceive the Hounds; but if the Hounds hold in to them, and will not give it over so, then they will leap from one tree to another, and make great shift for their lives, with much passime to the Huntsmen.

When they are killed you must hold them up upon a piked staff, and hallow in all your Hounds, and then reward them with some meat; for the slesh of these Ver-

min is naught for Hounds.

mp to for vill

nd

ſs:

ile

of

Iv o

ther of h

ever end

wh

hal gai

if t

vil

fav

of

w

Bi

th

10

of

d

W

t

t

A short Account of some particular Beasts that are not Hunted in England, but in Forrain Countries.

The Nature and Properties of a Wolf, and the manner of its Hunting.

Eretofore I read that there were many Wolvein England, but now there are none; however the are fill in Ireland, but their number is very much decreased within these thirty years; and that they may more and more decrease, being so pernicious to all son of Cattle, I thought good to publish the nature and may ner of their Hunting.

First, as to their Nature; they go a Clicketing in February, and continue in that manner ten or twendays. Where many Wolves are, many will follow or Bitch, as Dogs will follow a Bitch that is falt, but she will

be onely lined with one.

A notable flory I have heard when I was in Irelal, and attested for a truth by the Inhabitants: That Bitch-Wolf proud, will suffer a great many of the Max to follow her, and will carry them after her sometims eight or ten days without Meat, Drink, or Rest; and when they are so tired that they cannot travel farther the will first lie down, then will the rest sollow her example: when she perceives that they are all asseep, and through weariness snore, then will she arise and awake that Wolf which she observed to follow her most, and having so done, entice him with her far from the rest, and suffer him to line her: the rest awaking and sinding her missing, pursue her by the scent, and finding how

how she hath cunningly deluded them, they fall instantiy on her Companion who hath been before-hand with them, and revenge themselves on him by depriving him of his life; which verifies the proverb: Never Wolf yes ever saw his Sire.

Their Whelps are able to ingender at twelve months end, at which age they part with their Dam, that is, when those Teeth are grown which they cast the first half year, and being grown, they never shed them again: and here see their gratitude, (though bloody cruel creatures) after they have preyed for themselves, if they chance to meet their Dam or Sire (for Turbervile doth not believe the aforesaid story) they will fawn upon them and lick them, rejoycing at the sight of them.

The Dog will never bring any of his Prey to his whelps till he hath filled his own belly; whereas the Bitch will not eat a bit till the hath ferved them first: they go nine weeks with whelp, and fornetimes a little longer, and grow falt but once a year. As to number of whelps, they have more or less as Dogs have; for doubtless both the Wolf and the Fox are but a kind of wild Mastiffs and wild Curs.

They prey upon all kind of things, and will feed on Carrion, Vermin, &c. They will kill a Cow or a Bullock; and as for a Sheep, Goat, or good Porker, they will roundly carry him off in their Mouths, not touching ground with it, and will run fo fall away, notwithltanding the load, that they are hardly to be stopped but by Mastiss or Horse-men. There is no Beast which runneth safter than the Wolf, and holdeth wonderfully also. When he is hunted with Hounds, he slieth not far before them; and unless he be coursed with Grey-hounds or Mastiss, he keepeth the Covert like the Bear, or Boar, and especially the beaten ways therein. Night is the usual time of his preying, though

though hunger will force him to prey by day. The are more subtile and crafty (if more can be) than the Fox or any other beast: When they are hunted, the will take all their advantages; at other times they we never run over-hastily, but keep themselves in breat and force always.

A Wolf will stand up a whole day before a god Kennel of Hounds, unless that Grey-hounds or Wolfdogs course him. If he stand at bay, have a care of be ing bitten by him; for being then mad, the wound

desperate, and hard to be cured.

When a Wolf falls into a flock of Sheep, with a good will he would kill them all before he feed up any of them, and therefore all means should be use to destroy them, as by hunting at force, or with Grahounds or Massiffs, or caught in Gins and Snars, but they had need be strong. For encouragement the meaner fort in Ireland, whosoever took a sucking Whelp, or preying Cub, a Dog or a Bitch Wolf, and brought but the heads of either to the next Justice d Peace, for reward for the first, he received twent shillings; for the second, forty; for the third, six pound; and for the last, six pounds: which late escouragement hath in a manner cleared that Kindom of them.

They bark and howl like unto Dogs; and if there's but two of them together, they make such a terribb hideous noise, that you would think there could be m

less than twenty of them in a body.

When any one would hunt the Wolf, he must train him by these means: First let him look out some sair place, a mile or more from the great woods, where there is some close standing to place a brace of good Grey - hounds in, if need be, the which should be closely environed, and some pond of water by it: there he must kill a Horse that is worth little, and

take

tal

W

ev

tai

th

tra

pr

CO

lo

pi

W

h

C

th

n

a

n

h

h

v

f

f

take the four legs thereof and carry them into the Woods and Forests adjoyning; then let four men take every man a leg of the beaft and draw it at his Horsetail all along the paths and ways in the Woods, until they come back again to the place where the Carcass of the said Beast lieth; there let them lay down their trains. Now when the Wolves go out in the night to prey, they will follow the scent of the train till they come to the carcass where it lieth. Then let those who love the sport, with their Huntsmen come early and privately near the place; and if they are discernable as they are feeding, in the first place let them consider which way will be the fairest course for the Greyhounds, and place them accordingly, and as near as they can let them forestal with their Grey-hounds the same way that the Wolves did or are flying either then or the night before; but if the Wolves be in the coverts near the carrion that was laid for them to feed upon, then let there be hewers fet round the coverts to make a noise on every side, but onely that where the Greyhounds do fland; and let them fland thick together, making what noise they can to force them to the Greyhounds: Then let the Huntseman go with his Leamhound, and draw from the carrion to the thickets-fides where the Wolves have gone in, and there the Huntsman shall cast off the third part of their best Hounds; for a Wolf will fometimes hold a covert a long time before he will come out.

The Huntsmen must hold near in to the Hounds blowing hard, and encouraging them with their voice: for many Hounds will strain courtesse at this chase, although they are strong and fit for all other chases.

When the Wolf cometh to the Grey-hounds, they who hold them will do well to fuffer the Wolf to pals by the first rank until he come further, and let the last rank

Rank let slip their Grey-hounds full in the face of the Wolf, and at the same instant let all the other Rank let slip also: so that the first Rank staying him be ever so little, he may be assaulted on all sides at one and by that means they shall the more easily take him.

It is best entring of Hounds at young Wolves which are not yet past half a year or a year old; for a Hound will hunt such more willing, and with less fear that an old Wolf; or you may take Wolves alive in Engines, and breaking their Teeth, enter your Hounds at them.

A man may know a Dog-Wolf from a Bitch by the tracks of his Feet; for the Dog hath a greater Heel, a greater Toe, greater Nails, and a rounder Foot. Befids the Bitch cafteth her Fiaunts commonly in the midfid an High-way, whereas the Dog cafteth them either the one fide or the other of the Path.

The Reward of the Dogs is thus: when they have bit and shaked the dead Welf, let the Huntsman the open his Belly straight along, and taking out his bowels, let him throw in Bread, Cheese, and other Scrap,

and so let the Dogs feed therein.

Wild-Goat-Hunting.

Never could read or hear that there was ever any fuch Chase in England as the Hunting of the wild-Goat: But since there may be such sport in Wales, as there hath been elsewhere, it will not be much amis to give some short account thereof.

The Wild-Goat is as big as a Hart, but not so long, or so long Leg'd, but is as fleshy. They have Wreaths

ar

ı

G

n

1

t

I I

and wrinkles on their horns, which declare what their age is: for according to the quantity of the wreaths, such is the number of their years; which wreaths he meweth, but not his beam, the which may be, if he be an old Gost, as big as a mans leg.

They have a great long beard, and are of a brownish gray colour very shaggy, having a long black list down the ridge of the back, and the track is bigger than the

flot of a Hart.

They fawn as a Hinde or Doe in May, and have but one fawn, which they fuckle and bring up as the tame Goat doth her kid.

They feed like Deer, onely they will eat befides ivy, moss, and such-like. In spring they make their sumets round, and afterwards broad and stat, as the Harr when

he comes to feed well.

They go to rut about Alballonide, and continue therein a month or five weeks; that season being over, they descend from the mountains and rocks, their abode for the summer-season, and herd themselves, not onely to avoid the snow, but because they can find no food any longer; and yet they come not very low, but keep at the foot of the mountains, feeding there till Easter: then they return again, every one chusing some strong hold in the rocks, as the Harrs in the thickets.

About fawning-time the females separate from the males, attending till rutting-time: in this interval they will run at man or beast, and fight as Harts doe one a-

mongst the other.

When he goeth to rut, his throat and neck is much bigger than ufual: he is very ftrong backt; and (which is wonderful) though he flould fall from on high ten poles length, he will receive no harm; and will walk as furely on the fliarp tops of rocks, as a horse in the high-way.

K

Al-

Alballontide is the chiefest season for hunting the wild Goats, observing very well before you hunt, in advantages of the coasts, the rocks and places where the Goats do lie.

Having thus done, fet nets and toils toward their vers and bottoms; for you cannot expect your hound should follow a Goat down every place of the moun

tains.

Also it will be needful that some stand on the top of the rocks, and throw down stones as they see occasion. Where the Goat goeth down to the small brooks or waters in the bottom, there place your relays, and let the relays never tarry till the hounds come in which were cast off: and this is your best help; for a man can not ther follow on foot nor horse-back.

Hunting of the Wild-Boar.

The Boar is ever pigg'd with as many teeth at first in bigness, not number. Amongst the rest, they have four which are called tushes, or tusks, whereof the two biggest do not hurt when he strikes, but serve onely to whet the other two lowest, with which they frequently kill.

They feed upon all kind of corn and fruits which they can come at; also roots. In April and May they feed on the buds of plumb-trees, and chef-nut-trees, and all other sweet buds they can find, especially on the buds of broom and juniper, and are never meassed, as our tame swine. Being near the sea-coast, they will feed on all manner of shell sish.

Their season beginneth in the midst of September

and endeth about the beginning of December, at which time they go a brimming. A Boar will commonly abide the bay before he goes out of his den, and he lies most commonly in the strongest holds of thorns and thick bushes.

If it so chance that there is a founder of them together, then if any break sounder, the rest will run that way: and if you hunt a Boar from a thick and strong covert, he will not fail to go back by the same way he came thither: and when he is rear'd he never stays, but slies continually till he comes to the place where he was sarrow'd and brought up. This Mr. Turbervile observed himself when he was in France; attesting he saw a Boar hunted from a thicket, which returned the same way he came to the place of his farrowing, which was distant seven French leagues. And this was performed by the track of his feet.

If he be hunted in a forest or hold where he was bred, he will hardly be forced out of it. Sometimes he will take head, and seem to go out, and will draw to the outsides of the wood; but it is onely to hearken on every side: and if he hear the noise of the hounds, then will he return, and will not be compelled to go that way till night. But having broken out of a forest and taken head end-ways, he will not be put out of his way either by man, dog, voice, blowing, or any

thing.

un

A Boar, especially a great one, will not cry when you kill him: The sows and young swine will sometimes.

Terms to be used in Boar-Hunting.

If it should be demanded what you will call a Boar of three years old; you may answer, He is a young Boar which bath lately left the sounder. An old Boar K 2

Teet

laid

fly.

ftri

wh

up

ha

ho

he

for

he

gr

tc

th

W

fo

r

I

you must call a Singular, or Sanglier, that bath left is founder four or five years since. In making of a report, you are asked where the Boar sed the night before, you may say, he fed in the corn; but if in the fields or meadows, you must then say, he hath been routing and worming in such a place, or such a fern-field. Where note, that whatsoever he feeds on, excepting roots, is called feeding; the other is called routing, worming, or fearning but when he feedeth and routeth not, you must then call that grasing.

Boar-Hunting with Hounds at Force.

Be advised not to hunt a young Boar of three year old at force; for he will stand up as long, if not longer than any light young Deer which beareth but three in the top: but in the fourth year you may hunt him at force, as you do a Hart at ten.

In the rearing of your Boar, you need not be afraid to come near him, for he values you not, and will lie flill,

and will not be rear'd by you alone.

Here note, that if a Boar intends to abide in his den, couch, or fort, then will he make fome croffing or doubling at the entry thereof upon fome high-way or beaten path; by such means a huntsman, being early in the woods, may judge of the subtilty of the Boar, and accordingly may make preparations for his

game.

If he be a great Boar, and one that hath lain long to rest, let him hunt him with good store of hounds, and such as will stick close to him; and let him on horse-back be ever amongst them, charging the Boar, to discourage him: for it you hunt such a Boar with half a dozen couple of dogs, he will not value them; and they having chased him, he will take courage and keep them still at bays, running upon any thing he seeth

feeth before him. But if he be charged home, and hard laid unto with the hounds, he will turn head and

fly.

If you strike at him with your sword or Boar-spear, strike not low, for then you will hit him on the snout, which he little values; for he watcheth to take blows upon his tusks or thereabouts: but lifting up your hand, strike right down, and have a special care of your horse; for if you strike and hurt him, so will he you if he can.

It behoveth the hunters of Boars to be very wary; for he will run fiercely without fear upon his pursuers: in which encounter, if he receive not his deaths wound, he overthroweth his adversary, except he fall flat on the ground, and then he need not fear much harm; for his teeth cannot cut upward but downward: but it is otherwise with a semale; for she will bite and tear any way.

It is good to raise this beast early in the morning before he hath made water, for the burning of his bladder

doth quickly make him weary.

When the Boar is first raised out of the wood, he snuffeth in the wind, listing up his nose to smell what is with him, and what against him; and rarely strikes a

man till he be first wounded himself.

The hunting-spear must be very sharp and broad, branching forth into certain forks, so that the Boar may not break through them upon the huntsman: The best places to wound him in therewith, are the middle of his forehead betwixt his eye-lids, or else upon the shoulder; either of these wounds is mortal.

If the Boar make head against the hunter, he must not fly for it, but must meet him with his spear, holding one hand on the middle of it, and the other at the end, standing one foot before another, having

K 3

an especial eye to the head of the beast which way soe ver he windeth or turneth the same: for such is then ture of the Boar, that sometimes he snatcheth the spen out of their hands, or elfe recoileth the force back again upon the hunter, by both which means he is in great danger of life: whenfoever this hapneth there is but one remedy, which is; another of his companions must come and charge the Boar with his spear, and then pretend to wound him with his dart, but not casting it for fear of hurting the hunter. The Boar feeing this forsaketh the first man, and rusheth upon the second who must look to defend himself with all dexterity composing his body, and ordering his weapons according to artificial Boar-hunting: in the mean time k that was overthrown must rife again; taking fresh hold on his spear, and with all courage affault his advertage and affilt his friend who was the cause of the faving of his life.

When he feeleth himself so wounded that he cannot live, were it not for the forks of the Boar-spear, he would press it on his vanquisher, and so revenge his death: For such is the fury of this beast, that he will endeavour to wound and kill, although he feel upon him the pangs of death; and what place foever he biteth, whether man or dog, the heat of his teeth causeth the wound to be inflam'd: and for this cause, if he but touch the hair of a dog, he burneth it off: nay, huntimen have tried the heat of his teeth, by laying hairs on them as foon as he was dead, and they have shrivel'd up as with a hot-iron.

To conclude; the fame devises, diligence, labour, profecution, and observations are to be used in the hunting of the Boar, which are prescribed for the hunting of the Hart. Not but that there are several policies and stratagems which have been invented, and are still used in several countries, whereby to take

th

w

 G_i

m jec

th

Ci

a

ŗ

them without the pursuit of dogs; to the knowledge whereof I shall refer the reader to Blondus, Oppianus, Gesner, Turbervile, and many others both antient and modern writers, who have largely treated on this subject.

Of the Nature and Properties of a Bear, and after what manner Hunted.

There are two forts of Bears, a greater and leffer; the last is more apt to climb trees than the other.

Bears are bred in many countries; in the Helvetian Alpine region they are fo strong and courageous, that they can tear in pieces both oxen and horses; for which cause the inhabitants are studiously laborious in the ta-

king them.

at

A Bear is of a most venereous and lustful disposition; for night and day the females with most ardent inflam'd desires do provoke the males to copulation; and for this cause at that time they are most sierce and angry. The time of their copulation is in the beginning of winter, and the manner of it is like to a man's; the male moving himself upon the belly of the semale, which lieth shat on her back, and they embrace each other with their fore-seet: they remain a very long time in that act; in so much (as some have observed, how true I cannot say) that if they were very sat at their first entrance, they dis-joyn not themselves again till they be lean.

There is a strange report in history, (if it be true). That in the mountains of Savoy a Bear carried a young maid into his den by violence, where in a venereal

manner he had the carnal use of her body; and which he kept her in his den, he daily went forth and brough her the best fruits he could get, presenting them in her as food, as courtly as he could do it; but a ways when he went to forrage, he rowled a very great stone to the mouth of his den, that the virgin should not make her escape from him: at length he parents, with long search, found their daughter in the Bear's den, who delivered her from that beastial captivity.

They are naturally very cruel and mischievous und all tame beasts, and are very strong in all parts of the body but their head, whereon a small blow will kil

them.

They go to mate in the beginning of the winta, fome fooner, fome later, according to their rest and feeding; and their heat lasteth not passing fifteen

days.

When the shear perceiveth her self with whelp, she withdraws her self into some cave, or hollow rock, and there remains till she brings forth her whelps, when without meat they grow very fat, especially the male, onely by sucking their fore-seet. When they enter into their den, they convey themselves backward, that so they may put out their foot-steps from the sight of the hunters.

The nature of all of them is to avoid cold, and therefore in the winter-time they hide themselves, chusing rather to suffer famine than cold; lying for the most part three or four months together and never see the light, whereby in a manner their guts are clung together: coming forth, they are so dazled by long darkness, being in the light again, that they stagger and reel to and fro; and then by a secret instinct they remedy the straightness of their guts by eating an herb called Arum, in English Wake-rebbin or Calvu-

foot,

fost.

beir

at o

and

the

hu

tin

of bu

> br vi

> > th

b

b

V

-

foot, by the acidity whereof their guts are enlarged; and being recovered, they remain more fierce and cruel than at other times, during the time their young are with them; and this is the herb, forme fay, which they eat to make them fleep so long in winter without sense of cold or hunger.

They are whelped most commonly in Mareb, sometimes two, and not above five in number; the most part of them are dead one whole day after they are whelped; but the Bear doth so lick them and warm them with her breath, and hug them in her bosom, that she quickly re-

vives them again.

It is commonly received as a truth, (though it be a palpable vulgar errour) That the whelps of Bears at their first littering are without all form and fashion, and nothing but a little congealed blood like a lump of sless, which afterwards the old one frameth with her tongue by licking them to her own likeness. This opinion may be easily disproved; for they are onely littered blind without hair, and the hinder-legs not perfect, the fore-feet solded up like a sist, and other members deformed, by reason of the immoderate humour or moistness in them; which also is one cause why she cannot retain in her womb the seed to the perfection of the young ones, whereof Joachimus Rheticus is an eye-witness.

As foon as the dam perceiveth her cubs to grow firong, the suckleth them no longer, by reason of their curstness; for they will forely bite her if they cannot get suck enough. After this the preyeth abroad upon any thing the can meet with, which the eates, and casts up again to her young ones, and so feeds them till they can prey for themselves: They will climb a tree for the fruit.

If they be hunted, they will follow a man, but not run upon him unless they are wounded. They are

very strong in their paws, in such fort, that they will so hug a man or dog till they have broke his back, or faucez'd his guts out of his belly : with a fingle paw they will pull a lufty dog to their tearing and devouring They bite very feverely; for they will bite a man's head to the very brains; and for an arm or leg. they will crash it as a dog may do a slender bone of mutton.

When they are hunted, they are so heavy that they make no speed, and so are always in fight of the dogs; They stand not at bay as a Boar, but fly wallowing; but if the hounds stick in, they will fight valiantly in their own defence; sometimes they stand up straight on their hinder-feet, and then take that as a fign of fear and cowardize; they fight floutest and strongest on all four.

They have an excellent scent, and smell further off than any other beast except the Boar; for in a whole forest they will smell out a tree laden with mast.

They may be hunted with hounds, mastiffs, or greyhounds; and they are chased and kill'd with bows, Boarspears, darts, and swords; so are they also taken in snares, caves, and pits, with other engines.

They do naturally abide in great mountains; but when it snoweth, or in hard weather, then they descend into valleys and forests for provision. They cast their lesses sometimes in round croteys, and sometimes flat like a bullock, according to their feeding.

They go fometimes a gallop, and at other times an amble; but they go most at case when they wal-

low.

When they come from their feeding they beat commonly the high-ways and beaten paths: and wherefoever they go out of the high-ways, there you may be fure they are gone to their dens; for they use no doubfings nor subtilties.

They

They tumble and wallow in water and mire as fwine, and they feed like a dog. Some fay their flesh is very good food, let who will eat it for me, who are

not so nicely palated as my self.

ng a

t-

y

The best finding of a Bear is with a learn-hound; and yet he who is without one may trail after a Bear as we do after a Buck or Roe, and you may lodge and hunt them as you do a Buck. For the more speedy execution, mingle mastisfs among your hounds; for they will pinch the Bear, and so provoke her to anger, until at last they bring her to the bay; or else drive her out of the plain into the covert, not letting her be at rest till she tight in her own desence.

Of the Beaver.

A Beaver differeth but a little from an Otter but in his tail: his colour is formewhat yellow and white aspersed with ash-colour, which stand out beyond the shorter hairs, double their length; and are neat and soft like an Otters.

There is plenty of them in the river Pontus, whence the Beaver by some is called Canis Ponticus: They are also bred in Spain, some sew in France, Germany, Polonia, Sclavonia, Russia, Prussia, Lithuania; and abundance of

them in New-England.

These beasts are amphibious, living both on land and water both fresh and salt, keeping the last in the day-time, and the first in the night: Without water they cannot live; for they participate much of the nature of fish, which may be gathered from their tails and hinder-legs.

They are about the bigness of a country cur;

their head short; their ears small and round; the teeth very long, the under-teeth standing out beyon their lips three singers breadth, and the upper about half a singer, being very broad, crooked, strong, and sharp, standing very deep in their mouth, wherewith they defend themselves against beasts, take sishes as it were upon hooks, and will gnaw in sunder trees as he

as a man's thigh.

Their fore-feet are like dogs, and their hinder like geefe, made as it were on purpose to go on the land and swim in the water; but the tail of this beast is most strange of all, being without hair, and covered over with a skin like the scales of a fish, it being like a Soal, and for the most part six singers broad, and halfa foot long. They are accounted a very delicate dish, and cat like Barbels: the manner of their dressing is by roasting them first, and boiling or stewing them afterwards; they must be food that is very sweet, since this proverb proceeded from them: Sweet is that fish which is no fish at all.

As for the wonderful manner of their building, I shall let that alone, since it is at large described by Gesneria

his History of Beasts, page 36.

There is nothing so valuable in this beast as his stones; for they are in great esteem, and a precious com-

modity.

It hath been the opinion of fome, that when a Beaver is hunted, and is in danger to be taken, he biteth off his own stones, knowing that for them onely is he thus pursued: but this is found to be a meer inction; for their stones being small, and placed like a Boar's, it is impossible for them to come at them.

They are taken for their skins, tails, and cods, and that many ways. First, when their caves are found: (in which are several chambers built one over another by the water-side, to ascend or descend according

35

25 1

fou

the

he

to

pu hu

pu

th

fh

to

VC

ar

f

r

as the water rifeth or falleth) I say, their abode being found, they make a breach therein, wherein is put a little dog, which the Beaver perceiving, slies instantly to the end-of her cave, and there desendeth her self with her teeth, till all her building be raised, and she laid open to her enemies, who kill her with instruments for that purpose. These dogs for the Beaver are the same which hunt Otters.

They cannot dive long time under water, but must put up their heads for breath; which being seen by those who are hunting them, they kill them with gunshot or Otter-spears: His nature is, if he hear any noise, to put up his head above water, whereby he is discovered, and so loseth life. Those skins are best which are blackest.

Of the Elk.

This beaft is twice as big as a Hart, whose upperlip is so great, and hangeth over the nether so far, that he cannot eat going forward; but as he eateth he goeth backward, and so gathereth up his sustenance.

His mane is divers both on the top of his neck, and underneath his throat, which buncheth like a beard, or curled lock of hair; his neck is very short, disproportionable to his body.

He hath two very large horns bending towards the back in a plain edge, and the fpires stand forward to the face: both males and females have them; they are solid at the root and round, but afterwards branched; they are broader than a Harr's, and are very heavy, being not above two soot long; and these horns

horns they mew every year: He is colour'd for the me part like a Heart, and hath cloven feet, but without joynts (like an Elephant) in his fore-legs, and therefore fleepeth leaning to posts or trees; and fighteth not with his horns, but fore-feet.

It is a most timorous creature, not desiring to simuch, unless provok'd thereunto by hunting. Then is no danger in hunting this beast, except a man come right before him: for if this beast fasten his fore-set on him, he cannot escape alive; but if it receive any

fmall wound, it instantly dies.

They are taken by nets and toils, or as Elephans are taken: for when they have found the trees when unto they lean, they so cut and saw them, that when the Elk cometh, he overthroweth the tree and falled with it; and being not able to rise, is so taken alive. When they are chasted eagerly, and can find no place to rest themselves in and lie secret, they run to the waters, and therein stand, taking up waters into their mouths; and in a little time do so heat it, that squirting it out upon the dogs, the heat thereof so scalded them, that they dare not come nigh or approach them any more.

Many more exotick beafts I might here insert, describing their natures, and the manner of their Form hunting; but, since they are not to be found in Extend, let these suffice which I have already described.

Dogs

etl

fro

TO

or

aff

the

as

ma

Ho to up the

for the Dogs Diseases Remedied, and their Hurts Healed, according to the best Prescriptions of Ancient and Modern Huntsmen.

Of a Five-fold Madness in a Dog: the Symptoms of the Maladies, and their CVRE.

The ancients have derived Rabies, Madness, from Ravies, hoarseness of voice, for mad dogs have no perfect voice: but it is more probable, that Rabies cometh à Rapiendo; because when a dog beginneth to go mad, he biteth, runneth, snatcheth, and roves to and-fro, to his own perdition. A mad dog is most dangerous in the Dog-days; for at that time the very foam or spittle falling on a man breeds danger.

There are properly seven forts of Madnesses which afflict a dog, whereof two of them are incurable, and therefore I shall speak little of them; onely so much as may give you warning to shift them from your other dogs, because their disease is insectious; and that you may beware of them your self, lest they injure you; for

their biting is dangerous.

The first of these incurable Madnesses is called the Hot burning Madness, and is known by these symptoms. First, when they run, they raise their tails bolt-upright, and run upon any thing that stands before them, having no respect where nor which way they run: also their mouths will be very black, having no foam in not about them. They will not continue thus above three or sour days, after which time they die, their pain being so intolerable. Where note, that

142 Diteates and Cures of Dogs.

all those dogs they have bitten and drew blood from

will be mad in like manner.

The feeond is called the running Madness, and is ke dangerous, however incurable. The dogs that are troubled with this madness run not on men, but dogs and on no other beasts. The symptoms are, they will smell on other dogs, and having smelt them, will stake and bite them, yet staking their tails, and seeming to offer no harm: with other tokens I othit for breving sake:

Of the Dumb Madneff.

The five Madnesses (or rather Sicknesses) which are

curable, are thefe:

The first is called the *Dumb* madness, and is the known: the dog that is troubled therewith will not feed, but holds his mouth wide open continually, putting his feet to his mouth frequently, as if he had a bor in his throat.

The cure is thus: Take four ounces of the juice of Spatbala putrida, and put it into a pot; then take the like quantity of the juice of black Hellebore, and a much of the juice of Rue: having strained them all well through a fine cloath, put them into a glass: then take two drams of Scammony unprepared, and having mingled it with the former juices, put it into a horn or fannel, and convey it down his throat, keeping his head up straight, less the cast it up again: then bleed him in the mouth, cutting three or four veins in his gums that he may bleed the better; and in a short time you will find amendment. Or you may onely take eight drams of the juice of an herb called Harts-horn, or Dogs-tooth, and you will find it a most excellent receipt against any madness whatsoever.

Of the Falling Madness.

The fecond is called the Falling Madness: the disease lieth in their heads, which maketh them reel as they go, and fall.

The cure is thus: Take four ounces of the juice of Piony, with the like quantity of the juice of Briony, the like of the juice of Cruciata, and four drams of Stavefacre pulverized: mingle these together, and give it your hound or dog as aforesaid: then let him blood in the ears or the two veins which come down the shoulders; and if he is not cured at first, give it him a second or third time.

Of the Lank Madneß.

The third kind of madness is called the Lank Madness, by reason of the leanness of their bodies occasioned

by skummering.

The cure is thus: First, purge your dog with this portion: Take an ounce and a half of Cassia fistularis well cleanfed, two drams and a half of Stavefacre pulverized, and the like quantity of Scammony prepared in White-wine-vinegar, and four ounces of Oyl-olive; temper these and warm them over the Fire, and give it your dog. In the morning put him into this bath falting as followeth: Put into fix pails full of water ten handfuls of Mugwort, of Rolemary, of red-Sage, of the roots or leaves of Marsh-mallows, of the roots or leaves of Wall-wort, of the roots or stalks of Fennel, of the leaves or stalks of Elecampane, Baulm and Rue, Sorrel, Buglofs and Mellilot; let these boil together in two thirds of water and the other Wine, until one third be confumed: the bath being no hotter than your dog can endure it, bathe him sheros

144 Diseases and Cures of Dogs.

therein for the space of an hour; then taking him out, put him in some warm place for fear of catching cold. Do this four or five times in the same bath, and it will cure.

Of the Sleeping Madness.

The fourth Madness is called the Sleeping Madness, and is caused by some little Worms breeding in the mouth of the Stomack from corrupt Humours, the vapours and sumes whereof ascending into the head, make the dog sleep continually, and frequently he dieth sleeping.

For the cure, you must take five ounces of the juice of Wormwood, with two ounces of the powder of Harts-horn burned, and two drams of Agarick: mingle these together; and if they be too thick, thin them with

White-wine, and give it your dog to drink.

Of the Rheumatick or Slavering Madness.

This Madness is called so, because, when a dog hath got it, his head swelleth, his eyes are as yellow as a Kite's-foot, and he commonly flavereth at the mouth.

The Cure is thus: Take fix ounces of the juice of Fennel-roots, and the like quantity of the juice of Miffeltoe, four ounces of the juice of Ivy, four ounces of the powder of the roots of Polypodie; boil these in White-wine, and give it your dog to drink as hot as he can suffer it.

Here note, that when a dog hath any of these kinds of Madnesses he will have no desire to eat, fasting frequently eight or nine days, and so starving to death. Nay, if they are troubled with any distemper they will refuse their meat, nay, the daintiest bit you can give them, until they have eaten grass, and have cleared

their

Diseases and Cutes of Dogs. 145 their stomack of what did offend it, and then they will can

Concerning the Madness of Dogs, and their Venomous Bitings.

I think no reasonable man ought to question why the teeth of a mad dog should do more harm than those of a sound one; because in rage and anger the teeth of every beast and creature receive venome and posson from the head, whereby when they bite at that time

they do much more harm.

Against the simple biting of a dog, take the urine of a dog, which is sufficient, since there is but little venome in those wounds. To lay the hair of the same dog thereon, (though so much talkt on) I look upon as a meer soppery. Or being bit by a dog, take vinegar, and with your hand rub the wound very well; then pour into it vinegar mixed with water or Nitre; then wet a spunge in the same liquids, and so let it remain bound up three days; then take Pellitory of the wall, mingled and beaten with Salt, or any other plaister for green wounds.

Divers are the cures and remedies for biting of mad dogs; which I omit in this place, as belonging not to

my subject, but to Physick.

A Remedy against the common Mange.

This diftemper befalls a dog frequently for want of fresh water to drink when he desires it, and sometimes by soul kennelling, and sometimes by soundering and melting his greace.

You may cure it in this manner: Take two handfuls of wild Creffes, two handfuls of Elecampane, and as much of the leaves and roots of Roerb and

. 2

146 Dileales and Cures of Spanieis.

Sorrel, and two pound of the roots of Frodels; make them all boil well in lye and vinegar: having strained the decoction, put therein two pound of gray soap; and when it is melted therein, then rub your dogs with it four or five days together, and it will cure them.

A brief Discourse of the Cure of Maladies belonging to Spaniels, with other accidents happening.

A Cow necessary a thing a Spaniel is to Faulconry, and for those that delight in that noble recreation, keeping Hawks for their passime and pleasure, I think no body need question, as well to spring and retrive a sowl being flown to the mark, as also divers other ways so help and affist Faulcons and Goshawks.

Now fince they are subject to many diseases and casualties, I shall endeavour to propound a suitable cure for them; and first, I shall begin with the Mange, as the capital enemy to the quiet and beauty of a brave Spaniel, wherewith poor creatures they are often grievously tor-

mented, and as frequently infect others.

For the cure of this diffemper, take a pound of Barrow-flick, common Oil three ounces, Brimstone well pulverized four ounces, Salt well beaten to powder, Ashes well sisted and searced, of each two ounces; boil all these in a kettle or earthen-pot, and when they are all well incorporated together, anoint your Spaniel with this thrice every other day, either against the Sun or Fire: having so done, wash him all over with good strong Lye, and this will kill the Mange. Remember you shift his kennel and litter often.

Difeates and Cures of Spaniels. 147

If the Spaniel lose its Hair, as it often happens, then bathe your Spaniel in the water of Lupines or Hops, and anoint him with stale Barrows-slick.

This ointment, besides the cure, maketh his skin look flick and beautiful, and kills the sleas, the dogs disquie-

ters, and enemies to his eafe.

If this be not strong enough to destroy this malady, then take two quarts of strong vinegar, common oil six ounces, brimstone three ounces, soot six ounces, brayd salt and searced two handfuls: boil all these together in the vineger, and anoint your dog as aforesaid. This receipt must not be administred in cold weather, for it may hazard his life in so doing.

If a Spaniel be not much troubled with the Mange,

then it is easie to cure him thus:

Make bread with wheaten-bran, with the roots, leaves, and fruit of Agrimony, beating them well in a mortar, and, making it into a paste or dough, bake it in an oven, and so made, give thereof to your Spaniel, giving him no other bread for some time, letting him eat as long as he will.

Cure of the Formica.

In the summer-time there is a scurvy malady which very much afflicts a Spaniel's ears, and is accasioned by slies and their own scratching with their seet: We term it a Mange, the Italians, Formica, and the French, Fourmier.

For the cure, take Gum-dragaganth four ounces infused in the strongest Vinegar may be gotten, for the space of eight days, and afterwards bruised on a marble-stone, as painters do their colours, adding unto it Roch-allum and Galls beaten to powder, of either two ounces; mingle all these well together, and lay it on the place afflicted.

L 3

148 Difeates and Cures of Spaniels.

For Swelling in the Throat.

By reason of a humour distilling from the brain, the throat of a Spaniel will often swell unreasonably. For cure whereof, anoint the grieved place with oil of Camomile; then wash it with vinegar not over-strong mixed with falt. Probatum eft.

fi

0

tl

Of Worms breeding in the Hurts and Mangy parts of a Spaniel.

These worms do hinder the cure of the mange or wounds, caufing them to continue at one flay, or to grow worse and worse. To remove this hindrance, take the gum of Ivy and convey it into the wound, and let it there remain a day or two, washing the wound with Wine; and after that anoint it with Bacon-greafe, oil of Earth-worms, and Rue.

The powder of wild Cucumbers is excellent good to kill these worms, and will prove a good corrosive, also eating away the dead flesh, and increasing the good.

If the worms be within the body, you must destroy them in this manner: Cause your Spaniel, by fair means or foul, when falling, to eat the yolk of an egg with two scruples of Saffron pulverized and confected with the fame egg, keeping him after it fasting till

night.

When a Spaniel is hurt, as long as he can come to lick the wound with his tongue he needs no other remedy; his tongue is his best Chirurgeon: but when he cannot do that, then such wounds as are not venomous you may cure with the powder of Matrefilva dried in an oven, or in the Sun. If it be a bite of a Fex, anoint it with oil wherein Earth-worms and Rue have been boiled together. If by a mad dog, let him lap twice or thrice of the broth

Diseases and Cures of Spaniels. 149 broth of Germander, and eat the Germander too boiled.

Others bore the skin of his neck through with a hot-Iron just betwixt his ears, so as the fire may touch both sides of the hole made: after that, plucking up the skin of the dog's shoulders and flanks backwards, thrust it through with a hot-Iron in like manner; by giving the venom this vent, it is a ready way to cure him.

To belp a Spaniel that hath loft his fense of Smelling.

Spaniels, fometimes, by reason of too much rest and grease, or some other accident, do lose their sense of smelling, so as they cannot spring or retrive a sowl after their usual manner: To recover it again, take Agarick two drams, Sal Gemma one scruple; beat these into powder, and incorporate them with Oxymel, making a pill as big as a nut, cover it with butter, and give it the dog by sair means or soul. This will bring him into a quick scent, as I have oftentimes proved it.

The benefit of cutting off the tip of a Spaniel's Tail or Stern.

It is necessary for several reasons to cut off the tip, of a Spaniel's stern when it is a whelp. First, by so doing worms are prevented from breeding there; in the next place, if it be not cut, he will be the less forward in pressing hastily into the covert after his game; besides this benefit, the dog appears more beautiful.

L 4

An

An Abstract of such Penal

LAWS

As relate to

HUNTERS and HUNTING.

Tat. 13 R.2. cap. 13. Mo man who hath not lands of 40 s. perand. no? Clerk who hath not 10l revenue per an. thall have or keep any Grey-hound, Dound, Dog, Ferret, Metal Engine to destroy Deer, Bares, Coneys, or any other Gentlemans Same, in pain of one whole years imprisoment, which Justices

of Deace have power to inflict.

Stat. 1 H. 7. cap. 7. If any thall hunt within Fozests, Parks, or Clarrens in the night time, or disguised, one of the Kings Council, or a Justice of Peace to whom information thall be made, thall by his Clarrant cause the Offender to be brought before himtelf, or some other Councellor or Justice of Peace to be examined; where if he conceal the Fact, such hunting thall be deemed Felomy; but being confessed, the Offence is one by finable at the uert general Sessions. And here a Bescous of the Execution of any such Charrant thall be also peemed Felomy.

Stat. 19 H. 7. cap. 11. Mone shall keep any Deer-hays, og Buck-stalls (save in his own Fozest og Park) in pain to fozest fozesery

Month

990

any De pair s veft vai

> pen Kii

the

02

DI DI

pa

go

be

he

íf

Œ

pe din opt

Month they are so kept 40s. Reither shall any stalk with any Buth of Beast to any Deer, except in his own Fozest of Park, on pain of 101.

Stat. 14, 15 H. 8. cap. 10. Mone thall trace, bestrop, or kill any Dare in the Snow, in pain of 6 s. 8 d. for every such Offence: which penalty assessed in Sellions thall go to the King; but in a Leet, to the Lord thereof.

Stat. 3 Jacob. cap. 13. None thall (without the Owners Licente) kill of chafe any Deer of Coneys in any Parks, of inclosed Grounds, in pain to luster three months imprisonment, to pay treble damages to the party grieved, and to be bound with two god Sureties to the god behaviour for seven years: But the party grieved, having satisfaction, bath liverty to release the Behaviour.

II. By the same Statute it appears, that if any person not having 40 l. per annum in Lands, 02 200 l. in Gods, 02 some inclosed Ground used sor Deer or Coneys worth 40 s. per ann. at least, shall use any Gun, Bow, or Cross-bow to kill any Deer or Coneys, or shall keep any Buck-stall, Ferret, Dog, Met, or other Engine, it shall be sawful sor any person (having Lands worth 100 l. per ann.) to take such Gun, &c. from any such person, and to convert it to his swn use.

Stat. 13 Car. 2. cap. 20. Mone shall unlawfully Courle, Kill, Hunt, of carry away any Deer in any Forest, Chase, Purliew, Aloo, Wark, of other Ground where Deer have been usually kept, within England and Wales, without the consent of the Dwners of Par-

Ò

Di

U

ai

Œ

ti

tl

if

ti

ti

b

0

0

0

t

1

tt

ty chiefly trusted with the custody thereof, a be aiding or assisting therein, upon pain, being convicted by consession, or one Witness, before any Justice of the Peace within simonthy after the Offence, of 20 l. to be levied by distress by Alarrant of the said Justices one moity to the Informer, the other to the Owner of the Oeer: And for want of distress, to be committed to the Pouse of Correction, or common Soal, for one year, and not distributed the good behaviour.

11. It is nevertheless provided, that upm punishment of this Statute the penalty of

no other Law be incurred.

Stat. 22 & 23 Car. 2. cap. 25. It is Enantel That all Lozds of Mannours oz other Roy alties, not under the begree of an Efquite, may by Wiriting under their hands am Seals, authorize one or more Same-keepers within their respective Mannours of Roy alties; who being thereunto so authorized, may take and feize all fuch Guns, Bows, Glep-hounds, Setting dogs, Lurchers, a other Dogs to kill hares of Coneys, fet rets, Crammels, Low-bells, haves, of o ther Mets, Dare-pipes, Snares, og other Engines for the taking and killing of Co. neps, Dares, Pheafants, Partribges, o other Same, as within the Pretings of luch respective Mannours shall be used by and person of persons wha by this Act are proble bited to keep or use the same. and if amp verson or persons by this Act prohibited to keep of ule any Guns, Dogs, &c. as afore. faid, be upon good ground sufperted to have

farp

or keep in his or their custody, any Guns. Bows, or any fort of Dogs, &c. to deftrop Dares, Coneps, &c. Then may the faid Same-keeper og Same-keepers, oz other person (being thereunto Authorized hy Warrant under the pand and Seal of any Justice of the Peace of the same County, Division, og Place) in the daytime, fearch the Doules, Dut houses, or other places of fuch perfons to suspected: and if any Bun, Grep-hound, Bows, Settingbong, &c. be there found, the same he hall leize, betain, and keep, to and for the ule of the Lord of the Mannour or Royalty where the same shall be so found or taken; or otherwife to cut in pieces or destroy, as things by this Act prohibited to be kept by their denree.

11. Mone habing Lands of Tenements. or some other Effate of Inheritance in his own or his Mifes right, of the clear value of 1001, per ann. 02 for term of life, or habina Leafe or Leafes of 99 years at feaft of the clear value of 1501. Idoz the Son and Deir apparent of an Elquire, oz other person of higher degree, who are hereby declated to be the persons declared by the Laws of this Realm not allowed to have or keep any Buns, Bows, Dephounds, Setting-dogs, Ferrets, Conep-dogs, Lurchers, Days, Dets, Lowbells, Dare-pipes, Snares, 02 other Engines afozelaid: But thall be, and are hereby prohibited to have, keep, or use the same. All Divners and Reepers of Foreffs, Parks, Marrens, og Chafes, being flockt with Deer of Coneys for their neces-

ma

nat

fail

fail

02

fuc

not

thí

b2t

9B

np

an

m

15 0f

th

af

b

es

ti

t

k

u

r

t

fary ule, in respect of the laid Forests, Parts arlarrens, or Chales are allowed to keep.

III. Rone may enter wrongfully into a clarren or ground lawfully used or kee for the breeding or keeping of Coneys; (a though the same be not enclosed) nortal, kill, or chase any Coneys there without the consent of the Owner thereof, not having any lawful Citle or Authority so to do, a pain to yield to the party grieved treble demages and cost; besides shall suffer the mouths Imprisonment, and after till the find Sureties for their good abearing: the person offending being convict by one the iness upon Oath, or his own confession is

sufficient.

IV. Ro person or persons shall take in the night-time any Coneys upon the borders of any Marren, or other grounds, lawful used for the breeding or keeping of any Co nevs, except fuch as shall be owners of the Soil, or lawful occupier or possessor of the ground, or any persons employed by him her, or them, whereon such Coneys hall te so killed of taken; upon pain that every Offender, lawfully convict as aforefaid, that give the party of parties injured fuch recomvence or fatisfaction for his or their damages. and within fuch time as thall be appointed by the Justice befoze whom such Offender hall be convicted; and over and above pay down welently to the Overfeers for the ule of the 1901 of the Parish where such Osence hall be committed, such sum of many, not excee ding 10 s. as the faid Juffice thalf think meet. And if such Offender of Offenders do not make make recompence of latisfaction to the laid party of parties injured, and also pay the laid tum to the 19wl as afolesaid, then the laid Justice chall commit the laid Offender of Offendors to the Doule of Correction, for fuch time as the laid Justice chall think fit, not exceeding one month.

V. Provided that what is mentioned in this Act of 22 & 23 Car. 2. extend not to ablidge any Royalry or Prerogative of his Paielly; not to abridge, change, or alter any forest-Laws, but the same to be of force, and remain as if this Act had not been made.

A further Abstract of some Penal LAWS as concern FORESTS, CHASES, &c.

There shall be three Swainmotes in the Pear, viz. one 15 days before Michaelmals; another about Martinmals, and the third 15 days before Midsummer. At the first two of which none shall appear by distress, but the fosters, Aerdors, and Gest-takers; and at the other onely the Fosters and Aerdors shall meet every forty days, to see the Attachment of the Foress, as well for Green-hue, as hunting: And the Swainmotes shall not be kept, but in the Counties where they have used to be kept.

II. Lawing of Dogs thall be made in Forests, from 3 years to 3 years by the view and testimony of lawful men, and not otherwise: bowbeit such Lawing of Dogs thall not be

be

an

the

sel

D

no

wh

pie

th

on

wi

711

be

cal

the

hit

ref

be

he

DI

let

mí

Di

Àt

F

FI

re

IL

at

m

thi

but where it hath been used from the co

nation of Hen. 2d.

111. 120 Foster 0? Beadle thall make ental, 02 gather Garbe, Dats, Lamb, 02 gibut by the sight of the 12 Rangers when it shall make their Range: And there shall so many Rangers assigned so? the keeping of Fozests, as shall seem reasonably had cient for the same.

1V. Any person having a Mood in the fivest may agest it, and take his pawnage the at his pleasure; he may also drive his don through the Kings Moods, or essewhere that purpose; and if they ly all night in forest, he shall not be questioned for it.

V. None thall lose Life or Dember for it ling of Deer, but thall be fined for it it have any thing, if not, he thall be imprison a year and a day: and (if he can find missings) thall then be delivered; but if any

he hall abjure the Realm.

VI. A Deer of the Realm, being tent in by the King, in coming and returning makill a Deer of two in the forest through which he passeth: howbeit, it must not known existing, but by the view of the fost, if present; but if absent, by causing one to blow a Gorn for him, less he seem to sealth Deer.

VII. No Thimage of Toll shall be taken in Fozests, but by a Fozester in see, the farms his Bailiwick, and onely of such as buy their Bushes, Timber, Bark, of Toals, to sell it again, viz. 2 d. to a Cart, and id so an Booke, to be taken half-yearly; and to shall onely be taken where it hath used to be

he taken, and not elsewhere: Reither shall amp Chimage be taken of such as carry burthens of Bushes, Bark of Coal, albeit they sell it, unless they take them out of the Kings Demesne Alwas. Thus far Charta Foresta.

A forester, Parker, a Marrener shall not be questioned for killing a Crespasser, who (after the peace cryed to him) will not yield himself, to it be not done out of some o-

ther former malice. Stat. 21 Ed. 1.

Mo Dinister of the Forest shall be put upon any Asize, Jury, or Inquest to be taken

without the Freet. Ordin. Forestæ.

Stat. 1 Ed. 3. cap. 8. Mone thall be taken or Imprisoned for Aert or Aerison, unless he be taken with the manner, or else indicted according to the form of the Stat. 34. Ed. 1. And then the Charden of the Forest thall take him to Dainprise, until the Erre of the Forest, without taking any thing for his deliberance. And if the Marden will not so do, he thall have a Alrit out of the Chancery of Old ordained for persons indicted to be bailed till the Erre.

Stat. 1 Ed. 3. cap. 2. Any man having Mod within the Fozest, may take boyle-boxt and bay-boxt in his faid Mod, without being Attached for the same by the Ministers of the Fozest, so that it be done by the view of the

Fozesters.

Stat. 7.R. 2. cap. 4. No Officer of the Forest shall take of imprison any without due Indiament, of permain ourse (with his hand at the work) that is, being taken with the manner, of trespassing in the Forest northall constrain any to make Obligation of Ran-

Ransome against his will, and the anily the Fozest, in pain to pay the party green double damages, and to be ransomed at a Kings will.

of foretts, and of the Deers, limits an

-113

75 37

S S

000000

Ø

O O O BELLOID

hounds thereof: See the Statute at large.

17 Car. cap. 16. No place within England wales, where no Justice Seat, Swainmon, Court, or Attachment hath been made, a Aindolers cholen, or Regard made with 20 years, hall be accounted forest.

11. Tenants and Owners of all excluse Land, hall entop their common and other

profits.

Stat. 20. Car. 2. cap. 3. Ten Thousand Insoft waste Lands in the Fozest of Dean shall enclosed, and kept in severalty, for the ground and preservation of Timber; and be under the regard and Sovernment of Ford-Law.

FINIS.

TABLE UNTING

Being the First PART.

51	Page.
Neroduction	on the Harrison and the second of the second
Carried Commence of the Commen	and a version of the second second second
Terms of Art	What fairs a concepted in it
Some general names of Hound	
Terms relating to Forefts, &c.	
Of the Hound Rache and Slu	
Of the Blood-hound	03 painal - 29
Of the Gaze-hound	001 1001 100 1.11 33
Of the Grey-hound	201 Jan 134 34
Of the Harrier and Terrier	111 min 1 min 36
Of the Hound Levyner or Ly	
Of abe Tumbler	oll w million ibid.
Of the Spaniel	especification - 39
Of the White Hound	077 40
Of Fallow-Hounds	ibid.
Of the Dun-hound	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1
The marks of a good Hound	
	Line and Whiles 5
The election of a Dog and Bitch	b for good W helps 43
How to enter young Hounds at	
Of Courfing with Grey-hound	
The Laws of the Leash or Com	fing 49
The Stiles of Hunting differen	t from the English, both An-
; sique and Forrain	52
M	Of

The TABLE for Hunting.

Of Hart-Hunting	
The Nature of a Hart	A1 23
Of the Rut of Harts	7
Of the time of Hart's Mewing	6
Of the Coats and Colours of Har	ts, and their diversities 6
How to know an old Hart by th	e Slot, Entries, &cc. 6
The names and diversities of Han	ts-beads according to Hun
ters Terms	6
How to feek a Hart in his baum	for feeling place actord
to the seasons of the year	1
In what manner the Hunt sm.	an Shall go drawing in h
Springs	71
Directions for Harbouring a Sta	
How to find a Hart loft the nigh	
How to find a Hart in bigh W	oods 7
How to unbarbour a Hart and	cast off the Hounds
What subtilties are used in hun	ting a Haft at force
How to kill a Hart at Bay	me fe cent univer el tron
Directions at the death of a Buch	LO MAL OF DESCRIPTION
Back-Hunting 81bano labele	Peoc Phinting
Rain-Deer-Hunting 86	Hard Hunting
Of Parks and Warrens 100	
Of the Ferret 104	Of Fon Hunting 110
Of Badger-Hunting 111 Of the Squirrel	Of Otter-Hunting 11
Of the Martern or Wild-Cat	Tribe Tumbler
A short Account of Beasts not H	June I'm Edward sals W
A of the Wolf	Male White Hound
Of Wild-goat-Hunting	WFallow-Hounds .
McWild-hoor, Hunting	bannal and ale 30
Of Bear-Hunting In Of the Bear and white	The mark of a 700 d Pour
Of the Beavered W bonn wir dotie	De elections of a Doc and E
Of the Elk SonsHadt in	tow to enter vount Elect.
Of the Elk Sons Hade and Diseases and Cures of Hounds	Mcourfue with Grey no
Diseases and Cures of Spaniels	In or of the Leafh or C
Penal Laws relating to Aunters	and Huming will ref
Renal Laws concerning Forests a	nd Chaces &c. 15
9	The
	1

The Table for HAWKING: Being the Second PART.

	, ,	
He Introduction Page I	Terms of Ar	4 4
Of the Haggard-Faulcon	elarado Da elakar	11
How to know the Nature and Diff		awks,
and what must be observed from	thence	17
Of the Faulcon	MARIE CLASSIFICA	20
Of the Manning, Luring, Flights,	and Mewing of a	Faul-
con, with other things belonging		23
Of bathing a Faulcon lately reclai	med; bon to make	ce ber,
and to hate the Check	1	
How to enseam a Faulcon with	per Canings and	28
General Instructions for an Ohrager	or Faulconer	32
How to bood a Hawk	Ministra Land	36
How to make your Hawk know you	r Voice and her own	feed-
ing	managed as al	37
How to make your Hawk bold and		ibid.
How to make a Hawk know the Lu	re ·	38
Hope to make a Hawk flying	and the state of the state of	ibid.
A Flight for a Haggard	N 9423 AN N 3 (N 3 N) N 1 1	40
How to make a Soar-Faulcon, or H	laggard kill at the	very
first	Same and the	41
Remedy for a Hawks taking stand i		42
How to belp a Hawk froward a	and coy through pri	de of
greafe	drei ma Line	ibid.
Hop to make a Hawk hold in ber	bead and not mind	Check
pidi e senson i senson i	10 170	43
How to continue and keep a Hawk	in ber bigh flying	ibid.
A flight for the Hern		45
Of the Haggard-faulcon; why for	called ber good	hape
and properties. &c.	and an artist	47
The state of the s	f the Gerfaulcon	ibid
Of the Saker	Salar Page Land De	\$32
Ma		OF.

The TABLE for HAWKING.

2110 2110 111
Of the Lanner, Lanneret, and Tunifian 34
Of the Merlin
Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, &c. And whichis
the best way of Mewing
Of the Hobby 61 Of the Goshawk 62
Hom to make the Soar or Haggard-Golhawk 64
How to make a Golhawk fly to the Partridge 65
How to belp a Golhawk that turneth Tail to Tail, andgi-
vetb over ber Gamé 66
Hw to make a Goshawk fly quickly 67
Hom to fly a Golhawk to the River 68
An excellent way to preserve a Goshawk in the time of be
flying, especially in bot meather 69
How to fly the Wild-goole or Crane with the Golhawk
ibid
How to Mem a Goshawk, and draw ber out of the Men,
and make ber flying 70
Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Faulconer in
keeping and reclaiming a Goshawk 71
Of the Sparrow-hawk 73
Haw to make a Sparrow-hawk, whether Eyeff, Branche,
Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard 74
How to Mew Sparrow-hawks 78
The duty of a Faulconer, with necessary Rules and Obser-
vations for him to follow 80
Of Difeases and dangerous accidents incident to Hawks, and
their feveral Cures 81
Of Callings and Mewtings , either good or bad according
to their several complexions and smells. 81
Of the Cataract 85 Of the Pantas or Afthma 86
Of Worms 87 Of the Filanders ibid.
Another approved medicine for Filanders or Worms in
Hawks
Of Hawks Lice Ibid
A Safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks 89
How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in bealth
good plight, and liking ibid.

The TABLE for HAWKING.

	Air
Of the Formica	ibid.
Of the Fromnce 91 Of the Pip	ibid.
How to remedy that Hawk which endeweth not,	nor putteth
over as the should do	92
How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that bath la	f appetite,
without bringing ber low	93
How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor	ibid.
How to remedy a Hawk that is flothful and aver	Se to flying
	94
Of swoln feet in a Hawk	ibid.
How to fcour Hawks before you cast them into the	Mem 95
Penal Laws relating to Hawks and Hawking	97

The Table for FOWLING: Being the Third PART.

TX7 Hat Fowling is, with the nature and diverfity	of all
	e 101
Of the haunts of Fowl	103
The readiest way to take great Fowl with Nets	104
How to take small Water-fowl with Nets	105
How to take small Birds with Bird-lime	107
How to take great Fowl with Lime-twigs.	109
Of the great and leffer Springs	111
Of the Fowling-piece and Stalking-horse	113
How to take all manner of Land-fowl by day and night	# 118
Of Bat-foroling	TOT
Of the Day-net, and bow to take Birds therewith	ibid.
Of the Day-net, and how to take Birds therewith Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bushes	mith
Lime-twigs	123
How to make the best fort of Bird-lime, and bow to	
177	126
The best and most experienced way of making Water	-bird-
lime	127
In what menner Snipes may be taken with Bird-lime	1128
Nick and and the state of the s	The
	4.4

THE TABLE FOR FOWERED.

How to take Pidgeons with Lime-twige how to take Magpies, Crows, and Gleads with Lin	20 id.
How to take Rooks when they pull up the Corn by the R	- 200
Hom to take Birds with Baits, either Land or Water-fo	31 ml
A most excellent and approved way how to take the He	-rn
How to take Phealants several ways The fashion of Phealant-Nets	35
The seasons for the using of Nets or Limer	38 40 41
Of taking Partidges with Nets and miled 1	43
How to dribe Parteidges at die and and attach I	45
How to take Rails, Quails, Morepots, & a. Molet II.	47
	48
How to take, preferrer, and keep all madner of Singing-bil	dis
Ofithe Nightingale 1341. How to make it Net trup	to
Of the Canary-bird 161 Of the Black-bird of the Rebin rad bleft in	63
Of the Wireh wird. Al Of the Wood-hills of the Skie-lark; the feveral ways to take them, and hol	83
taken; bow to order i bem a the lad sar gament and	72
Of the Child-finish of Christians-foots to white in N	
Of the Fitherk wife notes of an Ofthe Charlestonics	15 77 id.
	OF

The TABLE DO FISHING: Of the Bull-finch 179 Of the Green-finch wibid Of the Hedge-Sparrow of the Stickleback An Abstract of fuch Penal Laws as concern Formling of 1 83 Of the Teach Of the Lorcoch The Table for Fish HINGS For ment Of fernations and Directions for Argling He Introduction di Bincomiune, on somewhat in praise of Fiftermen and Fishing Fish-ponds to improve, and the fish therein contained Casps to make them group to an error and in subject General Objerumions to be underflood in the Art of Angling Aprological Liedians for Angling in teneral Wort providing it to be made for Angling-tools. Line after the best mayner, bow to make Of the Hook Plate, and abor things worth the obtained the Hook Plate, and abor things worth the obtained the Hook Plate, and abor things worth the obtained the Hook Plate, and abort things worth the obtained the Hook Plate, and abort things worth the obtained the Hook Plate and abort things worth the obtained the Hook Plate and abort things worth the obtained the Hook Plate and the Hook Plat Flies Natural and Artificials, and how to we town bat times are feafonable, and upbat sufeasonable to and of the Bathol 12/70 han Die and of proper to Train William Of the Bleak Of the Built Head W Miller's Thurs bride & free ade 30 Of the Char a priday 34 Of the Chevin 33. Of the Chull, Cheven, Chavender Of the Carp 36 Of Dace or Dare Of the Flounder Of the Gudgeon 43 Of the Guiniard Of the Loach 44 Of the Minnow Of the Pope or Ruff ibid. Of the Pike Of the Pearch 50 . Of the Rud 52 Of

The TABLE for FIRMING!

Of the Roach	to bill-finch 179
Of the Stickleback	Alle Hedge-Sparrow Andsigad of Josh Coel Long
Of the Salmon	avia.
Of the Tench	57
Of the Torcoth Of the Trout	and officer by
Of the Umber or Grayling	
Fiftes Haunt, &c.	Section the Fourthan
	and Directions for Angling 67
An Angling Song	The Introduction
An Abstrate of fuch Penal	
7	and Thing
	the same was a square at small state.
The Lable tow the	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN
	HUNTING-HORSE,
Being an Appen	dix to the First Part,
Being an Appen	dix to the First Part, and the
Being an Appen	dix to the First Part. and the general, sheir examples on and the fibe Art of Recoins Page 1
Being an Appen F Hunting-Herler in necessity and benefit of Of Breeding , the choice of	general, their examination, and the first of Kerping Page 3 Stallings, and Marcs, with
Being an Appen F Hunting-Heries in necessity and benefit of Of Breeding , the choice of some general Remarks of	general, their examination, and the first of Kerping. Page 3 Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours
Being an Appen F Hunting-Horles in necessity and benefit of Of Breeding; the choice of some general Remarks of Of the Age a Hunter broad time: Of the Stable.	general, sheir examence, and the she Art of Resping Page 1 a Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours do be of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfer and Groom, and of the Horfer
Being an Appen F Hunting-Horles in necessity and benefit of Of Breeding; the choice of some general Remarks of Of the Age a Hunter broad time: Of the Stable.	general, sheir examence, and the she Art of Resping Page 1 a Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours do be of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfer and Groom, and of the Horfer
Being an Appen of Hunting-Hories in necessity and benefit of of Breeding; the choice of some general Remarks of the Age a Hunter broad ting: Of the Stable first taking up from cred.	general, sheir examens, and the she Art of Reeping. Page s' Stallion, and Mares, spike Marks and Colours dbe of, before he be put to Himand Groom, and of the Horfus, in order to his further dieting
Being an Appen of Hunting-Hories in necessity and benefit of of Breeding is the choice of some general Remarks of the Age a Hunter from ting: Of the Stable first taking up from Green to order the Hunter	general, sheir exacteur, and she fee Art of Kerping Page Stallion, and Mares, with Mark's and Colours de of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfu, in order to his further dicing for the first Fortught
Being an Appen of Hunting-Hories in necessity and benefit of of Breeding is the choice of some general Remarks of the Age a Hunter from ting: Of the Stable first taking up from Green to order the Hunter	general, sheir exacteur, and she fee Art of Kerping Page Stallion, and Mares, with Mark's and Colours de of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfu, in order to his further dicing for the first Fortught
Being an Appen F Hunting-Hories in necessity and benefit of Of Breeding , the choice of some general Remarks of Of the Age a Hunter shoul ting: Of the Stabla first taking up from Grad first taking up from Grad of the second Formights D and what Challes are mu	general, sheir examiner, and she she Art of Kerping Page is Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours doe of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfu in order to his further dicting for the first Fortught 34 piet, and of his first Huming, off proper to Train burn.
Being an Appen of Hunting-Horics in necessity and beserve of forme general Remarks of the Age a Hunter from ting: Of the Stabla first taking up from Gred. How to order the Hunter of the fecond Fortnights Dand what Chafer are much the Hunter of the Hunter of the fecond Fortnights Dand what Chafer are much the Hunter of the Hunter the Stable thoughts the Horses third Fortnights of the Hunter than the Hunter of the Hunter than	general, sheir examiner, and she she Art of Kerping Page is Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours doe of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfu in order to his further dicting for the first Fortught 34 piet, and of his first Huming, off proper to Train burn.
Being an Appen of Hunting-Hories in necessity and benefit of of Breeding, the choice of some general Remarks of the Age a Hunter from ting: Of the Stable first taking in from Grad first taking in from Grad of the second Formights. Deand what Chases are made to the Hunter of the Hunter that the Hunter of the Hunter that the Hunter of th	general, sheir examiner, and she she Art of Kerping Page is Stallion, and Mares, with Marks and Colours doe of, before he be put to Humand Groom, and of the Horfu in order to his further dicting for the first Fortught 34 piet, and of his first Huming, off proper to Train burn.

tages

of the ordering the Hunter for a Match or Plate Of the means to judge of your Horses state of Body, and caring all Casualties that may bappen after Matching Of Riding a Hunting-Match, or Heats for a Plate, and advantages belonging to each

THE

GENTLEMAN's Recreation:

BEINGA

TREATISE

HAWKING

AND

Faulconry.

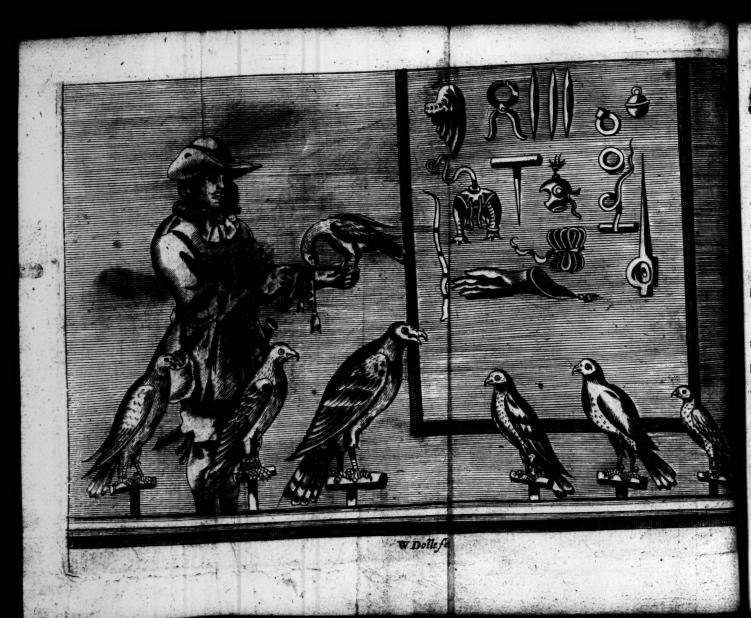
Fitted for the Delight and Pleasure of all Noblemen and Gentlemen.

Collected from Ancient and Modern Authors, and Rectified by the Experience of the most Skulful Artists of these Times.

With an Abstract of such Statute-Laws as concern this Recreation.

The Second Part.

London: Printed by J. C. and F. C. for N. C.



eleature be ftopt, it must focedily die, and pay the Deleathar's due to Nature.

PARTE BERIEFE PROPERTY

latter with their harmonious Voices.

The number of Heavin's Giry Quire is so great, I cannot here well enumerate them, yet I n'ust not pic by the springle Musicians of the Air, which wallble outs' ath arious total are will be surfaced as the size of the min

whenever to speak of sew, and fight of the Lock ; Whou

Me incluse or create her felt and hearers, the quits the Farch, and lings, as the proceeds, rand having made an end of her her her to be to be a line of the her her her her again unto the dull Earth, which thank the mult deteend again unto the dull Earth, which

He Element wherein the Faulconer uleth to trade, is the Air and though he dealeth fometimes in the Water, yet he prefers the Air before it, that yielding him most Reese-

ation; for it is unable to flop the high foating of his generous Faulcon; in it the flies to such a height, that, being loft to the light of Mortals, the feems to converte with Heaven alone; and, like Icarus, endangers her Wings to be feoreth by the Sun-beams; and yet is fearles, cutting the fluid Air with her nimble Pinions, making her High-way over the fleepest Mountains and deepest Rivers, and in her lofts careet looks down with a feeming contempt on the greatest Glories we most estimate; and yet such is her Loyalty and Obedience to her Master, that a word from his mouth shall make her shoop and condesend.

This Element of Air is not onely to be praifed for the Recreation it affords the Faulconers, but for its Ulfetulness to all, no creature being in a condition to live without it: for if the inspiring or expiring Organ of any

[2 2]

erea-

The Introduction.

creature be stopt, it must speedily die, and pay the Debrothat's due to Nature.

wing the heart significance of the state of

The number of Heaven's airy Quire is so great, I cannot here well enumerate them; yet I must not pass by these nimble Musicians of the Air, which warble forth such carious Notes as puzzle Art to imitate.

I mean to speak of sew, and first of the Lark: When she means to recreate her self and hearers, the quits the Earth, and sings as she ascends; and having made an end of her heavenly Ditty and section to swound to think she must descend again unto the dull Earth, which she would scorn to tread but for necessity.

Again, observe how the Black bird and the Thurst contend who thall with their uninitable Voices bid the best welcome to the fragrant Spring.

Not doth the Nightingale come short in breathing out her loud Musick through the small Organ of her Throat. How have I off admired in a still night the clearness of her Airs, the sweetness of her Descants, her natural Ritings and Fallings, ther Doublings and Redoublings!

Much more might be faid of these, which I stall wave, being a digression from my purpose, which is to treat of another Bird of Pleasure, viz. the Hawk,

Ere note, that the Hawk is diffinguished into two kindes; the Long-winged, and Shore-winged Hawk.

e prairing Orego of any

or

gu

Of the first kind there are these, which are here a mongst us most in use :

The Gerfanleon and Jerkin,
Faulcon and Ilercel kendle, 11 10 2011 21

Lanner and Lanneret,
Bockerel and Bockeret,
Saker and Socknet,
Merlin and Jack-medlin,
Hobby and Jack
The Stelletto of Spain,
The bloud-red Rook of Turkik, 2 10 22

Of the Short-winged Howks there are thefe:

The Roped year an Engruery.

The Eagle and Iron, and the said of the said of the Cophank and Tiercel, the Sparrow-bank and Muke, Two forts of the French Pie.

Of inferiour fort there are thefe:

The Stanyel or Ring-tail,
The Raven and Buzzard,
The Forked Kite and bold Buzzard,
The Hen-driver, &c.

It is not to be expected that we should treat of all these and many others bearing different Names, but onely such which are most in use, of which I shall regularly treat concerning their Eyries, Mewings, Castings, Renovation of Feathers, &c. with their Reclaiming, Dieting, Diseases, Cures, and Method of Practice.

[a 3]

Terms

.VEV.

Plant they are theft

The Gerfanleon and Ferlon,

Terms of Art in Paulconry, as they were used by Ancient Faulconers, and are now by Modern Practitioners, with their Explanations.

The Age of a Hotel? to shall be build off

The fourth year, a Hank of she first Coat.

Arms, are the Legs from the Thigh to the Foot.

Bate, is when the Hamk fluttereth with her Wings et ther from Pearch to Fift, as it were striving to get away.

Bathing, is when the Hamk washeth her felf at home or

Beak, is the upper part of the Bill that is crooked.

Beam Feathers, are the long Feathers of the Hame Wings.

Beauty of Quails, are a brood of young Quails.

Bennts, are the Leathers with Bells buttoned about the

Binding, is tyring, or when a Hawk feizeth.

Bowet, is when a young Hank draws any thing out of her Nest, and covers to clamber on the bowes.

Bowling, is when the Hawk drinks often, and yet continually thirlicth for more.

Branch or Stand, is to make the Hawk leap from Tree to Tree till the Dog springs the Partridge.

Braz-

Brancher, is a young Hank newly taken out of the

Cadge, is that circular piece of Wood on which Hawks are carried when they are exposed to fale.

Canceler, is when a high-flown Hawk in her stooping turneth two or three times upon the wing, to recover her self before the seizeth.

Carry, is flying away with the Quarry.

Cast your Hamk to the Pearch, is to put your Hamk on the Pearch.

Casting, is when you give your Howk any thing to cleanse and purge her Gorge.

Carvift; a Hawk may be so called at the beginning of the year, and signifies as much as to carry on the Fift.

Catarast, a Discale in Hawks so called. Canterizing-Irons, are Irons to sear with.

Cawking-time, is Treading-time,

Ciabbing, is when Hames, standing too near, fight with one another.

Creance, is a fine small long Line of strong and evenwound Pack-thread which is fastned to the Hamk's Lease or Leash when she is first Lured.

Check, that is when the Hamk for lakes her proper Game to fly at Pies, Crows, or the like, croffing her in her flight.

Clap, is the nether part of the Hamk's Beak.

Coping-Irons, are used in coping or paring the Hamks Beak, Pounces, or Talons, when over-grown.

Cowring, is when young Harris quiver and shake their Wings, in testimony of obedience towards the old ones.

Criners, are the small black Feathers like Hairs about the Sere.

Disclosed, is when the young just peep through the shell.

[a 4]

Drop-

4 de to 100 'Anulconers Cerms.

Dropping, is when the Hawk muteth directly downward in feveral drops, not yerking it freight for-

Ender, is when the Herry digesteth her meat, that he not onely dischargeth her Gorge thereof, but like-wise cleanseth her Pannel.

Enseame, is the purging of a Hawk of her glut and

Enter a Hawk, is when the first begins to kill.

Eyeff, is a young Hawk newly taken out of the Neth

Eyrie, is that place where Hawks build, and hatch their young.

Feaking, is when the Hamk wipeth her Beak after feeding.

Pilanders, a fort of little red Worms that usually breed in Hawks.

Flags, Feathers next the principal Feathers in the Hamk's Wing.

Fly on bead, is missing her Quarry, and betaking her felf to the next Check, as Crows, &c.

Formale, is the Female-Hank.

Formiça, a Disease in Hawks so called.

Frounce, is a Disease common in the Mouth or Throat of a Hawk.

Gleam, after a Hawk hath cast, the Gleamith, or throweth up filth from her Gorge.

Glut, is the flimy substance that lies in the Hawks Pan-

Gorge, is called in other Fowl the Cram or Crop. Gurgiting, is when the is stuft and sufficiented.

Hack is the place where the Hank's Meat is laid.

Hink

faulconers Cerms.

Hawk keeps her mark, is when the wait at the place where the lays in Partridge, or the like, until it be see trived.

Hern at feidge, is when you find a Hern standing by the water-side watching for Prey, or the like.

Fack, is the Male Hawk.

17-

h

Jeffer, are those flaort straps of Leather which are fastned to the Hawks Legs, and so to the Lease or Leash by Varvails, and such-like.

Imp, is to infert a Feather into the Wing of a Hawk in the place of one that is broken.

Inke, is the Neck from the Head to the Body of any

Bird which the Hank doth prey upon.

Intermewing, is from the first exchange of the Hawker Coat, till the turn white: and this is so called from the first Mewing.

Jouketh, is when the fleepeth.

Luce, that is when a young Hawk is called by the Faulconer thereunto, and is made of Feathers and Leather not much unlike a Fowl, which he casteth up into the Air.

Leafe or Leaft, is a small long thong of Leather by which the Faulconer holdeth his Hawk fast, folding it many times about his Finger.

Lean, is when the Hank holds in to you.

A Make-Hawk, is an old Staunch-Hawk which used to fly, will easily instruct a young Hawk.

Managing a Harok, is to use her with Art and Skill. Make out, is when the Harok goes forth at Check.

Mailes, are the Breatt-feathers.

Manning, is making a Hawk to endure company.

Mantleth, is when the Hamk stretcheth one of her Wings after her Legs, and so the other.

Men,

Faulconers Cerms.

Men, is the place where you let down your Hank during the time the raileth her Feathers.

Mining, is the Excrements or Dung of a Hank, and for it is of a Hern.

Mines, are a fort of Vermin that trouble the Head and Nares of a Hawk.

Nover, are the little holes in a Hank's Beak, and

Pearch, is the Hank's resting-place when the is offthe Faulconers Fift.

Pels, is the dead body of any Fowl the Hawk bath killed.

Pill or Pelf, is what the Hamk hath left of her prey after the is relieved.

Plume, is the general mixture of Feathers and Colons by which the Constitution of a Hamk is known.

Plumage, are small Feathers given the Hawk to make her cast.

Planing, is after the Hawk hath seized her Prey, and diffmantles it of the Feathers.

Pannet, is the Pipe next the Fundament of a Humh, where the digesteth her meat from her body.

Pantas, a Disease in Hawks so called.

Pendant-Feathers, those Feathers behind the Thigh of a

Petty-fingles, arethe Toes of the Hamk.

Pounces, are the Claws of the Hink.

Principal-Feathers, are the two longest Feathers in the Hamk's Wings.

Pruneth, is when the Hank picketh her felf.

Put over, is when a Hank removeth her Meat from the Gorge into her Bowels, by travering with her Body, but chiefly with her Neck.

Querry, is the Fowl which the Hank flies at dead on Raifed

faulconers Cerms. Railed in fielb, is when a Hawk grows fat. Rake, is when the Hank flies out too far from the Swirel, is that Fowl. Ramage, is when a Hank is wild, and difficult to be reclaimed. Rangle, is when we give a Hawk Gravel to bring her to her Stomach. Retrive, is when Partridges, having been sprung, are to find again. Rouze, is when a Hawk lifteth her felf up and thaketh her felf. Ruff, is when the Hamk hits the Prey, and yet not truffes it. Rufter-bood, is a plain and eatie Leather-hood, being large, wide, and open behind, and is to be worn by a Hank when you first draw her. Reclaim, is to make a Hamk tame, gentle, and familiar. Sails, are the Wings of a Hamk. Sear or Sere, is the yellow between the Beak and Eyes of the Hawk. Seeling, is when a Hawk first taken is so blinded with a Thread run through the Eye-lids, that the fees not, or very little, the better to make her endure the Hood Seizing, is when a Hawk gripes her Prey, or any thing elle, fast within her Foot.

dfo

ins

her. Sliming, is when a Hawk muteth without dropping. Sniting, is when a Hawk as it were Ineczeth." Soar-hank, that is from the first taking her from the Eyries till she hath Mewed her Feathers.

Setting down, is when the Hawk is put into the Mew. Slice, is when a Hawk muteth a great distance from

Spring, is when any Partridge or Pheasant rife. Stooping, is when the Hawk is aloft upon her Wing, and

then descends to strike her Prey.

Samuel, is that which keepeth a Hawk from twilling.

Tiercel or Taffel, is the Male-Hawk.

Tiring, is when you give your Hank a Leg or Pinion of a Pullet, Pidgeon, &c. to pluck at.

Train, is the Tail of the Hank.

Traffing, is when the raifeth any Fowl aloft, and fearing with it, at length descendeth with it to the ground.

Varvels, little Rings of Silver at the end of the Jeffes, whereon the owners of the Hamk have their Names ingrayen.

Unreclaimed, is when a Hank is wild.

Unseeling, is when you take away a Thread that runs through the Hawks Eye-lids, and hinders her light.

Unfirike the bood, is to draw the Strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.

Unfumm'd, is when the Feathers of a Hawk are not fully grown.

Urines, are Nets to catch Hawks withal.

Warbling, is after a Hawk hath mantled her self she crosses her Wings together over her Back.

Weathering, is when you air your Hank in Frost, Sun, or by the Fire-fide,

When, is the rifing and fluttering of Partridge or Phea-

Sarrebooks three is already first taking her from the

then a stands to banks her Prev.

Sort as the ment of the state of Pheafant rife.

• The ment the Hard is slatt upon her Wang and

The Names and Natures of Hawks in general stand first of the Haggard-Faulcon.

Sour-fauleon) the will prey upon Birds which are too

Begin with the Haggard Fauleby, fince it is a Hawk which most men now-adays covet, to fit and prespare for their delight and pleasure; although fleterofore I hear less spoken of her praise by the Americas than she deserves.

Some of old have preferred the Faules, gratte for mettle and courage, being of a loving diffooition, itrong and daring, and hardy in all featons; and by a mere militake have undervalued the Haggard-faulesn, condemning her as being a Bird too tender to endure rought and boilterous weather.

Experience confutes this Opinion, the being known to be able to endure as much the extremity of weather, or more than the Tiercel, Faillon-gentle, or most other Hawks whatsoever; and therefore the shall first take place in this manner.

The Haggard-faulcon, wild, and unreclaimed, takes a large liberty to her felt for her abode, either by Sea or Land; and is so absolute in her power, that where-ever she comes, all slying Fowl stoop under her subjection. Nay, the Tiercel-gentle, although her natural companion, dares not sit by her or come near her residence but in cawking-time, and that is in the Spring; and then for procreation sake, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his head at his approach, and by calling and cowring with his Wings, as the young ones do, in testimony how fearful he is of incurring her displeasures. Whilst she is very young (and so will a Reflence-

Same sis when the Hank is in all her Plutnes.
Swivel, is that which keepeth a Hank from twiking,

Tiercel or Taffel, is the Male-Hawk.

Tiring, is when you give your Hank a Leg or Pinion of a Pullet, Pidgeon, e.e. to pluck at.

Train, is the Tail of the Hawk.

Traffing, is when the raileth any Fowl aloft, and foaring with it, at length descendeth with it to the ground.

Varvels, little Rings of Silver at the end of the Jesses, whereon the owners of the Hamk have their Names ingrayers.

Voreclaimed, is when a Hank is wild.

Unfeeling, is when you take away a Thread that runs through the Hawks Eye-lids, and hinders her fight.

Unfirike the bood, is to draw the Strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.

Unfumm'd, is when the Feathers of a Hawk are not fully grown.

Vrines, are Nets to catch Hawks withal.

Warhling, is after a Hawk hath mantled her felf the croffes her Wings together over her Back.

Weathering, is when you air your Hank in Frost, Sun, or by the Fire-fide.

When, is the riling and fluttering of Partridge or Pheafant,

Sambered; that is them the life calting her from the

Saving is when a Mariga it were increedle

by Egiles of the hath Moved box Feathers."

then coffeends to thank her Frey.

Solve the whoth any Parallel or Phealant rife.

The Man the Hard is alone promine Wing and

Soar-faction) the will prey upon birds which are too beg to encounter withal; and this the deep for want of understanding; and the continues this refunctional.

The Names and Natures of Hawks in goneral stand first of the Haggard-Faulcon, and be

of

Begin with the Haggard Fauler, fince it is a Hawk which most men now a days covet, to fit and prespare for their delight and pleasure; although fleterofore I hear less spoken of her praise by the Americas than the deserves.

Some of old have preferred the Failest sprile for mettle and courage, being of a loving diffoointion, ittoing and daring, and hardy in all featons; and by a mere miltake have undervalued the Haggard-failest, condemning her as being a Bird too tender to endure rough and boilterous weather.

Experience confines this Opinion, the being known to be able to endure as much the extremity of weather, or more than the Tiercel, Failton-gentle, or most other Hawks whatsoever; and therefore the shall first take place in this manner.

The Haggard-faulcon, wild, and unreclaimed, takes a large liberty to her self for her abode, either by Sea or Land; and is so absolute in her power, that where-ever she comes, all slying Fowl stoop under her subjection. Nay, the Tiercel-gentle, although her natural companion, dares not sit by her or come near her residence but in cawking-time, and that is in the Spring; and then for procreation sake, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his head at his approach, and by calling and cowring with his Wings, as the young ones do, in testimony how searful he is of incurring her displeasures.

Whill the is very young (and fo will a Refferer-

Sour-fauleon) the will prey upon Birds which are too big to encounter withal; and this the doth for want of understanding: and she continues this rashness and folly, till experience and a found beating have reclaims

The Haggard faulcon will prey on any other Fowl the can meet with advantageously, especially tame Pidgeons, or such as belong to a Dove-house; for these

This Hawk is an incellant Pains-taker; no weather discourageth her from her Game, but that onely wherein po Fowl can well fir abroad to feek for fuffenance; otherwise the is continually working, either in the Air or ellewhere, unless the thoop and mile of her Prey, and then the will reft a little, to take breath and renew her courage. Nay, if the hath laboured in boifterous and tempestuous weather three or four days together, the will be to far from being the worle for it, that the will appear much better, and more lively. And therefor it is a vulgar errour, for men not to fly their Hawks but after three or four days relt, fome a week or fort, night. For old Staunch-hawks, I judge a little rest will do no harm; but for the young, till the is blouded give her but little; and if you can fly her every day, you will find it fo much the better.

When the Faulcon unreclaimed hath seized her Prey and broke her Neck, (in artificial terms, her Ink) the then falls on the Crop, and feeds first on what is there contained, afterwards on other parts; and having filled her Gorge, the will fly to some solitary place which is near water, or what liketh her best, and there the will fit all day: upon the approach of night the takes Wing, and flies to some convenient, place the hath afore purposed, to pearch therein till the

morning.

Thus much of her as the is wild and unreclaimed.

In t

the

critz

-

hoo 120

ÇALI

the

you Ho

Cr

que

tin

VO.

fre

Pe

to

th

21

d

e

.

In the next place it will be requilite to inform you with the manner of mediaining of a Haggard fraction, and her

entry to the Lure, or purchased one of them aft, her down, and let her reft quietly the hert night in a Kutter-

The next day take her up rainly on your Fill, and carry her up and down that whole day; uling a Feather to firoke her withal infeat of your hand. When you find her not impatient of being toucht, take her Hood off fpeedily, and put it on again as speedily, observing thus to do till file is willing to feed; then frequently offer her food, but let her have but a little at a time is never pulling her Hood off or on but you mult gain her love with a bit or two, uling your voice up to her when you are taking off her Hood, and all the while she is feeding, and no longer; that by that means, after the is reclaimed, the may know by your voice the shall be fed.

Having thus done, teach her to come to your Fift from the Pearch by doing thus: Let her stand on a Pearch about breast-high; if lower, kneel, for this low posture will des affright than any other; after this unfirike her Hood, and lure her, using your voice and have a special care that you affright her not or diffafte her, and fo cause her to bate from you. But you must, before you unstrike her flood, encourage her with a bit of two, which will make her the more eager to come to you: For it is her Stomach that rules her, and is the Bridle that keeps her in Subjection. pricking her forward to perform her duty: wherefore if you keep not her Appetite sharp and truly edged, instead of Submission, you will find Disobedience. When you find the will willingly feed from and come to your hand, you may then let her fit bare-fac'd, now and then diverting her starting about by giving her a

bit or two, to direct her lace towards your after the

When you find flie will come readily to the In gamilht with mest in the Greance 3" fearing the from this way of Luring, fix a live Plageon to the Line and lure her therewith. When the hath Rilled the P geon and eaten the Head, take her up gently with bit of meat, and put on her Hood , then untrikely Hood and lure her to the Pele, doing thus twice thrice, and no more in it you do it oftners the will come in time very loth to part with the Pelt and this means you will provoke her to charage This great fault, and more incident to and world in Flet Hawks than fuch as are fitted for the River 19tho ylange

But be fure you live her nor far all her Stomach perfect ; for otherwife the may different formertitle the way which the hath a greater effects for and for foff for that time which will be very detriment her (although you should happen to recover and h

claim her afterwards.

Here observe; in the time of her making (while the is on the ground either pluming or feeding) to get not to walk round her, uling your voice, and givin her many bits with your hand; continuing to to till you have won her to a more than ordinary familie od have a special care that yo

rity.

But above all, mark this; foring her forme from Doves between the Man and the Line and let them b given in a long Creance, that the that kill them not you, in such manner that the may trul them over you head: by this means the will not be afraid when you come to her from afar off; the rieglect whereof will make her timorous: thence will proceed her dragging and carrying from you; nay fornetimes the will leave her Prey, and totally forfake you?" all hat may mad!

There are forme Hawks will not be taken up with

out striking or rapping in the Creance, which must be infallibly the loss of such a Hawk without such a device: this is a great fault in the Hawk, and argueth great negligence in the Faulconer, in suffering, and not remedying that ill property in her first making.

this is the state of the state

ave

Rules for ordering a Haggard-faulcon in the Luring: with the Causes and Remedies of Carrying, and other ill qualities.

Having thus fat acquainted your Hawk with the Lure, take her out some convenient Evening, and be no farther from her than the can fee and hear you; then hold in your Lute, and fuffer her to fly about you, holding het as near you as you can with your Voice and Lure, teaching her to do her bufiness, and work it on your head, and then cast up a live Dove: Which some disapprove of, because (say they) the lightness of the Dove inclines the Hawk to that ill quality of Carrying; but I rather impute that fault to the ignorance, or negligence and harfhrefs of the Faulconer, who hath been either unskilful, remifs, or hath not used that gentleness which is requisite in Reclaiming a Hawk in her first Making: fo that instead of gaining her love by fair Allurements, he hath converted it into Hatred, Abhotrency, and Difdainful Coynels:

Another cause of this Dragging of Carrying proceeds from the Keepers ill of stender Rewarding his Hawk in the Luting, in giving her the Pelt of a Pidgeon or some other dead thing, which gives her no delight. It is the pleasure she takes in the Reward that engages her coming to you: If then the chance to find her expectation frustrated in her usual satisfaction; she will ever after show you; and though you should throw her a live Pidgeon, the may seize it, and keep close

[6]

to it, or remove it as you approach, for fear that your unkindness should deprive her of it. Wherefore you must have a special care you disablige her not in her

Luring.

There are several other errours which must be re-Clified in a Haggard-fauleon, Faulcon-gentle, or Slightfaulcons, (which naturally are all of one kind, yet differ much in quality and condition) which I shall leave to the study of the ingenious and industrious Faulconer or Keeper. I fay, the first fault is, that though you have lured your Hawk well, and given her all the content and fatisfaction imaginable, yet will the not tarry with you, but take her flight and forfake you. This argueth an aversion in her from you to fomething elfe. This fault Mr. Turbervile, and Mr. Latham fay they have known remedied: but because! look upon the trouble therein to be fo great, and the future satisfaction so small and uncertain, I shall not lay down what means are commonly made use of in the cure of this ill quality.

But there is another fault, which at first may be eafily prevented; and that is, an aspiring quality and working humour, when although the Hawk never shewed any dislike to the Keeper or discontent, yet by observation she hath been found conceited, and would not endure the fociety of another Hawk; and having been well blouded on Fowl, the would not be kept down near her Keeper. To remedy this, let no scope be given to the Haggard in the time of making; let her not fly high, but be held down and near you: and if you should let this Hawk in to another Hawk, and find her fall to her work without any regard or notice taken of the other Hawk, suspect her instantly, and let her see Fowl in due time, lest when she comes to her due place, she go her way; for she will prove impatient: wherefore the Chorter work you make with

with her, the greater delight you give her, and so consequently you engage her love continually towards

you.

Having taught your Hawk to fit bare-faced in the Evening among company undisturbed, and that she knows your Voice, and will come to the Lure, then give her every night stones, till you find her Stomach good: after that, profer her Casting, and let her not receive it unless she likes it well; otherwise she is apt to take a dislike, and will never afterwards receive it

willingly.

These Stones asoresaid prepare and make ready the way for casting, stirring, and dissolving whatever is offensive within, and fitting it to be carried downward in her Mutes, or upward in her Castings. The time for giving these Stones is, when she hath put away her Supper from above; then give her half a dozen above the hand, if you have so much skill; if not, otherwise as you are able. Do thus often, until such time as you shall give her such things whereof she shall take Plumage in her living or training. But of this, more hereafter.

How to know the Nature and Disposition of feveral HAWKS, and what must be observed from thence.

There is a certain Hawk called a Blank Hawk, which is a kinde, loving, and docible Hawk; for the will diligently liften and give ear unto you and your voice; the will foon learn to come to hand, being very eager and hot to feize on what you thail ei-

[b 2]

ther throw or give her, and will be very familiar Laftly, having done your will on the ground, the will look up for your Fift, and will readily jump there on-

They are much subject to little Grubs, which are ingendered in the Guts, and discover themselves in their Mutes, crawling out from them, thrinking themelve up, and so instantly dying. These Worms do little harm, and that Hawk which hath them is feldom The colour of these Worms is red in a Slight Faulcon, and red in a Barbary Faulcon; and when dead, in both white.

There is a fort of Swarthy black-plum'd Hawk, that is good-mettled, and a high flier, yet hard to be reclaimed: for she will neither mind you nor your voice; but when you fure her, will look any other way than However, you must shew your self that the thould. very loving towards her, though you shall get no more from her than what you extort by force. For her due reclaiming, lessen her pride by ordering her Diet with measure, with respect had unto the Weather; which if it be mild and temperate, you need not fear to hold her down until you have quarried her: and as you shall see her amend her manners, alter her Diet, and add to her firength according to reasonable expedition; which will be foon obtained if the be found, and the weather moderate. But if the weather be frosty, have a care of abating flesh.

When at any time you fly any one of these black or tawny Hawks, and the stoops foul and falls in her flight, you must take her down with some living

thing.

If the be young, fuffer not her (or any other Hawk) to fly too long; for nothing is more prejudicial and diffasteful to a young Hawk at her first making, than to let her toil and make many stoopings before the be **Served**

ferved : by this diflike the is induced to fly wide and carelefly, and frequently to go away through displeafure.

Now to the intent I may go on methodically, and with as little confusion as may be, I shall in the next place here nominate what Hawks I intend to treat of; and in the fame order as I name them, in like manner I will discourse of them. Take them thus:

Faulcon,	3	Tiercel-gentle,
Gerfaulcon,		Ferkin,
Mylion,	Males	Tiercel,
Merlin,	Σ	Fack,
Hobby,	# '	Robbin,
Gofhank	E	Tiercel,
Sparrow-bank,		Mucket,
Lanner,	1	Lanneret.

Here note, that the Female of all Birds of Prey are much larger, and of greater bulk than the Male, and are more serviceable, being more watchful, hardy, and bold: but of fuch Birds as do not Prey, the Cocks are the larger.

The Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Mylion, Merlin, and Hobby do floop and seize their Prey with their Foot, breaking with their beak the Neck-bone of the Fowl, without pluming or tiring thereupon till the Fowl hath left busking and bating on the foot.

The Gofbank with her Male the Tiercel, and the Sparrow-bank, kill their Game by thrength and force of Wing at random, and do instantly plume and tire upon

their Prey.

vill

10-

CS tle m

Of the Faulcon.

Here are feven kinds of Faulcons, viz.

Faulcon-gentle,
Haggard-faulcon,
Barbary or Tartaret-faulcon,

Tunician.

The Faulcon-gentle is so called for her familiar cour, teous disposition; she is withal valiant, strong, and better able to endure any fort of weather than any other Hawk.

She hath a natural inclination and love to fly the Hern every way, either from her Wings to the downcome, or from the Fist and afore-head. She is most excellent at the Brook or River, especially at large Fowl, as the Shoveler, Wild-goose, &c. If she be an Eyest, you may venture her at the Crane; otherwise she will not be so hardy and bold. Where note, Hawks prove valiant or cowards according as they are first quarried: and if you take them out of the Eyrie before they are fully summed and hard penned, you must never expect their Wings should grow to perfection, but their Legs will be apt to wear crooked, and their Train, their long Feathers and their Flags also will be full of Taints.

In the choice of your Faulcon, observe that she have wide Narcs; high and large Eye-lids; a great black Eye; a round Head, somewhat full on the top; a short, thick, azure Beak; and indifferent high Neck; barb Feathers under the clap of the Beak; a good

large,

6

large, round, fleshy Breast: let her be strong, hard, and stiff bonded, broad-shouldered; having slonder Sails, full Sides, long and great Thighs; strong and short Arms; large Feet, with the Sear of the Foot soft and blewish; black Pounces, long Wings, and crossing the Train, which Train must be short and ve-

ry pliable.

Here observe, that Faulcons of one kind differ much, and are diversly named, according to the time of their first Reclaiming, places of Haunt, and Countries from whence they come; as Mew'd-Hawks, Rammage-Hawks, Soar-Hawks, Eyesses: and these again are divided into large Hawks, mean Hawks, and slender Hawks. All these have different Males and Plumes, according to the nature of the Countries from whence they come; as some are black, some plank, or russes; and they differ in disposition; some are best for they Field, others for the River.

Names are bestowed on a Faukon according to her

Age or Taking.

The first is an Eyes, which Name lasts as long as she is in the Eyrie. These are very troublesome in their feeding, do cry very much, and are difficultly entred; but being well entred and quarried, prove excellent Hawks for the Hern, River, or any sort of Fowl, and are hardy and full of mettle.

The fecond is a Rammage-faulcon, and referves the name after the hath left the Eyrie, being so called May, June, July, and August. These are hard to be manned, but being well reclaimed, they are not inferiour to any

Hawk.

The third is a Soar-hawk, so called September, October and November. The first Plumes they have when they forsake the Eyric, they keep a whole year before they mew them, which are called Soar-feathers.

The fourth is termed Murzarolt, (the latest term

is Carvist, as much as to say, Carry on the Fist:) they are so called January, February, March, April, and tilt the middle of May, during which time they must be kept on the Fist. They are for the most part very great Baters, and therefore little eaters: They are bad Hawks, frequently troubled with Filanders and worms, and are

rarely brought to be good for any thing-

The fifth are called Enter-mens, from the middle of May, to the latter end of December. They are so called because they cast their Coats. They were excellent Hawks, could they be trusted; therefore they must be kept hard under, and must make your Fist their Pearch. Having discoursed of the Names and Nature of the Faulcon, I next come to his Manning, Luring, Flights, and Mewing in every condition: which course I shall orderly take in my ensuing discourse of the other Hawks I have onely named heretosore. And because what Diseases or Casualties are incident to one are likewise to all, I shall put their Cures at the latter end all together.

cf the Manning, Luring, Flights and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other things properly belonging to an Oftrager.

Having taken a Faulcon, you must Seel her, in such manner, that as the Seeling slackens, the Faulcon may be able to see what provision is straight before her, which she will better see so than any other way: and

be fure you Seel her not too hard.

A Hawk newly taken ought to have all new Furniture, as new Jeffes of good Leather, mailed Leafes with Buttons at the end, and new Bewers. You must have a small round such likewise hanging in a string, with which you must frequently streak your Pawk:

the

ri

CI

the oftner you do it, the sooner and better you will man her. She must have two good Bells, that the may the better be found and heard when she either stireth or scratteth: Her Hood must be well fashioned, raised and bossed against her Eyes, deep, and yet straight enough beneath, that it may the better fasten about her Head without hurting her: and you must cope a little her Beak and Talons, but not so near as to make them bleed.

Take notice, if you take a Sour-fauleon which hath already past the Seas, although she be very hard to be

reclaim'd, yet the is the best of Faulcons.

Her food must be good and warm twice or thrice a day, until she be full gorg'd; which food must be either Pigeons, Larks, or other live Birds; and the reason is, because you must break her by degrees off from her accustomed feeding.

When you feed her, you must whoop and lure as you do when you call a Hawk, that the may know when

you will give her meat.

her

til

be

cat ks.

are.

lle

fa

K-

You must unhood her gently, giving her two or three bits; and putting on her Hood again, you must give her as much more, and be fure that the be close Seeled : and after three or four days leffen her diet : and when you go to bed, fet her on some Pearch by you, that you may awaken her often in the night. Thus you must do till you observe her grow tame and gentle: and when you find the begins to feed eagerly, then give hera Sheep's-heart. And now you may begin to unhood her by day-time, but it must be far from company; first giving her a bit or two, then hood her again gently, and give her as much more. Be fure not to afright her with any thing when you unhood her. And when you perceive her to be acquainted with company, and that the is sharp fet, unhood her, and give her fome meat, holding her just against your Face and Eyes, which will make her less afraid of the counts nances of others. If you can, reclaim her without

over-watching.

You must bear her continually on the Fist till she be throughly Manned, causing her to feed in company, giving her in the Morning about Sun-rising the Wing of a Pullet, and in the Evening the Foot of a Coney or Hare cut off above the joynt, slay'd and laid in Water; which having squeez'd, give it her with the Pinion of a Hen's Wing.

For two or three days give her washt meat, and then Plumage, according as you think her foul within. If the Catt, hood her again, and give her nothing till the Gleam after her Calting: having gleamed and casted then give her a beaching of hot meat in company; and towards the Evening let her plume a Hen's Wingin

company also.

of a yellowish complexion, then be sure to cleanse he well with washt meat and Casting: if clean within give her gentle Castings, as the Pinions of an old Hess Wing, or the Neck-bone chopped sour or five time between the joynts, washt and steeped in fair Water.

Having well reclaimed her, throughly manned her, and made her eager and sharp set, then you may ven

ture to feed her on the Lure.

But before you shew her the Lure, you must consider these three things: 1. That she be bold in and samiliar with company, and no ways asraid of Dogs and Horses. 2. That she be sharp set and hungry, regarding the hour of the Morning and Evening when you will Lure her. 3. And lastly, she must be clean within, and the Lure must be well garnished with meat on both sides, and you must abscond your self when you intend to give her the length of the Lease.

You must first unhood her, giving her a bit or two on the Lure as she sitteth on your Fist: afterwards take the Lure from her, and so hide it that she see it not; and when she is unseized, cast the Lure so near her that she may eatch it within the length of her Lease. When she hath seiz'd it, use your voice according to the custome of Faulconers, and feed her upon the Lure on the ground with the Heart and warm Thigh of a Putlet. Having so lured her, in the Evening give her but a little meat; and let this luring be so timely, that you may give her Plumage and a Juck of a

joynt.

mte

hour

e be

any,

ing

ney

Va-

ini-

hen

If

fhe

cd,

nd

iŋ

a

In the Morning betimes take her on your Fift, and when the hath cast and gleamed, give her a little beaching of warm meat. Towards Noon take a Creance and tie it to her Leafe, and go into some pleasant Field or Meadow, and give her a bit or two on the Lure; then unseize her: and if you find the is tharp fee, and hath seized on the Lure eagerly, then give her some one to hold, to let her off to the Lure; then unwind the Creance, and draw it after you a good way, and let him which holds the Hawk hold his right hand on the Taffel of the Hawks Hood in readiness, so that he may unhood her affoon as you begin to lure : and if the come well to the Lure, and stoop upon it roundly, and seize it eagerly, then let her eat two or three bits thereon; then unseize her and take her off the Lure, hood her, and deliver her to him again that held her, and going farther off lure her, feeding her as before with the accuflomed voice. Thus lure her every day farther and farther off, till the is accustomed to come freely and eagerly to the Lure.

After this, lure her in company, but have a care that nothing affright her: and when you have used her to the Lure on foot, then lure her on Horse-back; which you may effect the sooner, by causing Horse-

men to be about you when you lure her on foot: also you may do it the fooner by rewarding her upon the Lure on Horse-back among Horsemen. When this way she grows familiar, let some body afoot hold the Hawk, and he that is on Horse-back must call and cast the Lure about his Head; then must the holder take of the Hood by the Tassel: and if she seize eagerly on the Lure without sear of Man or Horse, then take off the Greance, and sure her at a greater distance. And if you would have her love Dogs as well as the Lure, call Dogs when you give her Tiring or Plumage.

Of Bathing a Faulcon lately reclaimed; bow to make her Flying, and to hate the Check.

Having wean'd your Faulcon from her Rammage fooleries, being both ways lured, rewarded, and throughly reclaim'd, offer her some Water to bath her felf in, in a Bason wherein the may stand up to the Thighs, chusing a temperate clear day for that purpose. Then having lured your Hawk, and rewarded her with warm meat, in the morning carry her to fome Bank, and there hold her in the Sun till the hath endewed her Gorge, taking off her Hood that the may prune and pick her felf: that being done, hood her again, and fet her near the Bason, and taking off her Hood, let her bathe again as long as the pleafeth: After this, take her up, and let her pick her felt as before, and then feed her. If the refuse the Bason to bathe in, thew her fome finall River or Brook for that purpose.

By this use of bathing she gains strength and a sharp appetite, and thereby grows bold: but that day where-

in the batheth give her no washt meat.

h

ı

h

t C

1

allo

the

this the

caf

the

the

If you would make your Faulcon upwards, the next day after the bath bath'd get on Horfeback, either in the Morning or Evening, and chuse out some field wherein are no Rooks or Pidgeons; then take your Lure well garnished on both fides, and having unhooded your Hank, give her a bit or two on the Lure. then bood her: afterwards go leifurely against the Wind, then unhood her: and before the bate, or find any Check in her Eye, whiftle her off from your Fift fairly and foftly. As the flieth about you, trot on with your Horse, and cast out your Lure, not suffering her to fly long about you at first: continue thus doing Morning and Evening for seven or eight days. But if you find your Hawk unwilling to fly about you or floop to the Lure, then must you let her fly with some Hamk that loves the company of others, and will not rove at any change or check; and that must first be done at the Partridge, for they will not fly far before If the hath flown twice or thrice, cast out the Lure, and reward her on Horseback. If the Fowl you flew her at be killed by another Hank, let her feed with him a little, and then farther reward her on the Lure.

If you would have your Faulcon prove upwards and a high-flying Hank, you must let her fly with such as are so qualified. If the love the company of others, and is taught to hold in the Head, then if the Fowl be in Pool, Pit, or Plash, cast off your high-flying Hank, and let him that hath your new-lur'd Hank get under the Wind, and when he seeth his advantage, let him unhood her; and if she bate, then it is to get up to the other Hank.

Let him then cast her off, and before the get up to the other near his full pitch, lay out the Fowl: if the kill her Game, reward her with the Heart, and let her participate of the Breast with the other Hawks.

To

To take your Faulcon from going out to any Check thus you must do: If she hath kill'd a Check, and hat fed thereon before you could come in, rebuke her me severely at first, but take her down to the Lure, give her a bit or two, hood her, and sly her not in three or four days; and if you do, let it be where no Checks are, but if you come in before she hath tasted the Check she hath killed, then take the Gall of an Hen, and anoing the Breast of that Check she hath killed, (any other bitter thing will do) and this will make her hate to go at Check again.

How to enseam a Faulcon with ber Castings and Scowrings.

When you feed your Faulcon, call and lure as if you called her to the Lure, fand every day profer her Wate, and every night give her Castings accordingly as the endeweth. Take off her Hood frequently in company; and that you may hinder her from bating, hold always the Hood ready by the Tassel in your hand.

In the Evening by candle-light take off her Hood among company, until she Rouze and Mewt; then set her on the Pearch, and not before, setting a light before

her.

Every Faulcon ought to have a Make-Hark to teach her to hold in the Head: if that will not do, cut of fome part of her two Principals in each Wing, the long Feather and that next to it, which will force her to hold in.

Be fure to reward your Hank well at the beginning, and let her feed well on the Quarry; which will so encourage her, that she will have no fancy to go out to the Check. When she is well in bloud and well quarried, then let her sly with other Hank.

l

2-1

Lur

ma

Ski

lur

Au

dle

ref

an

W

Ci ly

li ha

D

y

t

ti

C

1

heck

four

are

(he

Oine

bit-

) af

If you would make your Faulcon to the Grane, her Lure should be a counterfeit Crane. If you would make her to the Hare, her Lure should be then a Hares Skin stuft with some light matter: When she is well lured, and you would enter her, tie the Hares Skin so shuft to the end of a Creance, and fassen it to your Saddle-pummel, by which means when you gallop it will resemble a running Hare: then unhood your Hawk, and cry, Back with the Dogs, back with the Dogs. When you find she hath seized it, let go your Creance, and suffer her to sasten thereon; then instantly reward her upon it, and encourage her as much as is possible.

When she is well entred after this manner, take a living Hare and break one of her hinder Legs, and having before well acquainted your Faulcon with your Dogs by continual feeding among them, I say then put your Hare out in some sair place with your Dogs, and the Faulcon will stoop and ruff her until the Dogs may take her; then take the Hare from the Dogs, and cast her out to the Faulcon, crying, Back, back

If you would make your Hawk flying to the Partridge or Pheasant after the is reclaimed and made, then every time you lure her, cast your Lure into some low Tree or Bush, that she may learn to take the Tree or Stand: if she take the Stand before she sees the Lure, let her stand a while; and afterwards draw the Lure out before her, and cry with what words you have acquainted her to understand you by, and then reward her well. After this manner she will learn to take Stand.

Feed her always on the ground, or in some thick place, for in such places she must encounter with the Pheasant at Pearch.

At first fly with her at young Pheasant or Partridge,

of

ы

21

th

Ć

ŀ

to encourage her by advantage, and afterwards at a old.

If a Faulcon will not take Stand, but keep on the Wing, then must you sly her in plain places where you

may always fee her upon you.

Draw your Faulcon out of the Mew twenty dip before you Enfeam her: If the truls and carry, the remedy is to cope her Talons, her Powlse and Penysingle.

Never reward your Hank upon River-fowl but upon the Lure, that the may the better love and effect

thereof.

The Crane ought to be flown at before Sun-rifing; for the is a flothful Bird, and you may cast off to here Cast or Lease of Faulcons, or a Coshawk from the Fin without Dogs. You must fly but once a day atthe Crane, after which you must reward your Hawk very well, ever succouring her with a Grey-hound, which the best of Dogs for that purpose.

Give your Faulcon a Beaching very early in the morning, and it will make her very eager to fly who

it is time for it.

If you would have her a high-flying Hank, you must not feed her highly, but she should be ted nine days to gether before Sun-rising, and at night late in the cool of the Evening.

The Faulcon will kill the Hern naturally if the beat Peregrin or Traveller: yet you will do well to give he

Trains.

A Faulcon may fly ten times in a day at a River, if the season be not extream; but more is inconvenient.

A Hawk ought to have forty Castings before the beperfectly made. And indeed all Hawks ought to have Castings every night, if you would have them clean and sound: for Hawks which have not this continual softennoctumal Casting will be surcharged with abundance of superfluous Humours, which ascending to the Brain, bred so great a disturbance that they cannot sly so high as otherways they would. And it is good to give them Tiring or Plumage at night, especially field-Hawks, but not River-Hawks, for fear of weakning their Backs.

When your Hamk hath flown or bated, feed her not fo long as the panteth, (but let her be first in breath again;) otherways you may bring her into a Disease

called the Pantas.

If a Faulcon or other Hawk will not Seize nor Gorge, take the Quill of a Wild-goofe, and tie it under her long Single; then will the Seize and Gripe. When the beginneth to seize, take away the said Quill, and she will seize long afterwards.

If you cannot give Covert to your Faulcon or Gol-

hawk, then call her off with the Sun in her back.

When you draw your Hank out of the Mew, if the be greazie, (which you shall know by her round fat Thighs and her full Body, the flesh being round, and as high as her Breast-bone) and if she be well mew'd, and have all her Feathers fummed, then give her at feeding-time in the morning two or three bits of hot meat; and at night give her less, unless it be very cold; and if the feed well and without compulsion. give her washt meat. Thus prepared, take the Wings of a Hen for her Dinner and wash them in two Waters. In the morning give her the Legs of a Hen very hot, at Noon meat temperately warm, a good Gorge; then let her fast till it be late in the Evening. If she have put over her meat, and there is nothing left in her Gorge, then give her warm meat, as in the morning. Thus diet her till it be convenient to give her Plumage, the which you may know by these tokens: First, the Flesh of the end of the Pinion of the Hamk's [c] Wing Wing will feem foster and tenderer than it did before she did eat washe meat. Secondly, if her Mewes be white, and the black thereof be very black, and not mingled with any other colour. Lastly, if she be sharp set, and doth plume eagerly, you may give her Casting either of a Hare's or Coney's Foot, or the small Feathers on the joynt of the Wing of an old Hen.

Having set her on the Pearch, sweep clean underneath, that you may see whether the Mewt be sulf streaks, or skins, or slimy: if it be, then continue this fort of Casting three or four nights together; but if you find the Feathers digested and soft, and that her Casting is great, then take the neck of an old Hen, and cut it between the joynts, then lay it in cold water, and give it your Faulcon three nights together; in the day-time give her washt meat, after this Casting or Plumage, as you shall see requisite: and this will bear all down into the Pannel.

When you have drawn her out of the Mew, and her principal Feathers are summed, give her no wallst mean, but quick Birds with good Gorges, and set her out in

open places.

General Instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer.

Let his Jeffes and Bewets be of good Leather, having Bells big and shrill according to the proportion of the Hawk, with a Hood that is bossed at the Eyes, and fizable for the Head.

He must use his Hamk in such manner, that he may make her grow familiar with him alone or in company.

and

ar

8

di

m

th

W

or

ho

m

fiz

fre

th

CO

uf

ni

as

lo

IE the be

th

til

do

ff

and to that end he must often unhood and hood her a-

In nine nights the Faulconer ought not to let his Hawk Jouk at all, nor fuffer her to pearch, but keep her

during that time continually on his Fift.

When the Faulconer would call his Hawk. Ict him fet her on the Pearch, unhood her, and shewher some meat within his Fist, call her so long till she come to it, then feed her therewith: if she come not, let her stand without food till she be very sharp set. Observe this

order for about nine days.

When you would lure her give her some man to hold, and call her with a Lure well garnisht with meat on both fides, and give her a bit: use her to this fix or seven days; then cause her to be held farther from you, and cast the Lure about your Head, and throw it on the ground a little way from you: if the come to it roundly, reward her bountifully. Having used her to this some certain days, take your Lure garnished as aforefaid, and every day call her to you as far as it is possible for her to see or hear you, and let her be loose from all her Furniture, without Loins or Creance. If the come freely, reward her, and flop her now and then in her feeding; for that will make her come the better. You may do well to flop the Lure upon her fometimes, and let her fly upon you. Here note, it is requifire to bathe her before you take this course, lest when the is at liberty the rangle to fee Water, and in the mean time you lose your Hawk; wherefore bathe her every feven or eight days, for her nature requireth fert s

her fly a turn or two, and fling her out the Lure, and let her foot a Ghicken or Pullet, and having killed it, let her feed thereon.

Unhood her often as you bear her; continue fo doing

till the hath endewed and mewted fufficiently.

Your Hawk being thus m le and manned, go abroad with her every morning when it is fair, and let the place where you intend to my her be plathy, or fone narrow Brook; and when you cast her off, go into the Wind so far, that the Fowl may not discover you When the is cast off, and beginneth to recover her Gate make then to the Brook or Plash where the Fowl le always making your Hank to lean in upon you; and when you fee her at a reasonable pitch, (her Head being in) lay out the Fowl, and land it if you can; and you cannot, take down your Hank, and let her hill fome Train; to which end you must always carry some live Fowl with you, as a Duck, &c. And having flipt on of her Wing feathers, thrust it through her Nares, and cast her up as high as you can underneath your Hen that the may the better know your hand.

If you would have your Hank fly at one particular Fowl more than at another, you must then feed he well upon a Train of the same kind, as thus: Take a Creance, and tie that Fowl you would accustom her of the stand close that shall hold the Creance; the standing afar off, unhood your Hank, and let the Fowl be stirred and drawn with the Creance until your Hank perceive it stir; and if she foot it, make another Train thus: Take a living Fowl that can fly, half seel it and cast it out; then let your Hank fly to it; and if she

kill it, reward her well upon it.

f

G

H

tl

k

B

h

T

St

fh

(o

at

th

of

ni

ho

he

K

YO

ch

he

na the

Of the Rammage-faulcon.

If a Faulconer chance to recover a Rammage-bank that was never handled before, let him immediately feel her, and at that instant put on her Jesses made of foft leather; at the end thereof fix two Varvels, the one may bear your Coat of Arms, the other your Name, that if the chance to be loft, they that take her up may know where to return her: put her on also a pair of Bells with two proper Bewets. Having thus furnished her, you must begin her manning by gentle handling. To avoid the danger of her Beak, you must have a smooth Stick about half a foot in length, with which you must ftroak your Hank about the Pinions of her Wings, and so downwards thwart her Train. If the offer to fnap at the Stick, withdraw not your hand, and let her bite thereon, the hardness whereof will soon make her weary of that sport.

If you would man her well, you should watch all the

night, keeping her continually on your Fift.

You must teach her to feed seel'd; and having a great and easie Ruster-hood, you must hood and unhood her often, seel'd as she is, handling her gently about the head, coying her always when you unhood her, to the intent she may not be displeased with her Keeper.

Let her plume and tire fometimes upon a Wing on your Fift, keeping her so day and night, without pearching, until she be weary, and will suffer you to hood

her without flirring.

nd

the me the

te, ic, id as it ill as a d

If your Hank be so rammage that she will not leave her snapping or biting, then take a little Aloes snecotrina, and when she offers to snap, give it her to bite; the bitterness whereof will quickly make her leave that ill quality. Garlick I have heard will do the

[c 3]

like, the strong scent thereof being equally offer five.

How to Hood a Hawk.

Having seel'd your Hawk, fit her with a large of Hood, which you must take off and put on very offen watching her two nights, handling her frequent and gently about the Head as aforesaid. When yo perceive she hath no aversion to the Hood, unseel he in an Evening by Candle-light; continue handling he softly, often hooding and unhooding her, until he takes no offence at the Hood, and will patiently enduthandling.

Take this Observation by the way, That it is the duty of a Faulconer to be endowed with a great dealer Patience; and in the next place he ought to have an tural love and inclination to Hamks; without these two Ouglifications, all the Professor of this Art will prove

Mar-Hawks inflead of good Faulconers.

But to return where I left off: If your feel'd Had feeds well, abides the Hood and handling without this king or bitting, then by Candle-light in an Evening unfeel her, and with your Finger and Spittle anoint the place where the Seeling-thread was drawn through then hood her, and hold her on your Fift all night, of ten hooding, unhooding, and handling her, stroaking her gently about the Wings and Body, giving her sometimes a bit or two, also Tiring or Plumage. Being well reclaimed, let her sit upon a Pearch; but every night keep her on the Fift three or sour hours, stroaking, hooding, and unhooding, &c. as aforesaid: and thus you may do in the day-time, when she hath learn'd to feed eagerly without tear.

How to make a Hawk know your Voice, and her own Feeding.

Having mann'd your Hawk so that she feeds boldly, acquaint her with your Voice, Whistle, and such words as Faulconers use: you may do it by frequently repeating them to her as she is feeding on your Fist, &c. But I think the best way of making her acquainted with

them, is by your experience and practice.

When the feeds boldly, and knows your Voice and Whistle, then teach her to know her Feeding, and to bate at it in this manner: Shew her fome meat with your right hand, crying and luring to her aloud; if she bate or strike at it, then let her quickly and neatly foot it, and feed on it for four or five bits. Do thus often, and she will know her Feeding the better.

After this, give her every night some Casting either of Feathers, or Cotton with Cloves or Aloes wrapt up therein, &c. These Castings make a Hawk clean and

eager.

Offen

ente

you he he he

the

na-

How to make your Hawk bold and venturous.

In the first place, to make her hardy, you must permit her to Plume a Pullet or large Chicken in a place where there is not much light: her Hood in a readines, you must have either of the aforesaid alive in your hand; then kneeling on the ground, luring and crying aloud to her, make her plume and pull the Pullet a little; then with your Teeth drawing the Strings, unhood her softly, suffering her to pluck it with her Beak three or four times more; then throw out the Pullet on the ground, and encourage her to seize it. When you perceive she breaks it and takes bloud, you must lure

lure and cry aloud to her, encouraging her all the win imaginable: then hood her gently, and give her Time of the Wing or Foot of the faid Pullet.

How to make a Hawk know the Lure.

Your Hank having three or four times thus killed a Pullet or large Chicken in forme feeret place, then the

teach her to know the Lure.

Having fastined a Pullet unto your Lure, go apar, giving your Hank unto another, who must draw look the strings of her Hood in readines: Being gonea little way, take half the length of the String, and of it about your Head, luring with your voice at the same time; then let your Hank be unhooded as you me throwing your Lure a little way from her, not ceasing luring all the while. If she stoop to the Lure and seize, suffer her to plume the Pullet, still coying and luring with your voice; then let her feed on the Pullet upon the Lure: After that, take her on your Fift together with her meat, then hood her, and let her the as aforesaid. And thus you may teach her to come by degrees to a very great distance.

How to make a Hawk flying.

When your Hamk or Haggard-fanleon will come and stoop to the Lure roundly without any fear or coynes, you must put her on a great pair of Luring-bells; the like you must do to a Sear-bank: by so much greater must the Bells be, by how much your Hamk is giddy-headed, and apt to take out at Check.

That being done, and the tharp fet, go in a fair morning into fome large Field on Horseback, which Field must be very little incumbred with Wood or Trees: having your Hawk on your Fist, ride up into the wind,

ind

h

b

o h

V

1

3

and having loosned her Hood, whistle softly to provoke her to fly; and then you will observe the will begin to bate, or at least to flap with her Flags and Sails, and to raise her self on your Fist: then suffer her until the rouze or Mewt: when the hath done either of them, unhood her, and let her fly with her Head into the Wind; for thereby she will be the better able to get upon the Wing; then will she naturally climbe upwards, slying in a circle.

When the hath flown three or four Turns, then cry and lure with your Voice, casting the Lure about your head, unto which you must first tie a Pullet: and if your Faulcon come in and approach near you, then cast out the Lure into the Wind; and if the stoop to it, re-

ward her as before.

22

re

There is one great fault you will often find in the making of a Hawk flying, and that is, when the flieth from the Fift she will not got up, but take stand on the ground; a frequent fault in Soar-faulcons. You must then fright her up with your Wand, riding in to her; and when you have forced her to take a Turn or two. take her down to the Lure and feed her. But if this do no good, then you must have in readiness a Duck feeled, so that she may see no way but backwards, and that will make her mount the higher. This Duck you must hold by one of the Wings near the body in your right hand, then lure with your voice to make your Faulcon turn the head: when the is at a reasonable pitch, cast up your Duck just under her, that she may perceive it : if the strike, stoop, or truss the Duck, permit her to kill it, and reward her, giving her a reasona-Use this custom twice or thrice, and your Hank will leave the Stand, delighting on the Wing, and will become very obedient.

Here note, that for the first or second time it is not convenient, to shew your Hawk great or large Fowl,

for it often happens that they flip from the Hank in the wind; the Hank not recovering them, raketh after them, which puts the Faulconer to much trouble, and

frequently occasions the loss of his Hawk.

But if it so chance that your Hamk so rake out win a Fowl that she cannot recover it, but gives it one and comes in again directly upon you, then cast out seeled Duck; and if she stoop and truss it, cross the Wings, and permit her to take her pleasure, rewarding her also with the Heart, Brains, Tongue, and Live. For want of a quick Duck, take her down with the dry Lure, and let her plume a Pullet, and seed her up on it.

By so doing, your Hamk will learn to give overa Fowl that rakes out, and hearing the Lure of the Faulconer, will make back again to the River, and know

the better to hold in the Head.

A Flight for a Haggard.

When you intend a Flight for a Haggard, for the first, second, and third time, make choice of such a place where there are no Crows, Rooks, or the like, to take away all occasion of her raking out after such Check.

Let her not fly out too far on head at the first, but run after and cry, Why lo, why lo, to make her turn Head. When she is come in, take her down with the Lure, unto which must be fastned a live Pullet, and let her

Tire, Plume, and feed as aforefaid.

Sometimes a Haggard out of pride and a gadding humour will rangle out from her Keeper: then clog her with great Luring-bells, and make her a Train or two with a Duck feeled, to teach her to hold in and know her keeper: take her down often with the dry Lure, and reward her bountifully, and let her be ever well

well in bloud, or you may whoop for your Hamk to no purpole.

How to make a Soar-faulcon or Haggard kill her Game at the very first.

If the be well lured, flieth a good Gate, and floopeth well, then cast off a well-quaried Hank, and let her stoop a Fowl on Brook or Plath, and watch her till the put it to the plunge: then take down your Make-Hamk, reward her, hood her, and fet her; so you may make

use of her if need require.

Then take your Hank un-entred, and going up the wind half a Bow-shot, unloose her Hood, and softly whiftle her off your Fift, until she have rouzed or mewted: then let her fly with her Head into the wind, having first given notice or warning to the company to be in readiness against the Hawk be in a good Gate, and to shew Water, and to lay out the Fowl.

When the is at a good pitch, and covering the Fowl, then notifie that all the company make in at once to the Brook upon the Fowl, to land her: if your Faulcon strike, stoop, or truss her Game, run in to help her, and croffing the Fowls Wing, let her take her pleasure there-

on.

uta

the

ing

Ver.

the

ip.

If the kill not the Fowl at first stooping, give her then respite to recover her Gate. When the hath got it, and her Head in, then lay out the Fowl as aforefaid, until you land it at last; nor forgetting to help her as foon as the hath feized it, giving also her due Reward.

Remedy for a Hawk's taking Stand in a Tree.

In the first place you must chuse such places where are no Wood or Trees, or as little as may be. If you cannot avoid it, then have two or three live Trains, and give them to as many men, placing them conveniently for to use them. When therefore your Hand hath stooped, and endeavours to go to stand, let him to whom the Hand most bends cast out his Train-Duck seeled: if the Hand kill her, reward her there with. If this course will not remedy that fault in her by twice or thrice so doing, my advice is then to put with the Buzzard.

How to belp a Hawk froward and coy through pride of Grease.

There is a scurvy quality in some Hawks, proceeding from pride of Grease, or being high kept, which is a distainful coyness. Such a Hawk therefore must not be rewarded although she kill; yet give her leave to plume a little; and then let the Faulconer take a Sheeps-Heart cold, or the Leg of a Pullet, and whilst the Hawk is busie in pluming, let either of them be conveyed into the Body of the Fowl, that it may savour thereof; and when the Hawk hath eaten the Brains, Heart, and Tongue of the Fowl, then take out your Inclosure, and call your Hawk with it to your Fist, and feed her therewith: after this give her some Feathers of the Neck of the Fowl to scowr and make her cast.

To make a Hawk hold in her Head, and not mind Check.

Take a piece of a Leafe, and fasten it to your Lure. fiting, the other end to the Wing of a Pidgeon, which you may put in and pull out of your Hawking-bag at your conveniency: when you find your Hawk apt to go out, shew your Pidgeon. I would not have you use it often; for it draws a Hawk from her place if well flown.

ins,

Vc.

mk

im

n-

How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high-flying.

If your Hawk be a stately high-slying Hawk, you ought not to engage her in more slights than one in a morning: for often slying brings her off from her stately pitch. If she be well made for the River, sly her not above twice in a morning; yet feed her up though she kill not.

When a high-flying Hawk being whiftled to, gathers upwards to a great gate, you must continue her therein, never flying her but upon broad Waters and open Rivers; and when she is at the highest, take her down with your Lure; where when she hath plumed and broken the Fowl a little, then feed her up, and by that means you shall maintain your Faulcon high-flying, inwards, and very fond of the Lure.

Some will have this high-flying Faukon feldom to kill, and not to stoop: yet it she kill every day, although she stoop from a high Gate, yet if she be not rebuked or hurt therewith, she will, I can affure you, become a higher slier every day than other; but she will grow less fond of the Lure. Wherefore your

high-

high-flying Hamks should be made inwards, it being a commendable quality in them to make in and turn head at the second or third to so of the Lare, and when the

poureth down upon it as if she had killed.

And as the teaching of a Faulcon, or any other Hamk to come readily to and love the Lure, is an art highly commendable, because it is the effect of great labour and industry: so it is the cause of saving many a Hamk, which otherways would be lost irrecoverably.

Mark this by the way, that some naturally high-shying Hawks will be long before they be made upwards still sishing and playing the slugs; and when they should get up to cover the Fowl, they will stoop before the Fowl be put out: And this may proceed from two causes. In the first place, she may be too sharp set, and in the next place, it may be she is shown untinely,

either too foon or too late.

When you fee a Hank use those evil Tatches without any visible cause, cast her out a dead Fowl for a dead Quarry, and hood her up instantly without Reward, to discourage her from practising the like another time: half an hour afterwards call her to the Lure and feed her, and setve her after this manner as often as she fisheth in that fashion.

Befides, to correct this errour, the Faulconer ought to consult the natures and dispositions of his Hamks, and should carefully observe which fly high when in good plight, and which best when they are kept low; which when sharpest set, and which on the contrary in a mean between both; which early at Sun-rising, which when the Sun is but two hours high; which sooner, and which later in an evening.

For know that the natures of Hamks are different; so are the time to fly each one: for to fly a Hamk in her proper times, and to fly her out of it, is as disagree-

able

able

fore

natu

Som Let c

form

or v

cast

a W

you

the

ly

na

ul

T

in

21

tl

t

ľ

ŀ

able as the flight of a Gerfankion and a Buzzard. Therese fore the Oftrager must fly his Hawks according to their natures and dispositions, keeping them always arrigiood order.

ig a

ead

Che

her

art

tat

ny

2.

Where by the by take notice, all Hamk, as well Sour-hawks as Mew'd-hawks and Haggardon, flound be fet out in the Evening two or three hours, forme morely some less, having respect to their nature as it is ffronger or weaker; and in the morning also according as they cast, hooding them first, and then setting them abroad a weathering, until you get on Horseback to prosecute your Recreation.

A Flight for the Hern.

This Flight hath less of Art in it than Pleasure to the beholders; and, to say the truth, the Flight is stately and most noble.

Land of the control of the street

As it is less difficult to teach a Hamk to fly at Fowl than it is to come unto and love the Lure, the first being natural, and not the last; so there is less industry to be used in making a Hamk fly the Hern than Water-four. To the first she is instigated by a natural propensity and inclination to the latter she is brought with last, pains, and much diligence.

At the beginning of March Herns begin to make their Passage: if therefore you will adapt your Faulcons for the Hern, you must not let them sly longer at the River, and withal you must pull them down to make them light; which is done by giving them Hearts and sless of Lambs and Calves, also Chickens; but give them no wild meats.

To the intent you may acquaint them one with the other, so that they may the better fly the Hern and help one another, you must call a cast of them to the Lure at once; but have a care they crab not toge-

ther

H

i

I

S

t

a

ther, for fo they may endanger one another in the

flight.

When your Hawk is scowred and clean and shan Cet, you must then get a live Hern, upon the upper per of whole long tharp Bill you must place a joynt of hollow Cane, which will prevent her from hurting the Hank: that being done, tie the Hern in a Creane then fetting her on the ground, unheod your Hand who will fly the Hern as foon as thee fees her. If the feize her, make in apace to fuccour her, and let be plume and take bloud of the Hern: then take the Brains, the Marrow of the Bones, and the Heart, and laying it on your Hawking-glove, give it your Fad con. After this, rip her Breaft, and let your Hamk feel thereon till the be well gorged: this being done, had her up upon the Hern, permitting her to plume ather pleasure; then take her on your Fift, and let her it on the Foot or Pinion.

Because Herns are not very plentiful, you may preferve one for a Train three or four times, by arming Bill, Head, and Neck, and painting it of the same colour that the Hern is of: and when the Faulconseith her, you must be very nimble to make in, and ceive her by a live Pidgeon clapt under the Wingst the Hern for the Faulcon, which must be her Ro

ward.

The Hawk having thus several times taken he Train without discovery of the delusion, you may then let the Hern loose in some fair Field without a Greance, or without arming her: when she is up of a reasonable height, you may cast off your Faulcons who if she bind with the Hern and bring her down then make in apace to rescue her, thrusting the Hern's Bill into the ground, and breaking his Wings and Legs, that the Hawk may with more ease plume and foot him. Then reward her as before, with the Brains, Mar

Marrow of the Bones, and Heart, making thereof an

Italian Soppas

Thus much of a Train-Hern. Now to fly the wild Hern, it is thus: If you find a wild Hern at Siege, win in as nigh unto her as you can, and go with your Hawk under the Wind; and having first loosed her Hood in a readiness, as soon as the Hern leaveth the Siege, off with her Hood, and let her fly. If the climb to the Hern and bring her down, run in (as I said before) to rescue her, thrusting her Bill into the ground, breaking her Wings and Legs, and rewarding her as aforesaid on your Hawking-glove.

Now if your Faulcon beat not down the Hern, or do give him over, never fly your Faulcon again at a Hern, unless with a Make-hawk well entred; for the Coward by this means, seeing another fly at the Hern and bind with her, takes fresh courage. And if they kill the Hern flying both together, then must you reward them both together while the Quarry is hot, making for them a Soppa as aforesaid. This is the onely way to make them both bold and perfect Hern-

ers.

Of the HAGGARD-FAULCON,
why so called; her good Shape and Properties: And what difference there is
between a Haggard and a Faulcon-gentle.

The Haggard is by some called the Peregrin-Fanlcon, because, say some, she is brought from a Country forrein and remote; and therefore others call them Travellers, or Passengers. But if there be

d

other reason for the name but this, all other Hank coming from exotick places might borrow that appellation.

Upon a threefold consideration, I conceive they are

called Haggard or Peregrin-faulcons.

First, because their Eyrie was never found in any Country by any man that ever I could hear or read of.

Secondly, because these Faulcons rangle and wands more than other Faulcon doth, still seeking strang and forreign Coasts; so that where-ever they come they may be justly called Peregrins or Forreigners.

Thirdly, and laftly, the never takes up her habitation

long in a place.

This Haggard is not inferiour to any other Faukon, but very tender, and cannot endure hard weather, by some; but my experience hath sound it otherwise. The reason that may be alleadged is this; first, she travels far, as a Stranger, and comes into Countries commonly in the hardest time of the year: next, she is not Hamk, which may be gathered from her high shing, where the Air is much colder than below, and therefore ought to be more hardy: lastly, she mewen with more expedition (if she once begin to cast he Feathers) than other Faulcons do.

They are of shape like other Faulcons; but as mould they are of three forts, large, middle-siz'd, and little; some long-shaped, some short-trussed; some

larger, fome lefs.

They have a fourfold Mail, blank, ruffet, brown

and Turtle.

The goodness of her Shape consists in having he Head plum'd dark or blank, flat on the top with white Wreath environing the same, a large blue bending Beak, wide Nares, a great black full Eye, high stately Neck, large Breast, broad Shoulders, a great Turtle

Turtle-coloured Feather, long Veins and Sails, but flender shaped, a long Train, high Thighs, and white on the Pendant Feathers, a large wide Foot, with slender Stretchers, and Talons tending somewhat to an azure colour.

You may know her in her flight from another by the stirring of her Wings; for the useth no thick stroak; but getteth up to her Mountee leisurely, without any great making out: besides she may be known by her extraordinary large Sails.

The differences between the Haggard and Faulcon-

gentle are thefe :

et

First, the Haggard is larger, being longer-armed with longer Beak and Talons, having a higher Neck,

with a long and fair-feafoned Head.

Secondly, her Beam-feathers in flight are longer than the Faulcon-gentle's, her Train somewhat larger: again, the Haggard hath a flat Thigh, and the other's is round.

Thirdly, the Haggard will lie longer on the Wing. Fourthly, the Haggard at long flight exceeds the Faulcon-gentle; which last flieth with more speed from the Fist than the other. For maintenance of flight and goodness of Wing the Haggard exceeds all other Hawks.

Fifthly, and lastly, the Haggard is more deliberate and advised in her Stooping than the Fanleon-gentle, who is more hot and hastly in her Actions, and missing the Fowl, is apt presently to fly on head at the Check.

Of the BARBARY-FAULCON.

The Barbary, or, as some call her, the Tarters Faulcon, is a Bird seldom sound in any Country, and is called a Passenger as well as the Haggard. They are somewhat lesser than the Tiercel-gentle, and plumined under the Wings, strong-armed, with long Talors and Stretchers.

The Barbary-Faulcon is venturonfly bold, and you may fly her with the Haggard all May and Jun. They are Hawks very flack in mewing at first; but when once they begin, they mew their Feathers very

faft.

They are called Barbary-Faulcons, because they make their passage through that Country and Tunis, when they are more frequently taken than in any other place, namely in the Isles of the Levant, Candy, Cyprus, and Rhodes. In my opinion, she is a Hawk of not much value, and therefore I shall leave her, to speak of another of greater reputation.

Of the GERFAULCON.

The Gerfaulcon is a very fair Hawk, and of great force, especially being mewed: she is strong armed, having long Stretchers and Singles; she is street and hardy of nature, and therefore difficultly to be reclaimed. She is a lovely Bird to behold, larger than any kind of Faulcon: her Eyes and Head are like the Haggard's.

Her Beak is great and bending: the hath large Nares, and a Mail like a Lanner's; her Sails are long and tharp-pointed; her Train much like the Lanner's; the hath a large Foot marble-feared, and is plumed blank, brown, and ruffet. She expects great civility from her Keeper, who must exercise a great deal of patience on her.

The Gerfaulcon's Eyric is in some parts of Prussia, and on the borders of Russia; and some come from the Mountains of Norway, and from Germany: These may

be also called Paffengers.

OTS

By reason of the fierceness and hardiness of this Bird, the is very hardly manned and reclaimed; but being once overcome, the proves an excellent Hawk, and will scarce resuse to fly at any thing.

Their Beaks are blue, so are the Sears of their Legs

and Feet, having Pounces and Talons very long.

These Hawks do not fly the River, but always from

the Fift fly the Herns, Shovelers, &c.

In going up to their Gate they do not hold that course or way which others do; for they climbe up upon the Train when they find any Fowl, and as soon as they have reacht her they pluck her down, if not at the first, yet at the second or third encounter. You must feed and reward them like other Faulcons.

They are very crafty, and covet to keep their Caflings long through floth; therefore instead of Cotton give them a Casting of Tow, and be sure to keep them

tharp fet.

In the Manning and Reclaiming you must by kindness make her gentle and familiar with you. When you have taught her to be lured loose, then learn her to come to the Pelts of Hens, or any other Fowl: but let her not touch any living slesh, for fear that draw her love away from your Voice and Hand.

[d 3]

All this time you must be close by her, about her, and upon your Knees, using your Voice unto her, with her dinner and supper clean drest and washt, giving her still some bits thereof with your hand, that she may the more delight therein. By doing thus frequently you will so win her, that should she be guilty of Carrying, yet by this means she will be reclaimed, and forget that errour.

Let the Offrager have especial care how he make his Gerfaulcon at first, and indeed all other Hanks; for a they are made then, he shall ever find them after; and if they are well made, they are twice made, and for ever made: and therefore have a care of two much precipitation in posting them forward from one lesson to and

ther, before they are perfect in any thing.

If you train her with Doves, the will not carry feather from you. But first before you spring her any Doves, let her kill four or five at Lure close by you foot, having a pair of short Creances at your Lure.

Here note, that the Gerfaulcon is most desired for her high-flying, and is best at Hern and the Mountees and that you may bring her to persection herein, play with your entermewed Gerfaulcon the first year, shewing her all imaginable kindness, and using all possible means to make her love you. When you have brought her forward, give her often Castings to cleanse and purge her, also to prevent the growth of too much glat and fatness in her inward parts, which will indange her life.

Of the SAKER.

He Saker is a Paffenger or Peregrin-Hawk, for her Eyrie hath not been found by any. They are found in the liles of the Levant, Cyprus, Rhodes, and Candia, and in feveral other Islands in the Sea.

She is somewhat larger than the Haggard-faulcon; her Plume is rufty and ragged; the Sear of her foot and Beak like the Lanner; her Pounces are short, however the hath great strength, and is hardy to all kind of She is more disposed to the Field a great deal than to the Brook, and delights to prey on great Fowl, as the Hern, the Goose, &c. As for the Crane, she is not so free to fly at her as the Haggard-faulcon. Saker is good also for leffer Fowl, as Pheasant, Partridge, &c. and is nothing so dainty of her Diet as

Hawks long-winged.

t her

may ently Car.

for.

his

ras

nd if

ver

ipi-

no.

ur

This Hank will make excellent sport with a Kite, who, as foon as the fees the Saker (the Male whereof is called a Sakaret) cast off, immediately betakes her self to, and trusts in the goodness of her Wings, and getteth to her pitch as high as possibly she may, by making many Turns and Wrenches in the Air: which if well observed, together with the variety of contel's and bickerings that are between them, it cannot but be very pleasant and delightful to the beholder. I have known in a clear day and little wind flirring, that both the Saker and Kite have foar'd fo high that the sharpest eye could not discern them, yet hath the Saker in the encounter conquered the Kite, and I have feen her come tumbling down to the ground with a strange precipitancy.

[d 4]

Of all Birds the Saker hath the longest Train. This Hamk will fly at Hern, Kite, Pheasant, Partridge Quail, and sometimes at the Hare; but her chiefest excellency consists in her flying at the Crane. Now because we have but few of them in England, I shall desist from speaking farther of the Saker, onely that the is made to the Lure as other Hamks are: and indeed all Faulcons are made after the same manner, yet are not flown withal alike; for Sakers, Lanners, Gefaulcons; Mylions, and Merlins do not fly the River; if any do, it is very rarely.

Of the LANNER, LANNERET, and TUNISIAN.

The Lanner is a Hawk common in all Countries, especially in France, making her Eyrie on high Trees in Forrests, or on high Cliffs near the Seafide.

She is leffer than the Faulcon-gentle, fair-plumed when an Enter-mewer, and of shorter Talons than any other Faulcon. Those who have the largest and best-seasoned Heads are the best Lanners.

With the Lanner or Lanneret you may fly the River;

and both are very good also for the Land.

They are not very choice in their Food, and can better away with gross Victuals than any other Hink.

Mew'd Lanners are hardly known from the Soarbanks, (and so likewise the Saker) because they do not change their Plume.

You may know the Lanners by these three tokens, I. They are blanker Hawks than any other. 2. They

have

hav

cfs

-

con

feit

Al

ani

an

are

fiz the tre Sa

fo

be

h

k

C

have less Beaks than the rest. 3. And lastly, They are

Of all Hawks there is none to fit for a young Faulconer as the Lanner, because the is not inclined to Surfeits, and feldom melts Greafe by being over-flown.

There are a fort of Lanners which Eyrie in the Alps, having their Heads white and flat aloft, large and black Eyes, slender Nares, short and thick Beaks, and lesser than the Haggard or Faulcon-gentle. Some are indisferent large, some less, and others middle-sized.

Their Mail is marble or russet; their Breast-seathers white and full of russet spots; the points and extremities of their Feathers sull of white drops; their Sails and Train long: they are short Leg'd, with a foot less than that of a Faulcon, marble-seer'd; but being mew'd the Seer changeth to a yellow.

The Lanner never lieth upon the Wing after the hath flown to Mark, but after once stooping the maketh a Point, and then, like the Gosbank, waits the

Fowl.

rain

idge, icfell

Von

Chall

that

in-

yet

.

If the miss at the first down-fall and kill not, the will

consult her advantage to her greatest ease.

These kind of Hawks are highly prized in France and Italy, neither is she despiseable in England; but we look upon them as slothful and hard-metled: and therefore if you intend to have any good of her, keep a strict hand over her; for she is of an ungrateful disposition, and will slight your Kindnesses, contrary to the nature of the Faulcon-gentle, who for one good usage will return a treble courtesse, and the better she is rewarded, the better she will sly.

They are flown at Field or Brook, and are Hanks that maintain long flights, whereby much Fowl is killed (and more than by a better Hank) by reason of

Dogs and Hawking-poles:

I (b

Han

ginr

tel

fw

P

d

b

t

If you will fly with a Lanner, you must keep he very sharp: and because they keep their Casing long, by reason they are hard-metled Hanks, go them therefore hard Castings made of Tow and keep

of Hemp.

In the reclaiming the Lanner and the Lannerer may pains and labour must be taken, and the chiefest thing is to make her well acquainted with the Lure, which must be garnished with hard washt meat, and let he receive the major part of her Reward in bits from your hand: as for the rest of her Training, takether same course which I have directed in the manning and ordering of the Haggard-faulcon. But above all take pains to stay her, and by your utmost Art restrain her from dragging or carrying any thing from you, to which ill quality she is more inclined than any other Haw whatever.

To conclude this Chapter, I come next to the Tonifian-Faulcon, which is not much different in nature from the Lanner, yet somewhat less, but in Foot and Plume much alike. She hath a large round Head, and is more creese than the Lanner, and more heavy and sluggish in her flight.

She is called a Tunifian-faulcon, from Tunis the Metropolis of Barbary, the Country where the usually

makes her Eyrie.

They are excellent Hawks for the River, lying long upon the Wing, and will fly the Field also very well.

They naturally delight to seize upon the Hare, and will strike boldly at her. Much more might be said of her, which I here omit, she being a Hank not very common in England.

Having curforily discourst in as good a method as I could of the seven forts of Faulcons, with their Manning, Reclaiming, Luring, Training, Staying, &.

I shall proceed to give you an account of some other Hanks, which I propounded and promised in the beginning of this Treatise: take them thus in order.

Of the MERLIN.

The Merlin in Plume is much like the Haggard-Faulcon, also in the Sear of the Foot, Beak, and Talons, and is much alike in Conditions.

A Merlin well mann'd, lur'd, and carefully lookt after, will prove an excellent Hank. Their flight is fwifter than any other Hank, and naturally they flie at

Partridge, Thrush, and Lark.

ha rom

4

It is a Bird very busie and unruly, and therefore the Faulconer ought to take special heed and care of them, lest unnaturally they eat off their own Feet and Talons, which several of them have been known to do, and die thereby. For which cause, Merlins ought not to be mew'd or intermew'd, because in the Mew they often spoil themselves,

She is accounted a Hamk of the Fift, and not of the Lure: but to my knowledge the may be brought to

love the Lure very well.

She is very venturous and hardy, which may appear by her flying at Birds as big or bigger than her felf, with such eagerness, as that she will pursue them even into a Town or Village.

If you will flie with a Merlin at a Partridge, chuse the Formal, which is the Female. The Jack is not

worth the Training.

When you have made her to the Lure, and that the will patiently endure the Hood, then make her a Train with a Partridge: if the foot and kill it, reward her

be m

after

if th

they

fore

the

Fal

or

lib

yo

well, suffering her to take her pleasure thereon. At this, fly her at the wild Partridge; if she take or mit at first or second flight, being retrieved by the speniels, feed her upon it with a reasonable Gorge, changing her with your Voice in such manner that she maken it another time. It she prove not hardy at in Train, try her with a second or third: if she prove me then, she will prove nothing worth.

If you fly the Merlin at Lark or Linnet, let it be win a Cast of Merlins at once, because they love to fly in company: besides, it is a greater delight to the Spe. Chators to see them fly together; you shall observe the one climb to the Mountee above the Lark, and the other

to lie low for her best advantage.

When your Merlin is throughly manned and made gentle, (which you must bring to pass according to the method propounded for other Hawke) I say, when the is reclaimed, you may then carry her into the fields; where having found a Lark or Linnet, get as near as you can into the Wind to the Bird; and as soon as the Bird riseth from the ground, unhood your Cast of Merlins and cast them off, and when they have beaten down the Lark, let them feed a little thereon.

There is a fort of Larks which I would not advice the Faulconer to fly at, and they are called Cut-lark, which do not mount as the long-spur'd field-Lark, but fly straight forward, to the endangering the loss of your

Hawk without any passime or pleasure.

Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, and Mylions at Stock or at Large:

and which is the best way of Mewing.

It is the opinion of fome, (but how commendable, I will leave the Reader to judge) that Merlins cannot

be mew'd, or if they be, that they are very rarely good afterwards. Experience tells me the contrary: for if they be hardy, and have flown well in their Soarage, they have proved much better after mewing than before.

The time of mewing for Faulcons should be about the latter end of April; at which time set down your Faulcons, diligently observing whether they be louzy or not: if they are, pepper them, and that will infallibly kill the Lice. You must also scour them, before you cast them into the Mew.

Mewings are of two forts; the one loofe and at

large, the other at the Stock or Stone.

本自多百百百

no

vid

œ.

a

¢

Mewing at large is thus in short: If your Room be large, by divisions you may mew four Faulcons at once, each partition consisting of about twelve foot square, and as much in height, with two Windows two foot broad, the one opening to the North, for the benefit of cold Air; the other to the East, for the beneficial warmth of the Sun. At your East-window let there be a Board two foot broad, even with the bottom of the Window, with a Lath or Ledge round; in the middle set a green Turss, laying good store of Gravel and Stones about it, that your Hawk may take them at her pleasure.

If your Faulcon be a great Bater, let your Chamber be on the ground, which must be covered four fingers thick with gross Sand, and thereon set a Stone somewhat taper, of about a Cubit in height, on which they

love to fit, by reason of its coolness.

Make her two Perches, at each Window one, to recreate her felf as the pleafeth, either with Heat or Cold.

Every week or fortnight fet her a Bason of Water to bathe in; and when she hath bathed therein, take it away the night following.

Your

Your Mew must have a Portal to convey in Hack, a thing whereon the meat is ferved. I not prescribe the manner how to make it, since it

thing fo generally known already.

You ought to keep one fet-hour in feeding; for will the mew fooner and better: when the hath is and gorged her felf, then remove the Stick from Hack on which the meat was fastened, to keep her fine

dragging it into the Mew.

In the opinion of most, it is better Mewing at the Stock or Stone, which must be performed thus: Make choice of a Ground-room remote from noise or concourse of people, and therein set a Table of what length you think is most convenient for the number of your Faulcons, and of about fix foot in breadth, with thin Boards along the fides and ends, about for fingers high from the superficies of the Table, which must stand on Tressels about three foot high from the ground. Let this Table be covered indifferently thick with great Sand mixt with small Pebbles, in the midt whereof place a pyramidal Free-stone about a vard in height, unto which tye your Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Merlin or Mylion: then take a small Cord of the bigness of a Bow-string, and put it through a Ring or Swive, and bind it about the Stone in such fort that the Swivel may go round the Stone without let or hindrance, and thereunto tye the Leafe of your Hawk.

Here note, that if you mew more than one Hamk in one Room, you must set your Stones at that diflance, that when they bate they may not crab one a-

nother.

The reason of placing this Stone is, because the Faulcon delights to fit thereon for its coolness fake, and the little gravelly stones the Hawk frequently swallows to cool her within. The Sand is necessary to preserve their Feathers when they bate, and their Mew-

cts

ets ar

the S

from

fill f

HOW

her :

pre the ets are the more easily cleansed. The little Gord with the Swivel tyed about the Stone, is to keep the Hank from tangling when she bateth, because the Ring will still follow her.

All day let your Hawk frand hooded, onely when you take her on your Fift to feed: at night unhood her; and lest any accident should happen in the night, prejudicial to the Hawk, the Faulconer ought to lie in

the Mew.

in

for

m de

from

t the Take conthat

ber

古古と

Of the HOBBY.

The Hobby is a Harek of the Lure, and not of the Fist, and is a high flier, and is in every respect like the Saker, but that the is a much lesser Bird.

The Hobby hath a blue Beak, but the Seer thereof and Legs are yellow: the Crinets or little Feathers under her Eye are very black; the top of her head is betwixt black and yellow, and the hath two white feams on her Neck; the Plumes under the Gorge and about the Brows, are reddiff, without foot or drop; the Breast-feathers are brown for the most part, yet powdered with white spots; her Back, Train, and Wings are black aloft, having no great scales upon the Legs, unless it be a few beginning behind the three Stretchers and Pounces, which are very large in respect of her short Legs; her Brail-feathers are engouted betwixt red and black; the Pendant-feathers (which are those behind the Thigh) are of a rusty smoaky complexion. The daring Hobby may be well called fo, for the is nimble and light of Wing, and dares encounter Kites, Buzzards, or Crows, and will give fouse for soule, blow for blow, till sometimes they Scize

feize and come tumbling down to the ground both

gether.

They are chiefly for the Lark, which poor little to ture so dreads the fight of a Hobby soaring in the k over her, that she will rather chuse to commit her k to the mercy of Man or Dogs, or to be trampled on Horses, than venture her self into that Element who

the fees her mortal Enemy foaring.

The Hobby makes excellent sport with Nets and Spaniels, which is performed after this manner. The Dogs range the field to spring the Fowl, and the Hobies soar over them aloft in the Air: the silly single fearing a Conspiracy between the Hawks and Dogs to their utter destruction, dare not commit themselve to their Wings, but think it safer to lie close to the ground, and so are taken in the Nets. This sports called Daring.

Of the GOSHAWK.

There are several sorts of Goshawks, and they are different in goodness, force, and hardiness, according to the diversity of their choice in Cawking at which time when Hawks begin to fall to liking, all Birds of Prey do affemble themselves with the Goshawk,

and flock together.

The Female is the best: and although there be some Goshamks which come from Sclavonia, Sardinia, Lombardy, Russia, Puglia, Germany, Armenia, Persia, Green, and Africa; yet there are none better than those which are bred in the North parts of Ireland, as in the Province of Ulster, but more especially in the Gounty of Tyrone.

Take

tion

ftra

of I

fel

fho

or

be

O

fe

\$

Take these Rules as to the goodness of her propor-

tion or shape.

CA

on by

河底

W

rds,

vo the

C

She ought to have a small Head, her Face long and straight, a large Throat, great Eyes, deep set, the Apple of the Eye black, Nares, Ears, Back, and Feet large and blank; a black long Beak, long Neck, big Breast, hard slesh, long Thighs, sleshy, the bone of the Leg and Knee short, long large Pounces and Talons. From the Stern or Train to the Breast forward the ought to grow round: the Feathers of the Thighs towards the Train should be large, and the Train-feathers sliort, soft, and somewhat tending to an Iron Mail. The Brayl-feathers ought to be like those of the Breast, and the Covert-feathers of the Train should be spotted and full of black rundles; but the extremity of every Train-feather should be black streaked.

The fign of force in a Golbank is this: Tye divers of them in several places of one Chamber or Mew, and that Hank that doth slife- and mewt highest and sixthest off from her, is without question the strongest Hank; for the high and far mewting argues a strong

Back.

I might tell you the ill shape of a Goshawk; but since I have declared the good, the bad may be collected from thence: Contraria contrariis dignoscunter. However take this general rule, That Gosbawk that hath pendant Plumes over her Eyes, the whites whereof are waterish and blank, that is red-mail'd or bright tawny, hath the most affured tokens of a Hawk that is ill conditioned.

The Gospank preyeth on the Pheasant, Mallard, Wild-goose, Hare, and Coney; nay, the will venture to scize on a Kid or Goat; which declareth the inestimable courage and valour of this Hank.

She ought to be kept with great care, because the is very choice and dainty, and looks to have a nice hand kept over her.

[e] How

don

How to make the Soar or Haggard-Goshawk

out

ba

nd

3 H

ind

de

Wit

kno

her

ing

wi

he

tw

m

VO

fo

re

af

V

tı

g

i

P

First trim them with Jeffes, Bewets, and Bells, foon as they come to your hands; keep them feels fome time, hooding and unhooding them often, teach ing them to feed on the Fift three or four days, ord they have left their Rammageness and become gentle having fo done, unfeel them by Gandle-light at night causing them to tire or plume upon a Wing or Le of a Pullet ; and be fure to deal gently and mild with them until you have won and throughly manned them; then you may go into some pleasant field and first give them a bit or two hooded on your Fill and the like unhooded, cast them down fair and soft on some Pearch, and make them come from it to your Fift, calling to them with a Faulconer's usual terms; and when they come, feed them, calling all the while in the fame manner to make them acquainted with your voice. The next day you may call them with a Creance at a farther distance, feeding them as before:

When you have thus called your Goshawk abroad three or four days, and that you find her grow cunning, then take her on your Fist, and mount on Hossback, and ride with her an hour or two, unhooding and hooding her sometimes, giving her a bit or twoin sight of your Spaniels, that she may not be afraid of them: this being done, set her on a Tree with a short Greance tied to her Loins, and going half a score yards from her on Horseback, call her to your Fist according to art; if she come, reward her with two or three bits, and cast her up again to the Tree: then throw out a dead Pullet (to which she was used before) about a dozen yards from her; if she sty to it and seize it, let her feed three or four bits upon it; ride

he mean while about her on Horseback, and rate back our Spaniels, because they shall not rebuke her at first, and make her ever after asraid of them: then alight, and gently take her on your Fist, seed her, hood her, and let her plume or tire.

Here note, that the Golhawk is a greater Poulterer, and therefore it would be more requisite to throw out idead Partridge, or one made artificially with its Wing, Tail and Plumage; which will cause her to

know Partridge better, and Poultry less.

How to make a Goshawk fly to the Partridge.

Having manned your Goshamk, go into the field withher, carrying with you a Train-Partridge, and unbooding your Hamk, bear her as gently as you can; and you will do well to let her plume or tire, for that will make

her the more eager.

皇后野子三章

an-

ia,

tly

œ

h

If the Partridge spring, let her sly: if she mark one, two, three, or more on the ground, then go to her and make her take Pearch on some Tree thereby: then if you can retrive the Partridge with your Spaniels, as soon as they spring it you must cry, Homit, homit, and retrive it the second time, crying when it springeth as asoresaid: if your Hamk kill it, feed her upon it.

If it so happen your Spaniels should take it (as it is very frequent for hot Spaniels to light upon the Partridge, being either flown out of breath, or overcharged with sear) then alight from your Horse, and taking it speedily from the Dogs, cast it out to your Hamk crying, Ware Hamk, ware, and let her seed thereon at her pleasure.

After this you must not sly her in two days: for having sed on bloudy meat, she will not so soon be in good case to sly again; for such meat is not so cassly endewed by a Hawk as the Leg of a Chicken or the like.

her

to

Lec

out

her

agi

tric

VOL

har

lo

Ac

YC

th

by

m

CC

H

7 7 6

Using her thus three or four times, the will be a in bloud, and become an excellent Flier at this please

Field flight.

Here note, that you must do at first with her as me other Hamks, that is, seel and watch her, and win he to seed, to the Hood, to the Fist, &c. and then come her to young Partridges till November, at which time both Trees and Fields become bare and empty: the you may enter her to the old Remen, setting her had and eager; if she kill, feed her up with the Partridge three or four times, and this will bring her to perfection.

If your Hank be a good Partridger, let her not he at the Powt or Pheasant, for they fly not so longs Flight as the Partridge; and therefore the Gohank being more greedy of Prey than any other Hank (yet desirous of ease, would always cover short Flights, not caring to hold out: not but that there are some good both for long and short flights, but they are rarely

found.

Besides, you must have a great care in keeping them in good order, with Flying, Bathing, Weathering, Tiring, and Fluming.

How to help a Goshawk that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game.

It is usual for a Golhamk to fly at a Partridge, yet ocither kill it, nor fly it to mark, but to turn Tailu Tail; that is having flown it a Bow-shot or more, she giveth over her Game, and takes a Tree: then must you call in your Spaniels to the Retrieve that way your Hamk flew the Partridge; let the Faulconer draw himself that way also, and carrying with him a quick Partridge, let him cast it out to her, which will make her

her believe it is the same she flew at. When you call it out, cry, Ware Hawk, ware; make her seize it, and ted her upon it: and this will encourage her to fly out her flight another time. If the next time you fly her (which must be the third day) she serve you so again, then must you do as aforesaid with alive Partridge carried about you for that purpose: if she serve you so the third time, I would advise you to rid your hands of her as soon as you can.

How to make a Goshawk fly quickly.

t fly

181

mt.

西山田山

The Golhamk (especially Soars and Niasses) are very loving to and fond of man, and therefore thould be flown with a little more Rammage, else frequently, after two or three throaks with their Wings, they will give over the flight, and return to the Keeper: wherefore you must fly with them as soon as you can. And yet there is an evil which attends this direction, and that is. by flying over-foon you will pull down your Hamk and make her poor, from whence proceeds fearfulness and cowardife. To remedy which, you must give your Hawk some respite, and set her up again before you fly her. There are some Goshawks (but very few.) which will not fly when they are in good plight: then must you bate their flesh, and pinch them with scouring, washt meat, and the like. But the best way of flying such an one is when the is lufty and high: and to adde to her vivacity and courage, let her be fet abroad in the morning an hour or two, when the weather is not very cold; for being to weather'd, when the hath flown a Partridge to the Mark, the will not away until it be retrieved by the Spaniels.

How to fly a Goshawk to the River

in

nu

tv

fu

C

E

1

-

An

A Goshawk (but no Tiercel) may fly the River Mallard, Duck, Goose, or Hern, with other la Water-fowl: She is made for that purpose aftern

First, make her to the Fist, as is prescribed in h making to the Field: then carry her into the without Bells, and with a live Duck, which you me give to one of the company, who must hide himse in some Ditch or Pit with the Duck tied to a Creance: then must you draw near him with your Hank unhow ed on your Fift, and giving him some private notice throw out the Duck, cast off your Hank; and if she the it at the Source, let him reward and feed her with reasonable Gorge: then take her upon your Fift and hood her, permitting her to tire and plume upon the Leg or Wing of the Duck. The third day go again with her into the Field in like manner, or elfe find out some Plash or Pool where Wild-fowl lie, taking the advantage of the rifing Bank : being near the Fowl, k fome of the company raise them up, and your How being unhooded, cast her off; if the kill any of themat Source, make in to her quickly, and cross the Fowls Wings, so that she may foot and plume it at her plafure, rewarding her as before. After this, take her on your Fift, and let her tire and plume the Leg or Wing of the Fowl aforefaid.

When your Goffank is throughly nouzled, and well in bloud, you may fly her twice a day or oftner, rewar

ding her as before.

An excellent way to preserve a Goshawk in the time of her flying, especially in bot weather.

Take a pint of Red-rose-Water, put it into a Bottle, bruise one stick or two of green Liquorish and put in it likewise a little Mace, and the quantity of a Wallnut of Sugar-candy, and draw her meat through it twice or thrice a week, as you shall find occasion: It prevents the Phantass, and several Diseases they are subject to: besides, it gives a huge Breath, and gently secureth her.

How to fly the Wild-goose or Crane with the Golhawk.

Having mann'd your Golhamk, brought her to the Fist, and train'd her with a Goose in the Field, then seek out where Wild-geese, Cranes, or other large Wild-fowl lie: having found them afar off, alight and carry your Hamk unhooded behind your Horse, stalking towards them until you have got pretty nigh them, holding down your Hamk covert under the Horse's Neck or Body, yet so that she may see the Fowl: then you must raise them, and casting off your Hamk, if she kill, reward her. And thus she may kill four or five in a day.

In like manner, you may make her to the Crane, and may stalk to Fowl which lie in Ponds or Pits as

aforesaid.

nce:

e to

ha

Here note, that if you can fly at great, flight the leffer Flights, which will make your Hank the bolder.

How to mew a Goshawk, and draw her out if the Mew, and make her Flying.

Having flown with a Goshamk, Tiercel, Soan, or Haggard till March, give her some good Quarry in her Foot, and having seen her clean from Lice, cut off the Buttons of her Jesses, and throw her into the Mew, which Room should be on the ground, and scituated towards the North, if possible.

O

ti

Let the Pearches therein be lined with Canyas or Cotton; for otherwise by hurting her Foot the may

get the Gout or Pynn.

Let the Mew have also a Window towards the East, and another Northward. There must be also a Bason of Water in the Mew for bathing, which must be shifted every three days. Feed your Hawk with Pigeons, or else with the hot Flesh of Weather-Muston.

About the beginning of October, if you find your Goswark fair mew'd and hard penn'd, then give her Chickens, Lambs-hearts, or Calves-hearts, for about twenty days together, to scour her, and make her slife out the slimy substance and glitt out of her Pannel, and enseam her.

Having done thus, some Evening draw her out of the Mew, and new furnish her with Jesses, Bells, Bewets, and all other things needful for her: then keep her seel'd two or three days, till she will endure the Hood patiently; for mewed Hawks are as impatient

of the Hood as those newly taken.

When you have won her to endure the Hood, then in an Evening by Candle-light you may unfeel her, and the next day shew her the Fish and Glove, making her to tire and plume sooning and evening, giving her sometimes in the morning (when her Gorge is empty) empty) a little Sugar-candy, which will help her in an

excellent manner to endew.

When you find your Gofhank feed eagerly, and that you think in your judgement the is enfeamed, and that you may boldly fly with her, then go with her into the Field; the will then bate, (if empty) and fly of her own accord: if the kill, feed and reward her; but if the fly to the mark with a Partridge, then must you retrive it, and ferve her as afore declared.

Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Falconer in Keeping and Reclaiming a GOSHAWK.

It frequently happens that a Gofbank or Tiercel, where good in their Soarage, become worke after they are mewed: and the reason may be, because she was not cherished nor encouraged, to make her take delight in her Soarage.

For in a manner the major part of a Faulconer's skill confifts in coying and kind usage of his Hawk, so cherishing her that the may take delight in her Flight.

At the first entring of his Hank he ought always to have a Train-Partridge in his Bag, to serve her with when need requires, to purchase her love; and let him take such observations which may keep his Hank always in good order. As first, he must know naturally all Goshamks are full of moist humours, especially in the Head, and therefore let him ply them with Tiring and Pluming morning and evening; for that will open them in the Head, and make them cast water thereat. Let the Goshamk's tiring be a Rum of Beef, a Pinion or the Leg of a Chicken, given by the fire, or in the warm Sun: this not onely opens her Head, but keeps her from stothfulness in good exercise.

Give

Give her every night Cafting of Feathers or Cotton and in the morning mark whether it be wrought round or not, whether fweet or not, whether moift or dr. and of what colour the water is that drops out of the Caffing: by these means he shall know what condition

his Hawk is in.

He also ought to regard her Mewts, to see whether they be clean or not, and give remedies accordingly, He ought also to consider the season; for in cold weather he must set his Hawk in some warm place where fire is made; he must line the Pearch with Canvas or Cotton, and must set it so far from the Wall that the Hawk hurt not her Feathers when she bareth. If the weather be temperate, he may then let her in the Sunthine for an hour or two in the morning.

Let no Hens or Poultry come near the place where your Hank doth Pearch; and in the Spring offer her water every week, or elfe the will foar away from you

when the flieth, and you may go look her.

If your Hank bathe her felf spontaneously in cold weather after her flight, go presently to the next house and weather her with her Back to the fire, and not her Gorge, for that will make her fick: and dry your Hamk if you have carried her in the Rain.

A good Faulconer will always keep his Hawk high and lufty, yet so that she may be always in a condition

to fly best.

Also he must keep his Hawk clean, and her Feathers whole: and if a Feather be broken or bruised, he must presently imp it; and to that end he must have his Imping-needles, his Semond, with other Instruments always in readiness.

The first year it is most requisite to fly your Goshawk to the Field, and not to the Covert; for so they will; learn to hold out, and not turn tail in the midft of their flight: and when they are mewed Hawks, you Give

may

may make them do what you will: and it is better to let her be a little rammage than to be overman-

ned.

Otton.

round

f the

ition

ther

gly.

ere

or

he

he

Her feeding is best on hot meats: and if you would instruct her to kill great Fowl, make her Trains thereof; and if you would have her continue those Flights, never sly her at less, for that will take her off from them and spoil her. If you will make her to sly with a Dog to assist her, then feed your Hamk with great Fowl, and your Dogs with slesh tied under their Wings. If you train your Hamk with them, rewarding her upon the Train, and your Dog with her, this will make them acquainted together.

Thus continue doing till your Dog throughly knows his duty: and be fure to keep your Dog tied up; for if you let him go loofe, it will spoil the best Dog that is: and never give him a reward, but when he maketh in

at fuch Fowls to refcue the Hank.

Call your Goshawk to no other thing than your Fist, and oftentimes spurt good wine on your Goshawks Sears: And note, that in all her Distempers sweet things are best to be administred in her Medicines.

of the SPARROW-HAWK.

The last Hank which we shall treat of, is the Sparrow-hank; of which there are several kinds, and

of different Plumes.

For the kinds, there is the Sclavonian, Calabrian, Corsican, German, Vicentian, and Veronian, Alpisan, Sabbean, and Bergamascan, in the black Vale near the Confines of Valtolina. It is needless to give you a particular account of them.

Their

th

C

0

Their Plumes are different: some are small plumed and blank Hamks, others of a larger Feather, some plumed like the Quail, some brown or Canvas-mail'd, and others have just thirteen Feathers in their Train, the.

To be short, this Character I may justly give the Sparrow-bank in general, that she is in her kind, and for that Game her strength will give her leave to kill, a very good Hank. Besides, he that knows how to man, reclaim, and sly with a Sparrow-bank, may easily know how to keep and deal with all other

Hawks.

And herein lieth an excellency in the Sparrow-bank, the ferves both for Winter and Summer with great pleasure, and will fly at all kind of Game more than the Faulcon. If the Winter-Sparrow-bank prove good, the will kill the Pie, the Chough, the Jay, Wood-cook, Thrush, Black-bird, Felfare, with divers other Birds of the like nature.

How to make a Sparrow-hawk, whether Eyes, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard.

Sparrow-banks are to be considered as all other kinds of Hanks are, according to their age and disposition.

The several kinds of Sparrow-banks may be comprehended under these five heads; the Eyesses or Nyesses, Branchers, Svars, Mem'd, and Haggards.

Eyesses, are mewed in the Wood, and are taken in

the Eyrie.

Branchers, are those which have forsaken the Eyrie, and are fed near it by the old ones on Boughs and Branches.

Sour-banks, are so called, because, having forfaken the

the Eyric, and beginning to prey for themselves, they four up aloft for pleasure.

Men'd Hawks, are such which have once or more

(hifted the Feather,

med

one

il'd.

ain.

the

nd

ill

to

y

1

Lastly, Haggards, are they which prey for themselves,

and do also mew in the Wood or at large.

This division of kindes is not peculiar to the Sparrow-Hank, but common to all: give me leave to run

them over in order as I have fet them down:

For the Eyess or Nyess, (which is of greatest difficulty to bring to any perfection) you must first feed her in some cool Room which hath two Windows, the one to the North, and the other to the East, which must be open, and barred over with Laths, not so wide for a Hawk to get out, or Vermin to come in: strow the Chamber with fresh Leaves, and do in every respect to this Room as I have ordered in a sormer Chapter for the Mewing the Faulcon.

You muit feed your Eyest with Sparrows, young Pigeons, and Sheeps-hearts. Whilst she is very young and little you should cut her meat, or shred it into small pellets, and feed her twice or thrice a day, according as

you find her endew it or put it over.

When the is full fummed and flieth about, then give her whole finall Birds, and fometimes feed her on your Fift, fuffering her to strain and kill the Birds in your hand; and fometimes put live Birds into the Chamber where she is, that the may learn to know to foot and to kill them; and let her feed upon them in your presence; by this course you will not onely neul her, but take her off from that scurvy quality of hiding her Prey when the hath seized it, a natural property belonging to all Eyesses. Likewise every morning go into the Room, call her to your Fist, whistle and use such terms as you would have her hereaster acquainted with. When she hath put forth all her Feathers and is full summed.

fummed, then take her out of the Chamber, and had nish her with Bells, Bewets, Jesses, and Lines.

It will be altogether requisite to seel her at first, that she may the better endure the Hood and handling; and let it be a Ruster-hood that is large and easie, which you must pull off and put on frequently, stroaking her often on the head, till she will stand gently.

In the Evening by Gandle-light unfeel her, giving her formewhat to tire upon, handling and stroaking her Feathers gently, hooding and unhooding her as often

as you think fit. ever aller thew moo

Before I proceed any farther, I shall inform you how to Seel a Hawk after the best manner. Take a Needle threaded with untwifted Thread, and casting your Hank take her by the Beak, and put the Needle through her Eye-lid, not right against the fight of the Eye, but Comewhat nearer the Beak, that The may have liberty to fee backward; and have especial care that you burt not the Web: then put your Needle through the other Eye-lid, drawing the ends of the Thread together, tie them over the Beak, not with a firaight knot, but cut off the Threads near to the end of the knot, and fo twitt them together, that the Eye-lide may be raifed to upwards that the Hank may not fee avall, but as the Thread shall flacken, the shall be able to see backwards only, which is the cause that the Thread is put nearer the Beak. is even or midal years sill to

When your Eyes is well won to the Hood and to the Fift, let her kill small birds thereon; then call her two or three days or longer; till she will come far off; then take a live Pidgeon tied by the Foot with a Creance, and shir it till your Hank will bate at it and seize it, but not far off that you may quickly help her at the sirth, lest the Pidgeon struggling with her she prove too strong, and so discourage your young Hank:

then

the

up

th

21

I

1

then let her plume and foot her, and feed her thereupon, whifiling the while, that the may know it and ther time: then hood her, and let her plume and tire a little.

You may use her to Trains of Chicken and Quail: and when the will feize readily by often Training, ride out with her in the morning into the Fields, where calling your Sparrow-hank to your Fift, and giving her a bit or two, go with your Spaniels to feek some Beavy of young Quails, advancing your Fift aloft, that your Hank may fee them when they spring, flying her at advantage: if the kill reward her, &c. if the miss, serve her with the Train of a Quail.

ood t is

ng

er

Let your Dogs hunt on your right hand when they range, but especially when they quest and call, to the end you may the better cast off your Hawk. When your Hank is throughly entred and well nouzled, you may then hold your hand low, for the will now bate at the Whur: but what soever you do, have a quick eye and a good regard to the Spaniels, not coveting to be too near them, but a little above them, that you may let your Hank fly coalling at the advantage when the Game springeth.

Of the Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, and Haggard Sparrow-hawk.

Having spoken of the first kind of Sparrow-haws, viz. the Eyes, the other four in the Title of this Chapter

must consequently be discoursed of.

I shall give you but few instructions, for in effect the same Precepts that serve for the Eyes will serve also for the Brancher, Soar, Mem'd, and Haggard Hamks; onely this, these four last require not so much pains to be taken to make them know their Game as the Eyes, because because they have been accustomed to prey for these selves.

Above all things, the Faulconer must take them of from their ill custom of carrying, and that may be done by serving them with great Trains, whereby they will learn to abide on the Quarry.

Be very mindful of coying them as much as you can, for they will remember a kindness or injury better

than any other Hank.

If the Hank be newly taken, and will not feed, the rub her Feet with warm flesh, whistling to her, and sometimes putting the flesh unto her Beak: if the will not yet feed, rub her Feet with a live Bird; if at the crying of the Bird the Hank seizeth it with her Feet, it is a signe she will feed; then tear off the Skin and Feathers of the Bird's Breast, and put the Bird's her Beak, and she will cat.

When she will feed upon your whistle and chirk, then hood her with a Ruster-hood, and feed her betimes in the morning; and when she hath endewed, give her a Beaching in the day-time, and every time you hood her, give her a bit or two; at evening give her the Brains of a Hen for her supper: and in every thing else order these Hawks aforesaid, as you do the

Faulcon and the reft.

How to mew Sparrow-hawks.

Some use to put their Sparrow-hawk into the Mew as soon as they leave flying her, cutting off both her Bewets, Lines, and knots of her Jesses, and so leave them in the Mew till they are clean mewed.

If you will have your Sparrow-hawk to fly at Quail, Partridge, or Pheasant-powt, then you must draw her in the beginning of April, and bear her on the Fish till

fhe be clean and throughly enfeamed.

Others

til I

ing

be

foo

and

in ly

fha

W

fee

r

b

k

t

t

Others keep their Sparrow-banks on the Pearch until March, and then throw them into the Mew, pepering them for Lice, if they have any. Her Mew should be a Chamber aloft from the ground, eight or nine foot long, and about fix foot broad: her Windows and Pearches must be like the Gothawks.

Her Mew being thus provided, in May go in to her in an Evening by Candle-light, and taking her up softly, pull out all her Train-feathers one after another: this shall make her mew the faster, especially if you feed her with hot meat and Birds, observing a certain hour to feed her in.

Once in fourteen days fet water before her in the Mew: if you perceive the hath any Feathers or Down which stand staring upon her Back, litting as if the would rouze, then let her water sooner. If you put water by her continually, it delays her Mewing; and to keep it always from her, causeth her to mew her Feathers uncleanly: but water once in a fortnight is the best Medium for her Mewing between those two extreams.

Thus having given you a summary account of most Hawks commonly in use in England, and in most parts of Europe, shewing their Shapes, Complexions, Natures, manner of Manning, Reclaiming, Ordering, Luring, Flying, Mewing, &c. I shall next give you an account of the several Diseases and Maladies they are subject to, with their proper Cures and Remedies: but before I shall enter thereon, give me leave to inform the Ostrager or Faulconer of his necessary duries.

one and pick her fell, and

hen

don

can.

tte

hen

and

Obe at

her

in

10

è.

Others from their Star exchange on the Fray Eurotions, and then throw them into the slow properthen for liter, if they have any, they have their the

The Duty of a Faulconer; with necessary Rules and Observations for him to follow,

A Faulconer ought to confult and confider the quality and mettle of his Hawks, and to know which of them he shall fly with early, and with which

late.

He must be fond of his Hank, patient, and cleans in keeping her from Lice, Mites, and the like Vernish. He must rather keep his Hanks high and full of stell than poor and low, which makes them more subject to infirmities than when they are in very good plight.

Every night after flying, he must give his Hank & string, fometimes Plumage, fometimes Pellets of cotton, and fometimes Physick, as he shall find her different forms.

fed by her Casting or Mewr.

Every night he must make the place very clean under her Pearch, that he may know by her Casting whe ther the Hawk stands in need of Scourings upwards of

downwards.

Let him remember every Evening to weather his Hawk, excepting such days wherein the hath bathed; after which, in the Evening the should be put into a warm Room on a Pearch with a Candle burning by her, where she must sit unhooded, if she be not rammage, to the intent she prune and pick her self, and rejoyce by enoiling her self after bathing: and in the morning he ought to weather her, and let her cast, if she hath not done it already, keeping her still hooded till he carry her to the field.

In

her giv

car

gro

in

Ha

ter

of 1

of :

tur

Co

gro

zin

the

Fa

M

In feeding his Hank he must have a care of feeding her with two forts of meat at one time; and what he

giveth her must be very sweet.

If he have an occasion to go abroad, let him have a care that he pearch not his Hawk too high from the ground, for fear of bating and hanging by the Heels,

whereby the may spoil her felf.

He ought to carry to the Field with him Mumity in powder, with other Medicines; for frequently the Hank meets with many accidents, as bruiles at encounters, See neither must be forget to carry with him any

of his necessary Hawking-implements.

Lastly, he must be able to make his Lures, Hoods of all sorts, Jesses, Bewets, and other needful Furniture for his Hawk: neither must he be without his Coping-Irons to cope his Hawk's Beak, if it be overgrown, and to cope her Pounces and Talons, as need shall require: neither must he be without his Cauterting-Irons.

Let these Instructions suffice, I being willing to leave the rest to the care and observation of the ingenious

To I Trinds how by in victor

Faulconer.

the

ow

of Diseases and dangerous Accidents incident to HAWKS, and their feveral Cures.

IT is necessary for a skilful Faulconer not onely to know how to Man, Reclaim, Keep, Fly, Imp, and Mew his Hanks, with other things pertinent to that purpose; but also to know their Diseases, with the proper Cures of them, and other Accidents frequently

[f 2]

th

TO

fh

C2

W

it

to

ifh

di

me

he

on

wi

Sci

fcr be

in

m

C

TO

fli

by is,

dit

mi

if

befalling Hawks, both in their Fights and other

Ways.

Before we shall characterize their Maladies and particle Rules for their Cures, it will not be irrequisited tell you that Hawks, as well as men, (which seems for what strange) have four Complexions, the true in cators of their natures: and as in man his nature Complection and Constitution is known by his state to it. The Temperament and natural Disposition of Hawk by her Coat and Plume. This opinion has not been onely averr'd by the Ancients, but confirm by the modern experience of the Skilful in the note Art of Hawking. Take it in this manner.

Faulcons that are black are Melancholick, and are to be physicked with hot and moist Medicines, becaute their Complexion is cold and dry; for which purpose Aloes, Pepper, Cocks-flesh, Pigeons, Sparrows, Gotto

flesh, and the like, are very good.

Faulcons blank are Phlegmatick, and must have Phfick hot and dry, because Phlegm is cold and most to which purpose Cinamon, Cloves, Cardamonus, Goats flesh, Choughs, &c. are very good.

Faulcons Ruffet are Sanguine and Cholerick indifferently mix'd, and their Physick must be cold, moderately moist and dry, as Myrtles, Cassia-fissula, Tamerinds, Vinegar, Lambs-sich, and Pullets.

Thus much for the Complexions: Now for the

Difeases and their Cures.

Of Castings, and Mewtings, either good or bal according to their several Complexions and Smells.

Castings are of two forts, Plumage, or Cotton: the latter is most commonly given in Pellets, which must be about the bigness of an Hazle-nut, made of fine soft

white Cotton: after the hath supp'd you must convey

this into her Gorge.

interest of the second

ne h

auk

pole vate

hy.

om,

ffe. de-

na-

the

be

ft

In the morning diligently observe how she hath rolled and east it, whereby you shall know whether she be in a bad or good condition: for example, if the east it round, white, not slinking, nor very most or waterish, you may conclude her sound; but if she roll it not well, but cast it long, with properties contrary to the former, then she is unsound and full of Diseases.

Besides, if her Casting be either black green, yellowish, slimy, or stinking, it denotes your Hank to be diseased. The former Casting is remedied by hot meats; the latter by seeding her well, and washing her meats in cool water, as of Endive, &c. and give her one or two Castings of Cotton, incorporating therewith Incense and Mummy. But if the continue notwithstanding in this condition, give her an upward Scowring made thus: Take Aloes pulverized one feruple, powder of Clove sour grains, powder of Cubebs three grains; incorporate these, and wrap them in Cotton, and give it your Hank empty, having no meat in her Pannel.

Casting of Plumage is to be observed as the former Casting: that is, if in the morning you find them round and not stinking, it is a good signe; but if long, slimy, with indigested stesh sticking to the same, and having an ill scent, it is very bad. Here note, that by how much the more sweet or stinking the Casting is, by so much is the Hawk in a better or worse con-

dition.

Mewis must be observed as well as Castings, in this manner: If the Mewt be white, not very thick nor clear, having no black spot in it, or but very little, it is a signe of the healthy constitution of the Hawk; but if it be white and very thick in the middle, though it.

[£3]

n

th

ti

is

ti

0

h

doth not import fickness, yet it sheweth her to be gross and over-full of Grease; which you must reme by giving her moist meats, as the Heart of a Case Lamb, &c. and for two mornings after give her so Sugar-candy, or else the Gut of a Chicken well was and fill'd with Oyl-Olive: either of these will scour he and make her to slife freely.

It is a very bad and mortal figne, to fee your Head Mewt full of variety of colours: therefore you man speedily prevent ensuing mischies by giving her Munrhy purified and beaten to powder, wrapping it in Co-

ton.

If the Mewt be more yellow then white, then don fhe abound with Choler proceeding from great Flight in hot weather, also from much Bating. This is remedied by washing her meat in Bugloss, Endive, Bong, and such-like cold Waters, wringing the said meat at

ter you have so washed it.

The black Mewt is a most deadly signe, and is it continue four days the will peck over the Pearch and day If she mewt so but once, there is no great danger, sort proceeds either from the Blood or Guts of the Fowling tiring, or else from being gorged with filthy meats: in this case give her good warm meat and Cotton-casting with the powder of Cloves, Nutmes, and Ginger, or

Mummy alone.

If the Mewt be green, it is a bad figne, and denote her troubled with an infected and corrupt Liver, or with fome Apostume, unless the be a Rammage-Hard, and then that figne holds not good. Her cure is, by feeding her with meat powdered with Mummy; if the will not take it with her Food, then give it her in a Scowring or Casting: but if this ill-colour'd Mewting continue still, then give her a Scowring of Agarick, and after that another of Incense pulverized to comfort her.

The dark sanguine Mewt with a black in it is the most deadly signe of all, and differs but little, if any thing, from the former black Mewt. A Hawk mewting after this manner is irrecoverable, and therefore it is needless to prescribe a Cure.

Laffly, the gray Mewt like four Milk, is a mortal

token, yet curable, as shall be shewn hereafter.

Thus you fee how requisite it is for a Faulconer to observe diligently every morning his Hawk's Castings and Mewtings, that knowing thereby their Maladies, he may timely finde out their Remedies. Let us now proceed to their particular Diseases.

Of the Cataract.

The Catarati in the Eyes of a Hawk, is a malady not eafily removed, and fometimes incurable, when it is too thick and of a long continuance.

It proceedeth from gross Humours in the Head, which frequently do not onely dim, but extinguish the fight: and sometimes the Hood is the cause of this mis-

chief.

alf of the walk

ur he

Lawf mut Mum Cot-

doth

me-

2gc,

af.

on

dia

rit

in

ıg,

01

S

or &

Ŋ

The cure must be effected by Scowring her two or three days with Aloes or Agarick: then take the powder of washt Aloes finely beaten one scruple, and two scruples of Sugar-candy; mingle these together, and with a Quill blow it into your Hawk's Eye afflicted as aforesaid three or four times a day. This is the gentlest and most Soveraign Medicine of any yet I have tried. But if this will not do, you must use stronger Medicines, as the juice of Celandine-roots, bathing their eyes often with warm Rose-water wherein hath been boil'd the seeds of Fenugreek.

Of the Pantas or Asthma.

The Pantas is a dangerous Distemper, and sew Hame escape which are afflicted therewith. It happens who the Lungs are as it were so baked by excessive hear that the Hamk cannot draw her breath, and who drawn, cannot well emit it again. You may judge of the beginning of this Distemper by the Hamk's the bouring much in the Pannel, moving her Train of ten up and down at each motion of her Pannel; and she cannot many times mewt or slife, or if she do, she drops it fast by her. It is known likewise by your

Hawk's frequent opening her Clap and Beak.

The best Remedy is, to scour your Hawk with good Oyl-Olive well washed in feveral Waters till it become clear and white, which you must do after this manner: Take an earthen Pot with a small hole in the bottom thereof, which you must stop with your Finger; then pour therein your Oyl with a quantity of Water, and coil thefe together with a Spoon till the Water grow darkish; after which remove your Finger, and the Water will run out, but the Oyl remain behind floating on the top; thus do seven or eight times, till you have throughly purified the Oyl: Then take a Sheep's Gut above an Inch long for a Faulcon and Golhawk, but of less length for leffer Hawks, and till it with this Oyl, and taften it with Thread at both ends. Your Hawk having first cast, convey this Gut into her Throat, holding her on the Fift till the make a Mewt; an hour after the hath done mewting feed her with a Call's Heart or a Pullet's Leg, giving her every third or fourth day a Cotton caiting with Cubebs and Cloves. I shall onely adde one Receipt more for the Pantas or Althma, and that is the Cyl of sweet Almonds poured into a washt Chicken's Gut, and given

the Hank; which is of great efficacy in the cure of this Difeafe.

Of Worms.

There are a fort of Worms an Inch long, which frequently afflict Hawks, proceeding from groß and viscous Humours in the Bowels, occasioned through want of natural heat and ill digestion.

You may know when the is troubled with them by her casting her Gorge, her stinking Breath, her trembling and writhing her Train, her croaking in the night, her offering with her Beak at her Breast or Pan-

nel, and by her Mewt being small and unclean.

ind The

UF

Q

You may cure her of them with a Scowring of washt Aloes, Hepatick, Mustard-seed, and Agarick, of each an equal quantity; or the powder of Harts-horn dried; or lastly, a Scowring of white Dittander, Aloes, Hepatick washt four or five times, Gubebs, and a little Saffron wrapt in some stell, to cause her to take it the better.

Cf the Filanders.

There are several forts of Filanders, but I shall speak but of one sticking to the Reins. They are Worms as small as a Thread, and about an Inch long, and lie wrapt up in a thin Skin or Net pear the Reins of a

Hawk, apart from either Gut or Gorge.

You shall know when your Hawk is troubled with them, by her poverty, by ruffling her Train, by straining the Fist or Pearch with her Pounces, and lastly, by croaking in the night when the Filanders prick her. You must remedy this Malady betimes, before these Worms have enlarged themselves from their proper station, roving elsewhere to your Hawk's ruine and destruction.

Impostumes from their corruption, being incapable pass away with the Hamk's Mewt; but onely supplied them, that they may be offensive but seldom; and that is done thus: Take a head of Garlick, taking away the outmost rinder; then with a Bodkin heated in the fire, make holes in some Cloves, then steep them in Oyl three days, and after this give her one of the Clove down her Throat, and for forty days after the will not be troubled with the Filanders. Wherefore a Faultonier, will shew himself prudent, if, seeing his Hamk low and poor, he give her once a month a Clove of this Garlick for prevention of the Filanders.

Another approved Medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks.

Take balf a dozen Cloves of Garlick, boil them in Milk until they, are very tender, then take them out and dry the Milk out of them; then put them into a spoonful of the best Oyl of Olives you can get, and when the hath cast, in the morning give these to your Hank, feed her not in two hours after, and be sure it be warm meat, and not much, and keep her warm that day for sear of taking cold; give her the Oyl with the Garlick: they must steep all night.

Of Hawks Lice.

These Lice do most insest the Head, the Ply of a Hawk's Wings, and her Train. In the Winter you may kill them thus: Take two drams of Pepper beaten to powder, and mingle it with warm Water, and with this Lotion wash the places insested with these Lice or Mites: then set your Hawk on a Pearch with her

care

blen

upifie

that

Way

the in

DVes

pot

his

her Back and Train against the Suo; then hold in your hand a small Stick about a handful long, with a piece of soft Wax at the end of it, and with that (whilst the Hank is weathering her self) take away those Vermin crawling upon the Feathers. You may do well to adde to the Pepper and Water some Stavesacre.

In the Summer-time you may kill the Lice with Auripigmentum beaten to powder, and frowed on the places where they lie.

A safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks.

Mail your Hawk in a piece of Cotton, if not in fome Woollen-Gloath, and put between the Head and her Hood a little Wooll or Cotton: then take a Pipe of Tobacco, and, putting the little end in at the Tream, blow the Smoak, and what Lice escape killing, will creep into the Cloath. This is a certain way.

How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health, good plight, and liking.

In the first place, never give them a great Gorge, especially of gross meats, as Beef, Pork, and such as are hard to be endewed and put over.

Secondly, never feed them with the flesh of any Beast that hath lately gone to Rut; for that will insensibly destroy them.

Thirdly, if you are conftrained to give your Hank gross food, let it be well soaked first in clean Water, and afterwards sufficiently wrung; in Summer with cold Water, in Winter with luke-warm Water.

Ever

Ever observe to reward your Hanks with some good live meat, or else they will be brought too low: however, the serving them with washt meats is the way to

keep them in health.

I shall conclude how to keep Hanks in perfect health with this most excellent Receipt. Take Germander, Pelamountain, Basil, Grummel-seed, and Broom-slowers, of each half an ounce; Hyssop, Sassifras, Polypodium, and Horse-mints, of each a quarter of an ounce, and the like of Nutmegs; Cubebs, Borage, Mummy, Mugwort, Sage, and the four kinds of Mirobolans, of each half an ounce; of Aloes Succotrine the fifth part of an ounce, and of Sasson one whole ounce. All these you must pulverize, and every eighth or twelfth day give your Hanks the quantity of a Bean thereof with their meat. If they will not take it so, put it into a Hens Gut tied at both ends, and let him stand empty an hour after.

Of the Formica.

This is a Differnper which commonly seizeth on the Horn of Hanks Beaks, which will eat the Beak away; and this is occasioned by a Worm, as most men are of opinion.

You may perceive it by this; the Beak will grow rug-

ged, and it will begin to separate from the Head.

To remedy this Malady, you must take the Gall of a Bull, and break it into a Dish, and adde thereto the powder of Aloes-Succatrine: mingle these well together, and anoint the Clap or Beak of your Hawk therewith, and the very place where the Formica grows, twice a day; but touch not her Eyes or Nares: continue thus doing till your Hawk be perfectly cured, and bathe her with Orpiment and Pepper to keep her from other Vermin.

Of the Frownce.

300d

y to

lth

er.

75,

m,

The Fromnee proceedeth from moist and cold Humours which descend from the Hamk's Head to the Palate and root of the Tongue, by means whereof they lose their appetite, and cannot close their Clap. This by some is called the Eagles-bane; for the seldom dieth of age, but of the over-growing of her Beak.

You may know if your Hank be troubled with this Distemper, by opening her Beak, and seeing whether her Tongue be swoln or no: if it be, she hath it.

There are several ways to cure this Distemper, but the best that ever yet I could find for it, is, onely to

take the powder of Alume reduced to a Salve with firong wine-vinegar, and walli the Hank's Mouth therewith.

To cure the dry Frownce.

Take a Quill and cut it in the shape of a Pen, and at the other end tie a fine little Rag; with one end scrape off the white Skin which you will see in the Mouth or Throat of your Hawk until it bleedeth: then with the other end wash it with the juice of Lemon or White-wine-Vinegar very clean; then take a little burnt Alume, and some of a Shoe-soal burnt upon Wood-coals and beaten to powder; mix them, and lay them on the place or places; but let your Hawk have no meat above, nor be ready to be sed: by this I have cured many.

Of the Pip.

The Pip frequently troubleth Hawks, as it doth Chickens, and proceedeth from cold and moistness of the

the Head, or from feeding on groß meat not well walk in warm Water in the Winter, and cold Water in the Summer.

The Symptoms of this Diffemper are the Hawks frequent Spitting and making a noise twice or thrice in

her Sniring.

For the Cure hereof, you must cast your Hawk gent. ly, and look upon the tip of her Tongue, and if you find the Pip there, you must scour her with a Pill made of Agarick and Hiera piera given two or three days together with her Calling at night; this will cleanse her Head, and the sooner if the be made to tire against the Sun in the Morning; Then bind a little Cotton to the end of a Stick, and dipping it in good Role-water walh her Tongue therewith: after this anoint it three or four days with Oyl of fweet Almonds and Oyl - olive well washed as aforesaid. done, you will find the Pipall white and foft: then take an Awl, and with the point thereof lift up the Pip foftly, and remove it, as Women pip ther Chickens, but remove it not till it be throughly ripe; and wet her Tongue and Palate twice or thrice a day with the aforefaid Oyl, till the be throughly cured.

How to remedy that Hawk which Endeweth not, nor Putteth over as five should do.

This happens either by being foul within, or by a Surfeit; or elfe when she was low and poor her Keeper over-gorged her, by being too hastly to set her up, and she being weak was not able to put over and endew, and surfeited thereupon.

The Cure whereof is this: You must feed her with light meats, and a little at once, as with young Rats and

and

and

oth

yell

YOU

her

ni

ho

E

(

Wallt

i the

DE's

nt.

You

Pill

ree

re

le

and Mice, Chickler's or Matton dipt in Costs milk of otherwises of give her a quarter of a Cotge of the yelk of an Egg, white react to an andreas were a milk of an Egg, white react to an andreas were a milk of an Egg, white react to an andreas were a milk of an Egg, white react to a milk of an entire were an analysis of the control of

If you feed her with the flesh of any living Fowl, first steep it well in the blood of the same Fowl to shall your Hank mount her sich apace; if you also scout her with Pills thade of Lard, Marrow of Beef, Sugar and Saffron mix'd together, and given her three mornings together, giving her also a reasonable Gorge two hours after.

How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that hath lost her Appetite, without bringing her low.

A Hawk may lofe her Appetite by taking roo great Gorges in the Evening, which flie cannot well endew; or by being foul in the Pannel; or fometimes by Colds.

To remedy which, take Aloes Succernia, boil'd Sugar, and Beef marrow, of each alike, onely less of the Aloes; incorporare these, and make them into Balls or Pills as big as Beans, and give of them to your Hank, and hold her in the Sun till the hath east up the filth and slime within her; then feed her not till noon, at which time give her good meable and three days after for the same Disease it is good timing on Stockidoves, simal Birds, Rats or Mice?

How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor.

The Poverty of a Hawk happens feveral ways: either by the ignorance of the Faultoner of fome latent lurking Differnper; or by her foaring away, and to being lost four or five days, in which time, finding little or no Prey, the becomes poor and lean.

To fet her up you must seed her, a little at once, and often, with good meat and of light digestion, as small

Birds

Gw

Bu

mi

A

te

to

W

6

1

Birds, Rats, Mice, cre. Or thus: take two spoons of Honey, sour of fresh Butter, and boil them togethein a new earthen pot of Water; then take Pork washed, and steep it in that Water, giving your Hone a reasonable Gorge thereof twice a day, warming the said Water when you intend to feed your Hawk; an get fome Snails that breed in running Waters, and give them her in the morning, and they will not onely sour away the gross slimp, humours which are within, but a so nourish her exceedingly.

How to remedy a Hawk that is flothful,

A Hawk frequently hath no minde to fly, either by reason of her ill keeping, that is, when the is kept by those who know not how to give her her Rights a bouzing, bathing, on or because the Hawk is too high and full of greate, or too poor and low; by the first becomes proud and coy, and by the latter so weakther the wants strength and spirit to perform it.

For the curing of which Distemper, she ought to be thoroughly viewed by some skilful Faulconer, by whom such Remedies should be administred to her as are needful for her: but, above all, there is nothing like giving her in a morning three or four Pills of Celandine well

washt.

Of Swoln Feet in a Hawk.

Hamke have Swelling in their Feet upon several accounts: sometimes by chasing their Feet in slying their Prey, striking it, and taking cold thereupon; sometimes for want of rolling or lining the Pearch with some soft warm cloath; or else through gross humours and soulness within, which through exercise drop down into their Feet, and so cause them to swell: lastly, this Swelling

Diferes and Cures of hawks.

fwelling happens by pricks when they fly fiercely into Bulbes after Game.

For a Remedy, you must focur your Hawk three mornings together with the pills of Lard, Marrow, Sugar and Saffron, and fet her in the Sun: two days after this feed her with good meat: then take Bole-Armoniack, and half the quantity of Sanguis Draco-his; and having made them into powder, temper them well together with the White of an Egg and Rose-water, and anoint her Feet twice a day three or four days together, setting her on some Gloth to keep her Feet warm.

How to Scour Hawks before you cast them into the Mew.

When Mewing-time is come, you must foour and cleanse your Hawks; for in luring and flying-time by foul feeding they ingender Filanders and other Disternances, whereof they die for want of timely care and cure.

When you fet down your Hawk use the same as you find Page 246, which will not only kill the Worm, but

scour a Hawk also.

The best way is, (when you mean to cast a Hawk into the Mew) first to scour her well according to former directions, to cope her, and set her up well in stell, to discharge her as near as you can of all Diseases, also to free her from Mites and Lice, to set her Water, sometimes to feed her with young Rats, Mice, Dogs-slesh, Pigeons, Rabbets, and now and then with some liquid thing and meats laxative.

Take notice of this special Observation: A Haggard is not to be cast in loose to the Mew, but is to be mewed on the Fist; for otherwise she will become too coy and strange: and if she fall to bating

LBJ

and heating her felf for heat, then must you head he up, or hefpout her with cold water, which is the must

aft way to make her leave Bating.

You must continue her on the Fist till she beginn shed her Feathers; then set her down, and the her to stone or Pearch, as you do the rest; and after he hath mewed and comes to sty, then let her stand on a Block or Billet cased or solled. In the same manner mew Goshawks, Tierces, and Sparrow-hawks; only they will not be born on the Fist, but be at liberty in the Mew, andvery cleanly served.

Fifteen or twenty days before you draw your Have out of the Mew, you must begin to abate her of her diet, the sooner and better to enseam her. And sorget not to seed her with washed meat, which will prevent

al

f

h

n

t

An

many dangers that may follow.

Many more Diseases there are incident, and Accidents happening to Hawks, of which with their Outs there are large Discourses written in Italian, Freed, and English, and therefore I thought fit to insert in this place no other Maladies than what most usually occur: If you desire to be further satisfied, I shall infer you to those larger and (it may be) iess used Volumes.

entiment of the Heat and the organism

State 34 Edwis err. 22. A foatht tellien up mall be beite **Bartida na** being after 1220 dannei **Bartida na**

Of fuch : Tonical at 120

STATUTE-LAWS

As concern

HAWKING

Tac. 11 H. 7. cap. 17. Mone chall take out of the Messany Eggs of Faulcon, God book, Lanner, 02 Swan, in pain of a year and a days imprisonment, and to incur a fine at the kings pleasure, to be vivided betwirt the King and the owner of the Grand where the Eggs shall be so taken.

11. Mone hall bare any bawk of English weed called an Eyels, Goshawk, Castel Lanner, Lanneret, of Faulcon, in pain to coffett

the fame to the King.

11 I. De that brings an Eyels from beyond the Sea, shall have a Certificate under the Customers Seal where he lands, or if out of Scotland, then under the Seal of the Lord-Marden or his Lieutenant, testifying that she is a forcein bawk, upon the like pain of forfeiting the Dawk.

1 V. Mone thall take or fear away any of the Pawks abovefaid from their Coverts where they use to breed, in pain of 101. to be recovered before Justices of Peace, and divided betwirt the King and the Profecu-

toz.

-

et

Stat. 34 Edw. 3. cap. 22. A Pawk taken we thall be velivered to the Sheriff, who after Proclamation made in the Yarket-Count of the County (if challenged) thall believe

her to the right owner.

e en a crestitut de antice en en

and the control of the country and

To san seed on Arb Errange vier in ord In Joran Bunnal III a. (Ins 2008 to Errange

man, and be not challenged within four Boneths, the Sherist chall vetain her, satisfying the party for taking her; but if by a man of Clate, who may conveniently keep ah Dawk, the Sherist chall restore her to him again, he answering for the charge of keeping her.

pately, he shall answer the value thereof to the owner, and suffer two years impilenments and in case he be not able to answer the value, he shall remain in 1921son a longer

time.

Stat. 37 Edw. 3. cap. 19. He that steals am carries away an Dawk, not observing the Ordinance of 34 Edw. 3. 22. shall be deemed Felon.

FINIS.

....

THE

GENTLEMAN's Recreation:

tup fick Ding

はいは

opm p

Containing

DIRECT RULES

For the Famous Game of

FOWLING:

With Instructions for the taking of all manner of LAND and WATER-FOWL.

Whether by Fow Ling-PIECE, NET, ENGINE, or otherways,

With a short Account of

Singing-Birds.

To which is added

An Abstract of all Statute or Penal-Laws relating to that curious Art.

The Third Part.

London: Printed by J. C. and F. C. for N. C.

A H ME

CHNTLLEMAN'S

Tinil

DIRECT RULES

30 m 0 2

DIMINION G

With I fon diens for the taking of all and watermanner of LAND and water WATERLOWE.

While is Fownit NG-PIECE, NET.

With a thorry Account of

Singing-Birds.

To which is added

An Abstract of all Statute or Penal-

the Chica hart

Level is The alloy F. C. will C. for M. G.



W as I ki



a live

OF

FOWLING:

OR,

The complete Art and Secrets of FOWLING, either by Water or by Land, according to ancient and modern Experience.

What Fowling is; with the nature and diversity of all manner of Fowl.

o W L b N G is used two manner of ways:
either by Enchantment, or Enticement; by winning or wooling the Fowl unto you by Pipe,
Whistle, or Call; or else by Engine, which unawares
surprize them.

Fowl are of divers forts, which alter in their nature as their Feathers; but by reason of their multiplicity, I shall for brevity-sake distinguish them opely into two

kinds, Land and Water-Fowl.

84]

They

The Water-fowl are so called from the natural de light they still take in and about the Water, gathein

from thence all their food and nutriment.

Here note, that Water-fowl are in their own name the subtilest and wisest of Birds, and most careful in their own safety: Hence they have been formerly compared to an orderly and well-governed Camp, having Scouts on land afar off, Courts of Guards, Sentinels, and all forts of other watchful Officers surrounding the body, to give an alarm on any approach of seeming date.

ger.

For in your observation you may take notice, the there will be ever some straggling Fowl, which lies loof from the greater number, which still call suffice. Now it is the nature of Water-sowl to sly in great Flocks, having always a regard to the general safety so that if you see a single Fowl, or a couple sly together, you may imagine they have been somewhere affrighted from the rest by some sudden amazement or apprehension of danger: but so naturally are they inclined to society, that they seldom leave wing till the meet together again. And this is occasioned not only by the near approach of men, but also by the beating of Haggards on the Rivers, as also by the appearance of the very bold Buzzard and Ring-tail.

Of Water-fowl there are two forts; such as live of the water, and such as live on the water: the one taking their suftenance from the water without swimming thereon; but wading and diving for it with their long Legs; The other are Web-footed and swim, as the

Swan, Goofe, Mallard, &c.

rii I

unt

For

den

but

lik

gin

tha

h

1

Of the Haunts of Fowl.

He thing of greatest moment for the Fowler to understand, is the Haunts of Fowl. In order thereunto you are to understand, that all forts of greater Fowl, viz. those who divide the foot, have their residence by the edge of Rivers that are shallow, Brooks, and Plashes of water: and these appear not in Flocks, but you shall see here one single, there a couple, and the like; which makes them difficult to be taken by Engine or Device; but they are the best slights for Hawke that can be imagined.

Likewise these Fowl delight in low and boggy places; and the more sedgie, marish and rotten such grounds are, the fitter they are for the haunting of these

Fowlers is trader of the

Ctin

ving and bo

lan.

hat

A.

2

They love also the dry parts of drowned Fens, which are overgrown with tall and long Rushes, Reeds, and Sedges.

Lastly, they delight in half-drowned Moors, or the hollow vales of Downs, Heaths, or Plains, where there is thelter either of Hedges, Hills, Tusts of Bushes or

Trees, where they may lurk obscurely.

Now the leffer Fowl, which are Web-footed, haint continually drowned Fens, where they may have continually plenty of Water; and may swim undisturbed by man or beast. Their haunt is likewise in the main Streams of Rivers, where the Current is swiftest and least subject to freez; and the broader and deeper such Rivers are, the greater delight these Fowl take therein, the Wild-goose and Barnacle excepted, who abide no Waters above their sounding; for when they cannot reach the Ouze, they instantly remove thence, seeking out more shallow places.

These two last named are infinitely delighted green Winter-corn, and therefore you shall fee the evermore where fuch Grain is fown, especially if ends of the Lands have much water about them.

Likewise these smaller Fowl do very much frem Small Brooks, Rivers, Ponds, drowned Meadows & flures, Moors, Plathes, Meres, Loughs, and Lakes, d cially if well-flored with Islands unfrequented, and fornished with Shrubs, Bushes, Reeds, Dec. and the they will breed there, and frequent fuch places Summer and Winter is sland one and sel held work

The readiest way of taking great Faul with NETS.

es which makes them efficule to be rolen by

the fitter they are rin the He first thing you are to consider, is the make of your Nets, which must be of the best Pit. thread, with great and large Melless at least two he ches from point to point : for the larger the Mele are. (So that the Fowl cannot creep through, then) the better it is for they more certainly intended them.

Let not your Nets be above two factions deep, and fix in length, which is the greatest proportion that i man is able to overthrow. Verge your Net on each fide with very firong Cord, and extendin at each end

upon long Poles made for that purpofessett

Having thus your Nets in readiness, let the Fouler observe the haunts of Fowl, that is to fay, their More ning and Evening feedings, coming at least two hours before those seasons; then spreading his Net smooth and flat upon the ground, flaking the two lower ends firm thereon, let the upper ends fland extended upon the long Cord, the farther end thereof being flaked

fast

GA d

Net :

france

the I

end !

Gth

utter

artif

like

For

tha

fly

for

wi do

for

N

9 0

fast down to the Earth two or three fathom from the Net; and let the stake which staketh down the Cord stand in a direct and even line with the lower Verge of the Net, the distance still observed: then the other end of the Cord, which must be at least ten or twelve sthom long, the Fowler shall hold in his hand at the uttermost distance aforesaid, where he shall make some artissicial shelter either of Grass, Sods, Earth, or such like matter, whereby he may lie out of the sight of the Fowl.

Observe to let the Net lie so ready for the Game, that upon the least pull it may rise from the Earth and

fly over.

Strew over all your Net, as it lies upon the ground, fome Grass, that you may hide it from the Fowl. It will not be amils (but altogether requilite) to stake down near your Net a live Hern, or some other Fowl formerly taken, for a Stale. When you observe a competent number of Fowl come within the verge of your Net, then draw your Cord suddenly, and so cast the Net over them: Continue thus doing till the Sun be near an hour high, and no longer; for then their seeding is over for that time; and so do at Evening from about Sun-set till Twilight, By this means you may not only take great quantities of larger Wild-sowl, but also Plover, which takes his sood as much from Land as Water.

How to take Small Water-fowl with Nets.

Let your Nets be made of the smallest and strongest packthread, and the Meshes nothing near so big as those for the greater Fowl, about two foot and a half or three foot deep; line these Nets on both sides with false Nets, every Mesh being about a foot and

a half square each way, that as the Fowl strikethed ther through them or against them, so the smaller he may pass through the great Melhes, and so streights

and entangle the Fowl.

These Nets you must pitch for the Evening-flight Fowl before Sun-set, staking them down on each sided the River about half a foot within the water, the lowe side of the Net being so plumb'd that it may sink so se and no farther: Let the upper side of the Net be paced slantwise, shoaling against the water, yet not touching the water by near two soot; and let the string which support this upper side of the Net be fastned to small yielding Sticks prickt in the Bank, which as the Fowl strikes may give siberty to the Net to run and entangle them. Thus place several of these Nets over divers parts of the River, about twelvescore one from another, or as the River or Brook shall give seave; and be considered, if any Fowl come on the River that night, you shall have your share.

And that you may the fooner obtain your defire, ake your Gun and go to all the Fens and Plashes that are good distance from your Nets, and fire it three or for times; which will so affright the Fowl, that they will instantly post to the Rivers; then plant your Nets upon

thefe Fens and Plashes.

In the Morning go first to the River and see what Fowl are there surprized; and having taken them up with your Nets, it you espy any Fowl on the River, discharge your Gun, which will make them say to the Fens and Plashes, and then go and see what you have taken; Thus you shall be sure to be surnished with some, though there be never so sew abroad.

1

Chal

Span

or E

ceiv

ther

OVE

diff

fon

citl

tin

let

tal

Ha

25

CU

li

Y

#

9

.

How to take all manner of small Birds with Bird-Lime.

N cold weather, that is to fay, in Frost or Snow, all forts of fmall Birds do congregate in Flocks, as Larks, Chaffinches, Lennets, Gold-finches, Tellowhammers, Buntings, Sparrows, &c. all thefe but the Lark do perch on Trees or Bufhes as well as feed on the ground: If you perceive they refort about your House or Fields adjacent, then use your Bird-lime that is well prepared, and not over old; order it after this manner: Take an Earthen dish and put the Bird-lime into it, and add thereunto some fresh Lard, or Capons-grease, putting an ounce of either to a quarter of a pound of Bird-lime : then fetting it over the fire, let it melt gently together; but let it not boil by any means, for if you do, you will take away the strength of the Bird-lime, and so spoil it. Having thus prepared it, get a quantity of Wheat-ears. as many as you think you shall conveniently use, and cut the Straw about a foot long besides the Ears; then from the bottom of the Ears to the middle of the Straw lime it about fix inches: the Lime must be warm when you lime the firaw, that so it may run thin upon the thraw, and therefore the less difcernable, and confequently not suspected by the Birds.

Having thus got your Lim'd-straws in this manner ready, go into the field adjacent to your house, and carry a bag of Chaff and thresh Ears, and scatter these together twenty yards wide, (it is best in a Snow) then take the Lim'd-ears and stick them up and down with the Ears leaning, or at the end touching the ground; then retire from the place, and traverse the grounds all round about; the Birds hereupon being disturbed in their other haunts sly hither, and pecking at the ears of Corn, sinding that they slick unto them, they straightways mount up

from

letth

Whe

phor

Lim

be fri

gire:

Y

bois

. 1

Bin

bet

3-11

Fo

th

be

tw

St

fo

GI

(

Y

0

from the Earth, and in their flight the Bird-line ftraws lap under their Wings, and falling are not at to difengage themselves from the Straw, and so are co

tainly taken.

By the way take this caution; do not go and the up five or fix you fee entangled, for that may hine you it may be from taking three or four dozen at or time. If they be Larke that fall where your Bird-line Straws do lie, go not a near them till they spontaneously rife of themselves, and flying in great Flocks; I can affure you I have caught five dozen at one lift.

You may lay some nearer home to take Fineber, Sperows, Tellowhammers, &c. who refort near to House and frequent Barn-doors, where you may eafily the them after the same manner as aforesaid. The taking of Sparrows is a very great benefit to the Husbandon for they are his and the Farmers principal Eneme of all small Birds; infomuch as I dare affore them that every dozen of Sparrows taken by them in the Winter, (hall fave them a quarter of Wheat before has veit be ended. In the taking of them, you may his the top of your Houle if thatcht; and though you as ver have the Birds, yet the deftruction of them will be great advantage. Before a Barn-door if you lay you Twigs, or Lim'd-straws, you may there take them with abundance of other small Birds. The Sparnow is extellent food, and a great restorer of decayed Nature. You may also take them at rooft in the Eaves of Thatche houses, by coming in the night with a Clap-net, and rubbing the Net against the hole where they are flying out, you clap the Net together, and for take them: six darkell night with a Lanthorn and Candle is the chiefest time to take them.

Having performed your Morning Binding-recent tion, go hair the fame place where you were before, and bait it with fresh Chaff and Ears of Corn, and

means

be them self till ment Morning; then take some fresh Wheat-ears again, and slick them as aforesaid: and splin you bait in the Afternoon; take away all your Limb Ears, that so the Birds may feed boldly, and not be frighted or distuibed against next Morning.

How to take Great Fowl with

Ou must supply your felf with good store of Rods, which are long, small, and straight-grown Twigs, being light and apt to play to and fro.

Lime the upper-part of these Twigs, holding the

better befmearing them.

in the airs tor by heir

Cap

4

SE F. S.

5

4

Having first well acquainted your self where these Fowl to frequent Morning and Evening, you must then observe before Sun-set for the Evening-slight, and before day for the Morning, that you plant your Limetwigs where these Fowl haunt, pinning down for a Stale one of the same Fowl alive (which you have formerly taken for that purpose) which you intend to eath with your Bird-lime. Round about the Stale (giving the Fowl liberty to shatter to and fro) prick your Twigs in rows a foot distant one from the other, till you have covered all the place so haunted, that there shall be no room left, but that they must certainly fall soul with the Lime-twigs.

Prick the Rods floaping with their heads bending into the Wind about a foot or fornewhat more above ground: If you please (and I think it the best way) you may cross-prick your Rods, that is, one point into the wind, and another against the wind; by which

means you may take the Fowl which way foever the

Place also a Stale some distance from your Limeting and fasten small strings to it, which upon the fight any Fowl you must pull, then will your Stale facts

which will allure them down.

If you see any taken, do not run instantly and them up if you see any Fowl in the air; for by the fluttering others will be induced to swoop in amount them. It will not be amiss to have a well-raught speniel with you for the retaking of such Fowl (as it is common) which will flutter away with the Limetwing about them.

and

dle

VOL

bre

60

par

bre

wh

an

OV

an

Fe

W

W

13

T

1

Of

If you intend to use these Twigs for smaller Wilfowl, and such as frequent the water only, then mult you
fit them in length according to the depth of the Rim;
and your Lime must be very strong Water-lime, such
no wet or frost can injure. Prick these Rods in them
ter, as you did the others on the Land, as much of the
Rod as is limed being above water; and here and their
among your Rods you must stake down a live Stake
a Mallard, a Widgeon or Teal: and thus you may do in
any shallow Plash or Fen.

You need not wait continually on your Rods, be come thrice a day, and see what is taken, viz. early the Morning, at high Noon, and late in the Evenlag but come not unattended with your. Water-spanish for if you perceive any of your Rods missing, young conclude some Fowl are fastned to them which are crept into some Hole, Bush, or Sedge by the River side, and then will your Dog be very necessary for the discount of the discount

Do not beat one Haunt too much a but when you find their numbers fail, remove and find out another

and in three weeks time your first will be as goods ever.

Of the great and leffer SPRINGES.

T TAving noted the Morning and Evening feeding of divided-footed-Fowl, observing the Furrows and Water-Tracks where they usually stalk and paddle to find Worms, Float-Grass-roots, and the like; you must mark where many Furrows meet in one, and break out as it were into one narrow passage, which so descending, afterwards divides it self into other parts and branches; then mark how every Furrow breaketh and cometh into this Center or little Pit, which is most paddled with the Fowl, or which is eafielt for Fowl to wade in: This being done, take small and thort Sticks, and prick them crofs-wife athwart over all the other paffages, one Stick within half an Inch of the other, making as it were a kind of Fence to guard every way but one which you would have the Fowl to pass: if they stand but somewhat more than a handful above the Water, such is the nature of the Fowl that they will not press over them, but fray about till that they find the open way.

Having thus hemmed in all ways but one, take a stiff Stick cut stat on the one side, and prick both ends down into the Water, and make the upper part of the stat side of the stick to touch the water, and no more: then make a Bow of small Hazel or Willow made in the fashion of a Pear, broad and round at one end, and narrow at the other, at least a foot long, and sive or six Inches broad, and at the narrow end make a small nick: then take a good stiff-grown plant of Hazel, clean without knot, three or four Inches about at the bottom, and an Inch at the top,

[h]

is on

Now

and t

he of

que

and

espe

OCC

it t

hin

pie

nef

if

to

th

To

it

t

and having made the bottom-end sharp, at the topyor must fasten a very strong Loop of about an hundred Horfe-hairs plaited very faft together with strong Pack. thread, and made fo smooth that it will run and lin at pleasure: Let the Loop be of the just quantity of the hoop, made Pear-wife as aforefaid: then hard by this Loop you must fasten a little broad thin Tricker within an Inch and half of the end of the Plant which must be made equally sharp at both ends: thrust the bigger sharp end of the Plant into the ground close by the edge of the water, the smaller end with the Hoop and the Tricker must be brought down to the first Bridge, and then the Hoop made Pear-wife being laid on the Bridge, one end of the Tricker must be fet upon the nick of the Hoop, and the other end gainst a nick made on the small end of the Plant which by the violence and bend of the Plant [hall make them flick and hold together until the Hoople moved. This done, lay the Swickle on the Hoopin fuch falhion as the Hoop is proportioned; then from each fide of the Hoop prick little Sticks, making in impaled path to the Hoop; and as you go farther and farther from the Hoop or Springe, so make the way wider and wider, that the Fowl may enter a good way before it shall perceive the Fence. By this means the Fowl will be enticed to wade up to the Springe, which shall be no sooner toucht, but that part of the Bird & touching will be instantly ensnared: And thus according to the strength of the Plant you shall take any Fowl of what bigness soever.

The Springe for leffer Fowl, as Woodcock, Snipe, Plever, &c. is made after the fashion aforesaid, only differing in strength according unto the bigness of the Birds

you intend to catch.

The main plant or Sweeper you may make of Willow, Ofier, or any flick that will bend and return to its proper thraightness.

This

This device is for the Winter only, when much wet is on the ground, and not when the Furrows are dry. Now if the waters be frozen, you must make plashes and the harder the Frost, the greater resort will there be of these smaller Fowl.

Of the FOWLING-PIECE and the STALKING-HORSE.

That is ever esteemed the best Fowling-piece which hath the longest Barrel, being five foot and a half or fix foot long, with an indifferent bore, under Har-

quebuss.

日本は一日の本は

Provide the best fort of Powder as near as you can, and let it not be old, for keeping weakens it much, especially if it grow damp; therefore when you have occasion to use it, dry it well in a Fire-shovel, and sist it through a fine Searcher to take away that dust which hindresh the more forcible effects, and souleth your piece.

Let your Shot be well fized, and of a moderate bigness; for if it be too great, then it scatters too much: if too small, it hath not weight nor strength sufficient

to do execution on a large Fowl.

Shot being not to be had at all times, and in all places, fuitable to your occasions and defires, I shall therefore here set down the true process of making all

forts and fizes under Mould-shot.

Take what quantity of Lead you please, and melt it down in an Iron Vessel, and as it melts keep it stirring with an Iron-Ladle, and clear it of all impurities whatsoever that may arise at the top by skimming them off. Then when the Lead begins to be of a

[h 2]

green-

greenish colour, strew on it Auripigmentum finely poudered, as much as will lie on a Shilling to 12 pounds Lead. Then stir them together, and the Auripigment

tum will flame.

Your Ladle ought to have a Notch on one fide the Brim for the more easie pouring out of the Lad, and the Ladle ought to remain in the melted Lead, the the heat may be agreeable to it, to prevent all incoveniencies which may happen through excess of he or cold. Then try your Lead by droping it into water. If the drops prove round, then the temperature the heat is right; but if the Shot have Tails, the there is want both of heat and Auripigmentum.

Then take a Copper-plate about the fize of a Tracher-plate, with an hollowness in the midst about the inches compass, with about forty holes bored acouding to the fize of the Shot you intend to cast. The hollow bottom should be thin, but the thicker the bin the better, because it will longer retain the heat. Plate to an Iron frame over a Bucket of water, about four Inches from it, and spread burning Goals on the

plate to keep the Lead melted upon it.

Then take up fome Lead and pour it gently on the Coals on the plate, and it will force its way through the holes into the water, and form it felf into Sho. Thus do till all your Lead be run through the holes of the plate: observing to keep your Coals alive, that the Lead may not cool, and so stop up the holes. While you are casting your Shot, another person may cath some of the Shot with another Ladle, placed four or sive inches (underneath the bottom of the plate) in the water, and by that means you may discern if there are any desects in your process, and rectific them.

The chief business is to keep your Lead in a just degree of heat, that it be not so cold as to fill up the holes, nor so hot as to make the Shot crack. To remedy

he

the c

vour

worl

coole

fmall

the

heat.

they

rate

mad

you

force

ter v

cool

agai

grea

pro'

you

pof

beh

you

Fo

COL

firf

wil fpc

the

m

I

W

the coolness of your Lead and plate, you must blow your Coals; to remedy the heat, you must refrain working till it be cool enough, observing, that the cooler your Lead, the larger your Shot; the hotter, the smaller.

When you have cast your Shot, take them out of the water and dry them over the fire with a gentle heat, and be sure to keep them continually stirred that they melt not. When they are dry you are to separate the great Shot from the small, by the help of Sieves made on purpose, according to their several sizes. If you would have very large Shot, you may with a stick force the Lead to trickle out of your Ladle into the water without the plate.

If it stop on the plate, and yet the plate be not too cool, give but the plate a little knock, and it will run again. Take care that none of your Instruments be greasie. When you have separated your Shot, if any prove too large for your purpose, or any ways impersed, 'tis only your pains lost, and it will serve again at

your next operation.

2d

In shooting, observe always to shoot with the wind, if possible, and not against it; and rather side-ways, or

behind the Fowl, than full in their faces.

Next, observe to chuse the most convenient shelter you can find, as either Hedge, Bank, Tree, or any thing else which may abscond you from the view of the Fowl.

Be fure to have your Dog at your heels under good command, not daring to stir till you bid him, having first discharged your Piece: for some ill-taught Dogs will upon the snap of the Cock presently rush out, and spoil all the sport.

Now if you have not shelter enough, by reason of the nakedness of the Banks and want of Trees, you must creep upon your hands and knees under the Banks,

[h 3]

and lying even flat upon your Belly, put the note of me Piece over the Bank, and so take your level; for Fowl is so fearful of man, that though an Hawk me so foaring over her head, yet at the sight of a man would betake her self to her wing, and run the rife of that danger.

But fometime it so happeneth that the Fowl are shie, there is no getting a shoot at them without a sking-horse, which must be some old Jade trained for that purpose, who will gently, and as you will him, walk up and down in the water which way in please shoding and eating on the Grass that govern

therein.

You must shelter your self and Gun behind his for shoulder, bending your body down low by his side in keeping his body still full between you and the Foul being within shot, take your level from before the for part of the Horse, shooting as it were between the form he horses Neck and the water; which is much better the shooting under his Belly, being more secure, and his

perceiveable.

Now to supply the want of a Stalking-horse, which will take up a great deal of time to instruct and make fit for this exercise, you may make one of any picos old Canvas, which you must shape into the form of a Horse, with the head bending downwards as if he great. You may stuff it with any light matter; and not forget to paint it of the colour of an horse, which the brown is the best; and in the midst let it have to a Staff with a sharp Iron at the end, to slid into the ground as you shall see occasion, standing the whilst you take your level.

It must be made so portable, that you may hear a with ease in one hand, moving it so as it may seem to graze as you go. Let the stature of your artificial Staking-horse be neither too low nor too high; for the

ont

one

apt

of C

nece

you

ceit

out

Sta

YOU

for

th

VC

de

21

by

a

1

one will not abfcond your body, and the other will be

apt to frighten the Fowl.

Instead of this Stalking-horse, you may fashion out of Canvas painted an Ox or Cow: and this change is necessary, when you have so beaten the Fowl with your Stalking-horse, that they begin to find your deceit, and will no longer endure it, (as it frequently falls out.) Then you may stalk with an Ox or Cow, till the Stalking-horse be forgotten, and by this means make

your sport lasting and continual.

73VO 25 A

Some there are that stalk with Stags or Red-Deer form'd out of painted Canvas, with the natural Horns of Stags fixt thereon, and the colour so lively painted, that the Fowl cannot discern the fallacy; and these are very useful in low Fenny grounds, where any such Deer do usually feed; and are more familiar with the Fowl, and fo feed nearer them than Ox, Horse, or Cow: by which means you shall come within a far nearer distance.

There are other dead Engines to stalk withal, as an artificial Tree, Shrub, or Bush, which may be made of small Wands, and with painted Canvas made into the shape of a Willow, Poplar, or such Trees as grow by Rivers and Water-fides; for these are the best.

If you stalk with a Shrub or Bush, let them not be fo tall as your Tree, but much thicker; which you may make either of one entire Bulh, or of divers Bulles interwoven one with another, either with small Withy-wands, Cord, or Pack-thread, that may not be difcerned: and let not your Bulh exceed the height of a man, but be thicker than four or five, with a Spike at the bottom to flick into the ground whilf you take your level- at the land of

Gre

25 6

able

gie

for

pul

the

70

it

OT

M

N

t

1

How to take all manner of Land fowl by day or night.

Since the diffolution and spoil of Paradise, no man hath either seen, or can give the names of all Land-sowl whatever, there being such great variety, every Country producing some particular sorts which are unknown to other Nations.

To avoid prolixity, I shall rank them under two

heads.

The first are such who are either fit for Food of Pleasure, either for eating or singing: for eating, Pleasure, of all sorts, Rook, Pheasure, Partridge, Quaill, Rail, Felfares, &c. and for eating or singing, the Blackbird, Throstle, Nightingale, Linnet, Lark, and Bulfinch.

Secondly, fuch as are for Pleafure onely, and they are all manner of birds of Prey, as Cafrels, Ring-rails, Buz-

zards. &c.

The general way of taking these Land-sowl of several sorts together, is either by day or by night. If by day, it is done with the great Net, commonly called the Crow-net, and not at all differs in length, depth; bigness of Mesh, manner of laying, &c. from the Plovenet; onely it will not be amiss if the Cords be longer.

This Net you may lay before Barn-doors, or where Corn hath been winnowed, also in Stubble-fields, so concealing the Net that the Fowl may not different the Snare. When you perceive a quantity within the Net scraping for food, and you lie concealed afar off, with your Cord in your hand suddenly pull the Net over

upon them.

You may do well to take notice of their Morning and

and Evening Haunts, to worm and feed upon the Greenswarth; and here lay your Net, and it will prove as effectual as in other places, so that you observe to abscord your self in some Covert so as not to be defcied: in the next place, pull not too hastily, but wait for a good number of Fowl within the Net, and then pull freely and quickly; for the least deliberation after the Net is raised, is the ruine of your design.

Thus much for Day-fowling with the Net: now if you will profecute your sport by Night, you must do it according to the nature and manner of the Country, or situation or sashion of the ground, whether Woody,

Mountainous, or Champain.

d

70

In plain and Champain Countries you must use the Low-bell, from the end of October until the end of

March; and this method you must follow.

The day being that in, the air mild without Moonfaine, take a Low-bell, (which must have a deep and hollow found, for if it be shrill it is stark naught) and with it a Net whose Mesh is twenty yards deep, and so broad, that it may cover five or fix Lands or more, according to the company you have to carry it. With thefe Infruments go into any stubble Corn-field, but Wheat is the best. He that carries the Bell must go foremost, toling the Bell as he goes very mournfully, letting it but now and then knock on both fides; after him must follow the Net,born upat each corner and on each fide by feveral persons; then another must carry some Iron or flony Vessel which may contain burning, but not blazing Coals, and at these you must light bundles of straw: or you may carry Links with you. And having pitcht your Nets where you think the Game lies, beat the ground and make a noise, and as the Fowl rise they will be entangled in the Net. Thus you may take good store of Partridge, Rails, Larks, Quails, &c.

Having so done, extinguish your Lights, and pro-

ceed laying your Net in fome other place as before mentioned.

Here note, that the found of the Low-bell makes the Birds lie close, so as they dare not thir whilst you a pitching the Net, for the found thereof is dreadful at them; but the fight of the Fire much more terrible which makes them instantly to fly up, and so they is come entangled in the Net.

Furthermore, if you intend to have the full fruition of your fport, you must be very silent, and nothing must be heard but the sound of the Low-bell till the Net is placed and the Lights blazing; but as soon as they are

extinguished a general filence must be again.

The Trammel is much like this Net for the Labell, and may be necessarily used on the same grounds; onely it ought to be longer, though not much broader.

When you come to a place fit for your purpose where Birds lodge on the Earth, you shall then spread your Trammel on the ground; and let the farthest end thereof, being plumb'd with Lead, lie loose on the ground; but let the foremost ends be born up by two men, and so trail the Net along, keeping the foremost ends a yard or more distance from the ground.

On each fide of the Net carry Wisps of Straw lighted, or Links, and let some beat the ground with long Poles; and as the Birds rise under the Nets, take them. And thus you may continue doing as long as you please,

agest filmerimis free as a visus von Winder ac

Paris Inguer Late Lake Qual Howas to do es creingelm granter

to your great profit and pleasure.

1

Of BAT-FOWLING.

B AT-FOWLING is the taking of all manner of Birds, great and small, by night, which rooft in

Bushes, Shrubs, Hawthorn-trees, &c.

kes the

dful a errible ey be

uition

mul

Vet is

y are

ds:

102-

e

0

The manner is: you must be very filent till your Lights are blazing, and you may either carry Nets or none: if none, you must then have long Poles with great bully tops fixt to them; and having from a Creffet or veffel to carry fire in, lighted your Straw, or other blazing combustible matter, then must you beat those Buthes where you think Birds are at rooft; which done, if there be any in those Bushes or Trees, you will inflantly see them fly about the Flames: for it is their nature, through their amazedness at the strangeness of the Light, and extream darkness round about it, not to depart from it, but they will even fourch their Wings in the same, so that those who have the bushy Poles may beat them down as they please, and take them up. Thus you may continue your sport as long as it is very dark, and no longer.

Of the DAY-NET, and how to take Birds therewith.

The Day-Net is generally used for the taking of Larks, Buntings, Merlins, Hobbies, or any Birds which play in the Air, and will stoop either to Stale, Prey, Gig, Glass, or the like.

The season for these Nets is from August to November: the time you must plant these Nets must be be-

fore

fore Sun-rifing. Where note, the milder the Air, the brighter the Sun, and the pleasanter the Morning is the better will your sport be, and of longer continuance.

Let the place you elect for this purpose be plain and Champain, either on Barley-stubbles, green Lays, or level and flat Meadows; and these places must be remote from any Villages; but near adjacent to Comfields.

The fashion of a Day-net is this: you must make them of sine Packthread, the Mesh small, and not above half an Inch square each way; let the length be about three fathom, the breadth one fathom and no more: the shape is like the Crow-net, and it must be verg'd about in the same manner with a strong small Cord, add the two ends extended upon two small long Poles suitable to the breadth of the Net, with sour stakes, Tail-strings, and Drawing-lines, as afore-mentioned: only whereas that was but one single Net, here must be two of one length, breadth and fashion. These Nets must be laid opposite to each other, yet so close and even together, that when they are drawn and palled over, the sides and edges may meet and touch one the other.

These Nets being staked down with strong Stakes very stiffly on their Lines, so as with any nimble twitch you may cast them to and fro at your pleasure; you shall then to the upper ends of the foremost staves fasten your Hand lines or drawing Gords, which must be at the least a dozen, a fathom long; and so extend them of such a reasonable streightness, as with little strength they may raise up the Nets and cast them over.

When your Nets are laid, fome twenty or thirty paces, beyond them place your Stales, Decoys, or playing Wantons, upon some pearching Boughs, which will not only entice Birds of their own Feather to stoop,

but

but

Net

401

ł

but also Hanks and Birds of Prey to swoop into your Nets.

r, the

tinu-

and

or re-

ke

be 10 Remember to keep the first half dozen you take alive for Stales, and to that end have a Cage or Linnen-bag to put them in: The rest squeez in the hinder-part of the head, and so kill them. And thus do every day.

Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bushes with Lime-twigs.

The great Lime-bush is best for this use, which you must make after this manner: Cut down the main Arm or chief Bough of any bushy Tree, whose branches or Twigs are long, thick, smooth and straight, without either pricks or knots; of which the Willow or Birch-tree are the best: when you have pickt it and trimm'd it from all superfluity, making the Twigs neat and clean; take then of the best Bird-lime, well mixed and wrought together with Goose-greace or Capon's-greace, which being warmed, lime every Twig therewith within four singers of the bottom. The body, from whence the branches have their rise, must be untouch'd with Lime.

Be fure you do not dawb you Twigs with too much Line, for that will give diffafte to the Birds; yet let none want its proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be toucht: for, as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them when they are there.

Having so done, place your Bush on some Quick-set or dead Hedge neer unto Towns-ends, back-yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small Birds in the Spring-time: in the Summer and Harvest in Groves, Bushes, White-thorn-trees, Quick-set-hed-

nd b

Birds

numbe

overs

bave

lozen

Bu

rith !

mede

they

lliw

md

ther

but

ber

DET

1

for

yes

an

h

d

L

ti

ges neer Corn-fields, Fruit-trees, Flax and Hemp-lands and in the winter about Houses, Hovels, Barns, Stack or those places where stand ricks of Corn, or scattered Chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your Lime-bush, and plant your self also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mount the several Notes of Birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the Fields for that very purpose often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by I have known some so expert herein, that they could imitate the Notes of twenty several sorts of Birds at least, by which they have caught ten Birds to anothers one that was ignorant therein.

But if you cannot attain to it by your industry, you must then buy a Bird-eall, of which there are several forts, and easie to be framed, some of Wood, some of

Horn, some of Cane, and the like.

Having first learned how to use this Call, you shall fit and call the Birds unto you; and as any of them light on your Bush, step not to them till you see them sufficiently entangled; Neither is it requisite to run for every single Bird, but let them alone till more come, for their sluttering is as good as a Stale to entire more.

This Exercise you may use from Sun-Rising till ten a clock in the Morning, and from one till almost

Sun-let.

You may take these small Birds with Lime-twigs onely, without the Bush. When I was a boy, I have taken two or three hundred small Twigs about the bigness of Rushes, and about three Inches long, and have gone with them into a field where were Hempcocks; upon the tops of half a score, lying all round together, I have stuck my Twigs, and then have gone

and beat that field, or the next to it, where I faw any Birds; and commonly in such fields there are infinite numbers of Linners and Green-birds which are great overs of Hemp-seed. I say, they sly in such wast slocks, have caught at one fall of them upon the Gocks eight ligen at a time.

ande

tacke

outh

fre-

Pole ef-

wn the ich Pas

ď

But to return, there is a pretty way of taking Birds with Lime-twigs, by placing near them a Stale or two made of living Night-baits, placing them aloft; that they may be visible to the Birds thereabouts; which will no sooner be perceived, but every Bird will come and gaze, wondering at the strangeness of the sight: then they having no other convenient lighting-place but where the Lime-twigs are, you may take what number you list of them.

But the Owl is a far better Stale than the Bat, being bigger, and more easily to be perceived; besides, he is never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the birds near adjacent.

If you have not a living Bat or Oml, their skins will fave as well being stuffed, and will last you twenty years. There are some have used an Oml cut in Wood, and naturally painted, with wonderful success.

It is strange to me that this Bird above all others should be so persecuted by all Birds whatsoever, especially by the Goose; and therefore some arch Cracks in Lincoln-shire and other places where are great quantities of Geese, observing their tempers, have made great advantage of them; for by only throwing a live Owl among a slock of Geese, they got as many Quills as they knew what to do with; for the Geese endeavouring to beat the Owl with their wings, never left till they did beat the Quills out of their wings, and commonly the best, which are Seconds.

How to make the best sort of Bird-lime, and how to use it.

Ake at Midfummer the bark of Holly, and pill from the Tree, fo much as will fill a reasonable big Veffel; then put to it running Water, and fet ite ver the fire, and boil it till the grey and white barking from the green, which will take up fixteen hours in the boiling: then take it from the fire, and separate the barks after the water is very well drain'd away: then take all the green bark, and lay it on the ground in close place and moist floor, and cover it over with manner of green Weeds, as Hemlock, Docks, Thiffle and the like; thus let it lie ten or twelve days, in which time it will rot, and turn to a filthy flimy matter Then take it and put it into a Mortar, and there but it till it become univerfally thick and tough, without the differning of any part of the bark or other lib stance; then take it out of the Mortar, and carry it to a running Stream, and there wash it exceedingly, not leaving any more or foulness within it; then put itu in a very close Earthen pot, and let it stand and purge for divers days together, scumming it as often as any foulness arises for four or five days: when you perceive no more Scum, you shall then take it out of that Pot, and put it into another clean . Earthen Vessel, cover it close, and keep it for your use.

When you are about to use your Lime, take what quantity you think fit and put it into a Pipkin, adding thereto a third part of Goose-greace or Capons-greace finely clarified, and set them over a gentle fire, and there let them melt together, and stir them continually till they are well incorporated: then take it from the

fire, and ftir it till it be cold.

When

wir

Ro

on

Ty all

25

GLID

When your Lime is cold, take your Rods and warm them a little over the fire; then take your Lime and wind it about the tops of your Rods, then draw your Rodsafunder one from the other, and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by mearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each Rod a sufficient proportion of Lime.

If you lime any Strings, do it when the Lime is very hot and at the thinnest, besmearing the Strings on all sides, by solding them together and unfolding them

again.

pill

mahl

ito

krife

the

e the

then

ina

B E

tt

4

×

If you lime Straws, it must be done likewise when the Lime is very hor, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well grasp in your hand, tosting and working them before the fire till they are all besmear'd, every Straw having his due proportion of Lime: having so done, put them up in cases of Leather till you have occasion to use them.

Now to prevent the freezing of your Lime either as it is on Twigs, Bushes, or Straws, you must adde a quarter as much of the Oyl called Petroleum as of your Capons-grease, mix them well together, and then work it on your Rods, Se. and so it will ever keep supple, tough, and gentle, and will not be prejudiced should it

freeze never so hard.

The best and most Experienced way of making Water-Bird-lime.

Buy what quantity you think fit of the strongest Bird-lime you can procure, and wash it as long in a clear Spring-water till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into a Pot made of Earth, and mingle therewith Caponsgrease

hin

210

him.

grease unsalted, so much as will make it run; then adde thereto two spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, a spoonful of the best Sallet-Oyl, and a small quantity of renice-Turpentine: This is the allowance of these largedients, which must be added to every pound of strong Bird-lime, as aforesaid. Having thus mingles them, boil them all gently together over a small sire string it continually; then take it from the sire and let it cool: When at any time you have occasion tous it, warm it, and then anoint your Twigs or Straws, or any other small things, and no Water will take away the strength thereof. This fort of Bird-lime is the best especially for Snipes and Felfares.

In what manner a man may take Snipes with this Bird-lime.

Ake what number you shall think most expedient for your purpose, of Birch-twigs, and lime sifty or sixty of them very well together. After this, go and seek out those places where Snipes do usually strength, which you may know by their Dung.

In very hard frosty or snowy Weather, where the Water lies open, they will lie very thick: Having observed the place where they most feed, set two hundred of your Twigs, more or less, as you please, at a yard distance one from the other, and let them stand sloaping some one way and some another; then retire a convenient distance from the place, and you shall find there shall not one Snipe in ten miss your Twigs, by reason they spread their Wings, and setch a round close to the ground before they light. When you see any taken, stir not at first, for he will feed with the Twigs under his Wings; and as others come over the place, he will be a means to entice them down to

1000

EV.

d d

fire,

and

ufe

10

vay eft. him. When you see the Coast clear, and but sew that are not taken, you may then take up your Birds, saftning ope or two of them, that the other slying over, may tight at the same place. If there be any other open place near to that where your Twigs are planted, you must beat them up: The reason why they delight to haunt open places, and where Springs do gently run, is because they cannot feed, by reason of their Bills, in places that are hard and stony; and about these Plashes, in snowy Weather, they very much resort.

The manner of taking Felfares by Water-Bird-lime.

A Bout Michaelman, or when the cold Weather begins to come in, take your Gun and kill some Inflares; then take a couple of them, or one may leve, and fasten them to the top of a Tree, in such manner that they may seem to be alive: Having so done, prepare two or three hundred Twigs, take a great Birchen-bough, and therein place your Twigs, having first cut off all the small Twigs; then set a Felfare upon the top of the bough, making of him sast, and let this bough be planted where the Felfares do restort in a Morning to seed; for they keep a constant place to seed in, till there is no more food lest. By this means others slying but neer, will quickly espie the top-bird, and sall in whole slocks to him. I have seen at one fall three dozen taken.

How to take Pigeons with Lime-twigs.

Pigeons are great devourers and destroyers of Com; wherefore when you find any ground much frequented

quented by them, get a couple of Pigeons, either design or alive; if dead, put them in such a stiff posture as they were living and seeding; then at Sun-rising take a quantity of Twigs, as many as you think fit, is them be small, (but I judge Wheaten-straws are better for this purpose) and lay them up and down when your Pigeons are placed, and you shall find such sport at every fall that is made, that you may quickly bend of them without offending the Statute: If there come good slights, you may easily take four or five dozen of them in a morning.

How to take Mag-pies, Crows, and Gleads with Lime-twigs.

Hen you have found any Carrion on which Ceams, Pies, Kites, &c. are preying upon, over night fet your Lime-twigs every where about the Carrion; but let them be small, and not fet too thick if otherwise, being subtile Birds, they will suspect some danger or mischief designed against them. When you perceive one to be fast, advance not to him presently for most commonly when they are surely caught, they are not sensible thereof.

You may take them another way, and that is by joyning to a Packthread feveral Noofes of Hair up and down the Packthread, and peg it down about a yard from the Carrion: for many times when they have gotten a piece of Flesh, they will be apt to run away to feed by themselves; and if your Nooses be thick, it is two to one but some of the Nooses catch him by the

rami di karang dalah basaran kisi) Managan dalah basaran kisi

Legs.

durante

Hon

loav

tle ;

YOU

thr

ane

cell

00

fol

N

9

How to take Rooks when they pull up the Corn by the Roots.

e bet

(por

eni

n d

ic ic

TAke some thick Brown-paper, and divide a sheet I into eight parts, and make them up like Sugarloaves; then lime the infide of the Paper a very little; (let them be limed three or four days before you fet them) then put fome Corn in them, and lay threescore or more of them up and down the ground; lay them as near as you can under fome clod of Earth. and early in the Morning before they come to feed; and then stand at a distance, and you will see most excellent sport; for as soon as Rooks, Crows, or Pigeons come to peck out any of the Corn, it will hang upon his head, and he will immediately fly bolt upright whigh, that he shall foar almost out of fight; and when he is spent, come tumbling down as if he had ben thot in the Air. You may take them at Ploughing-time when the Rooks and Crows follow the Plough; but then you must put in Worms and Maggots of the largest fize.

How to take Birds with BAITS, either Land or Water-fowl.

IF you have a defire to take House-doves, Stock-doves, Rooke, Coughs, or any other-like Birds, then take Wheat, Barley, Fetches, Tares, or other Grain, and boil them very well with good store of Nux vomica in ordinary running water: when they are almost boil'd, dry and ready to burst, take them off the fire, and set them by till they be throughly cold. Having so done, scatter this Grain in the Haunts of those Birds you have

have a mind to take; and as foon as they have talked hereof, they will fall down into a dead fwound, and [w not be able to recover themselves in a good while

And as you take these great Land-fowl with this drunken device, so you may take the middle and small ler fort of Birds, if you observe to boil with what food they delight in, a quantity of this Nux vomica.

Some, instead of Nux vomica, use the Lees of Wine the sharper and quicker they are, the better, boiling their Grains in these Lees, also Seeds or any other fool and strewing them in the Haunts of those Birds we would furprize. These do as effectually as Nux toni ea; and it's the cleanlier and neater way, there being not that poylonous quality in them.

You may chuse whether you will boil your Grainer Seed in the aforefaid Lees; for they will be every whit as effectual if onely fleeped a confiderable while there in, giving them leave to drink in the Lees till they are

ready to burst before you use them.

Others, having neither Nux vomica, nor Wineles. take the Juice of Hemlock, and steep their Grains thee in, adding thereto some Henbane-feed or Poppy-feed causing them to be intused therein four or five days then draining the Grain or Seed from the Liquor, frew them as aforesaid. The Birds having tafted hereof, an immediately taken with a dizziness, which will continue some hours, so that they cannot flie; but they will recover again, if you kill them not. If you intend them for food, let them be first recovered.

Thus much for the Land; now let us speak of the

Water-fowl.

The ready way by Bait to take fuch Fowl as receive part of their food by land, and part by water, as Will geefe, Barnatle, Orey-plover, Mallard, Carlen, Shoreles, Bitter, Buftard, with many more; I fay, the best way my experience hath found out is, to take Bellenge leaves,

terve

well

and

then

toge

it o

here

Fov

VCS!

tak

To

100

itt

4

(ma)

food

ine, iling you you ing leaves, Roots and all, and having cleanfed them very well, put them into a Veffel of clear running Water, and there let them lie in steep twenty four hours; then never shift them from the Water, but boil them together till the Water be almost consumed: then take it off, and set it a cooling. Then take a quantity hereof, and go to the Haunts of any of the aforesaid Fowl, and there spread of this Bait in sundry and divers places; and those that shall taste hereof will be taken with the like drunken dizziness as the former. To make this Consection the more effectual, it will be requisite to adde a quantity of Brimstone thereunto in its boiling.

How to recover Fowl thus entranced.

If you would restore any of these entranced Fowl to their former health, take a little quantity of Sallet-oyl, according to the strength and bigness of the Fowl, and drop it down the Throat of the Fowl; then chase the head with a little strong White-wine-Vinegar, and the Fowl will presently recover, and be as well as ever.

And thus much for taking Fowl of all forts by Baits.

A most excellent and approved way how to take the HERN.

Hern is as great a devourer of Fish as any is; nay fome dare affirm, ten times as much as an Otter, and shall do more mischief in one week than an Otter shall do in three months: for I have been told by one that hath seen a Hern that hath been shot at a Pond, to have had seventeen Carps at once in his Belly, which he will digest in fix or seven hours, and then betake

himself to fishing again. I have been informed by nother, that he saw a Carp taken out of a Hern's Be

[mall

oth

her

u

61

which was nine Inches and an half long.

Several Gentlemen that have kept Herns tame, have put Fish in a Tub, and tried the Hern how many small Roaches and Dace he would eat in a day, and they have found him to eat about fifty in a day, one day with a nother.

One Hern that haunts a Pond, in a Twelvemonths time, shall deliroy a thousand Store-Carps; and who Gentlemen sue their Ponds, they think their Neighbours have robbed them, not in the least considering an Hern is able to devour them in half a years time, if he put in half as many more.

Now fince this ravenous Fowl is so destructive to Ponds and Fish of the River, it will be very necessary to find out a way to destroy that, that destroys so ma-

ny; which may be done in this manner.

Having found out his haunt, get three or four [mall Reaches or Dace; and have a strong Hock with Wyre to it, draw the Wyre just within the skin of the laid Fish, beginning without side of the Gills, running of it to the Tail, and then the Fish will live five or fix days. Now if the Fish be dead, the Hern will not meddle with him. Let not your Hook bee too rank; then having a strong Line with Silk and Wyre, about two yards and a half long, (if you twift not Wire with your Silk, the sharpness of his Bill will bite it in two immediately) and tye a round Stone about a pound-weight to the Line, and lay three or four Hooks, and in two or three nights you shall not fail to have him if he comes to your Pond. Lay not your Hooks in the water so deep that the Hern cannot wade unto them. Colour your Line of a dark green, for an Hern is a subtile Bird. There are several other Fowl devourers of Fish, as Kings-fisher, Morechens, Balcoots, Cormorant,

have fmall have

ich a

onthe

when

igh:

s an

to

ı

merant, &c. but none like the Hern for Ponds and

How to take PHEASANTS several ways.

The taking of *Pheafants* is to be performed threo feveral ways, by Nets, by Lime-bulh, or else by other particular Engines, which shall be discours'd of hereaster.

The taking of *Pheasants* with Nets, is done either generally, or particularly: generally, when the whole Eye of *Pheasants* is taken, that is the old Cock and old Hen with all their Powts, as they run together in the obscure Woods; or particularly, when you take none but the old *Pheasants*, or the young, being of an age fit to couple or pair.

For the greater facility of taking Pheafants, you must first understand their Haunts, which are never in open Fields, but in thick young Copses well grown, and not in old high Woods.

Having thus found out their Coverts, which must be folitary and untraced by Men or Cattel, the next thing will be how to find out the Eye or Brood of Phealants.

The first way, is by going into these young Copses, and carefully viewing the same, searching every where; and by that means at last finding where they run together, as Chickens after a Hen. Or, secondly, you must rise early in a Morning, or come late in the Evening; and observe how and when the old Gock and Hen call their young ones to them, and how the young ones answer back unto them again; and so from that sound

found direct your Path as near as you can to the pa where they are, lying there down so close you may us be discerned; by which means you will know who they meet, and how accordingly you may pitch you Nets.

But the most certain way of finding them out, is have a natural *Pheasant*-call, which you must learn how to use, understanding all their Notes, and how to as ply them: For they have several Notes, and all different; one to cluck them together when the Hen would brood them, another to chide them when they stragge too far, a third to call them to meat when the had found it, a fourth to make them look out for southernselves, and a fifth to call them about her to specificat which time they straggle abroad to find Provender, or else in the Evening just about Sun-setting, which their time likewise for seeding.

Now although these are the best times to use your Call, yet you may call them at any other time of the day, onely altering your Note. Just at, or before Surising, your Note must be to call them to feed, and to at Sun-set: but in the Forenoon and Asternoon your Notes must be to cluck them together to brood, or to chide them for straggling, or to give them notice of

fome approaching danger.

Knowing your Notes, and how to apply them, with the places where Pheasants haunt, which you shall know by the strength of the under-growth, obscureness, darkness, and solitariness of the place, you must then lodge your self as close as possible, and then call at first very sortly, lest the Pheasants being lodg'd very near you, should be affrighted at a loud Note; but if nothing reply, raise your Note higher and higher, till you extend it to the utmost compass: and if there be a Pheasant within hearing, the will answer in a Note as loud as your

own,

party P

bes

od fro

proach

100 al

and c

get fi

Then

the 1

place

king

Whi

600

1 15 a hou

to an

diffe

Muor

を

00

on -

As from as you hear this answer, if it be from afar, and from one fingle Fowl, creep nearer and nearer untell, fill calling, but not fo loud; and as you aph you proach nearer to it, so will the Pheafant to you; and as not alter your Note, fo will the: and in all points you must endeavour to imitate her, and in fine you will get fight of her, either on the Ground or Pearch: Then cease your calling, and spread your Net between the Pheafant and your felf, in the most convenient place you can find, with all fecrecy and filence, making one end of the Net fast to the ground, and holding the other end by a long Line in your hand; by which, when any thing straineth it, you may pull the Net close together: which done, call again, and as foon as you perceive the Pheafant come underneath your Net, then rife up and shew your felf, that by giving the Pheasant an affright, he may offer to mount, and so be entangled within the Net.

Now if it so fall out that you hear many answers, and from divers corners of the Wood, then stir not at all but keep your place; and as you hear them by their founds to come nearer and nearer unto you, fo shall you in the mean time prepare your Nets ready, and spread them conveniently about you, one pair of Nets on the one fide, and another on the other fide; then lie dole, and apply your felf to the Call till fuch time as you have allured them under your Nets; then stand up and thew your felf, which will affright them and make

them mount, whereby they will be entangled.

The fashion of Pheasant-Nets.

You must make these Nets of double-twined brown Thread dyed blue or green; let the Melh be reafonably nably large and square, almost an inch between knot and Knot; let the length of it be about three father and the breadth about seven soot, and verge it on ead side with strong small Cord, and let the ends be also so that it may lie compass-wise and hollow.

Some make these Nets of a much larger size; but then they are too cumbersome, and hardly to be ruled with one hand: but the others are readier to pitch, and better to take, also more nimble for any purpose you

shall employ them to.

Of Driving of Pheasant-powts.

The driving and taking young Pheafants in Nets is done after this manner. Having either by your eyear Call found out an Eye of Pheafants, you must then (p. king the wind with you, for they will naturally run down the wind) place your Nets crofs the little Pads and ways which you see they have made, (for they will make little Paths like Sheep-tracks) and as near as you can, come to some special Haunts of theirs, which you shall know by the bareness of the ground, Muting, and loofe Feathers which you shall find there: and these Nets must be placed hollow, loose, and circularwife, the nether part thereof being fastened to the ground, and the upper fide lying hollow, loofe, and bending, so that when any thing rusheth into it, it may fall and entangle it : which done, you must go before where you found the Haunt, and there with your Gall (if you find the Eye is scattered and separated one from the other) you must call them together.

Then take your Instrument called a *Driver*, which is made of strong white Wands or Osiers set fast in a handle, and in two or three places twisted about and bound with other Wands, bearing the shape of those

things

dings

raking

which

nun fr

ping

which

king

YOU '

ly at

froi

fee and

by

ret

BC

chings Cloath-dreffers usually dress their Cloath withal: Isy, with this Driver you must make a gentle noise, raking upon the Boughs and Bushes round about you; which as soon as Powts do hear, they will instantly run from it a little way, and then stand and listen, keeping all close together: then give another rake, at which they will run again as before: And by thus rating, you will drive them like so many Sheep before you which way or whither you please, and consequently at last into your Nets.

In using your Driver there are two things to be obferved. The first is Secrecy, in concealing your self from the sight of the Pheasants; for if they chance to see you, they will instantly hide themselves in Holes and bottoms of Bushes, and will not stir from thence by any means whatever, as long as any day endu-

reth.

thon

lo fo

relat

YOU

The other thing to be observed, is Time and Leisure in the work; for there is nothing obstructs this Passime more than too much haste: for they are very searful Creatures, and are soon startled; and when once a-turn'd, their sears will not suffer them to argue or dispute with the affrighting object; but the very first apprehension is sufficient to make them all sty at an instant, without staying to behold what they are so much afraid of.

Of taking Pheasants with a Lime-bush.

Having observed their Haunts as aforesaid, take a Bush, or single Rods, and trim them with the best and strongest Lime that can be got: let your Rods be twelve inches; your Lime-bush must not contain above eight Twigs, being the Top-branch of some Willow-tree, with an indifferent long Handle, made sharp either

either to flick into the ground, or into Shrub a Bushes. You may plant your Bush near the brane some little Tree which the Pheafant usually pearly on.

When you have placed your Bush or Rods, taken your Call, but remove not from your place, lying the without discovery. If your Call be good, and you have skill to use it, you will quickly have all the Plants within hearing about you; and if one happens be entangled, she will go near to entangle all the seither by her extraordinary fluttering, or their on amazement and consustance. And as they are taken the Rods on the ground, so you will surprize them will your Bushes; for being scared from below, they we mount to the Pearch or Bushes, to see what becomes their fellows, and be there taken themselves.

Here note, that it is very requisite to count all you Rods, and when you have gathered up you. Phease, see what Rods you have missing, and then cookie from the miss of them, that some Pheasants are no with them into the Bushes; and therefore it will be necessary to have a Spaniel which will setch and can and one that will not break nor bruise either Flehor

Feather.

The Seasons for the use of Nets or Lime.

The Lime is onely for the Winter-feason, beginning from November, when the Trees have shed their Leaves (and then Lime-bushes and Branches of Trees are like naked and of the same complexion) and ending at May, at which time the Trees begin to be surpliked with Leaves.

The true use of the Nets is from the beginning.

So

H

red c

ther

or S

foo

th

9

6

t

So that there is no time of the year but their Breeing-time, which may not be exercised in this pleasure; thenerwhat profit may arise, I shall leave to the judgnot of those who keep good houses, and such as have and Stomacks.

How to take PARTRIDGES several ways, either by Net, Engine, Driving, or Setting.

ng ch

Pen

ne ref

OR

en b

Partridges are naturally cowardly, fearful, fimple, and foolish, and therefore most easily to be deceived or beguiled with any Train, Bait, Engine, or other Device whatever, whether by Enticement, Call, or Stale.

It will he necessary in the first place to consider their Hunts, which are not (like the Pheasants) certain, but various; any covert will serve their turn, and sometimes none at all.

The places they most delight in are the Corn-fields, decially whilst the Corn grows; for under that covert they shelter, ingender, and breed. Neither are these places unfrequented by them when the Corn is cut down, by reason of the Grain they find therein, as they delight in, being to them as a covert or a shelter. Now when the Wheat-stubble is much trodden by Men or Beasts, then they betake themselves to the Barley-stubble, provided it be fresh and untrodden; and they will in the Furrows amongst the Clots, Brambles, and long Grass, hide both themselves and Covies, which are sometimes twenty in number,

number, fometimes five and twenty: nay, I have he

of thirty in a Covie.

Now after the Winter-season is come, and that the Stubble-fields are plough'd up, or over-soiled will Cattle, then do these Partridges resort into the up-in Meadows, and do lodge in the dead Grass or Fogular Hedges, amongst Mole-hills, or under the Room Trees: Sometimes they resort to Copses and Under woods, especially if any Corn-fields are near adjacen or where grows Broom, Brakes, Fern, or any Communication.

In the Harvest-time, when every Field is full of men and Cattle, then you shall find them in the day-time in the Fallow-fields which are next adjoyning to the Corn-fields, where they lie lurking till the Evening and then they feed among the Shocks or Sheaves of Corn; and so they do likewise early in the Mon-

ing.

When you know their Haunts according to the feination of the Country and feafon of the year, yourner care must be to find them out in their Haunts; which is done several ways. Some do it by the Eye oney; and this Art can never be taught, but learned by frequent Experience, distinguishing thereby the coloured the Partridge from that of the Earth, and how and in what manner they lodge and couch together; for which purpose you may come near enough to them, for the are a very lazy Bird, and so unwilling to take the Wing, that you may even set your soot upon them before they will stir, provided you do not stand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion; otherwise they will spring up and be gone.

There is another way to discover them, and that is by going to their Haunts very early in the Morning, or at the close of the Evening, which is called the Jucking-time, and there listening for the calling of the

Cock-

Cox

and

chis

by

upo

G 1

lies.

tric

na

CV

du

(1)

h

til

th

25

30

d

Cock Partridge, which will be very loud and earnest; and after some sew calls the Hen will answer, and by this means they meet together; which you shall know by their rejoycing and chattering one with another; upon the hearing of which, take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them set in; then cast your eye towards the Furrows of the lands, and there you will soon find where the Covie lies, and so take them as your fancy shall lead you.

The best, safest, and easiest way for finding of Pariridges is by the Call, having first learn'd the true and natural Notes of the Partridge, knowing how to tune every Note in its proper Key, applying them to their

due times and feafons.

che

at th

p-la

og u

lode

OVE

ma

tine de

ing,

s d

Om-

in-

B. 8

ly i

of

d

Geling perfect herein; either Mornings of Evenings (allother times being improper) go to their Haunts, and having convey'd your felf into some secret place where you may see and not be seen, listen a while if you can har the Partridges call; if you do, answer them again in the same Note, and as they change or double their Notes, so must you in like manner: thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer unto you. Having them in your view, lay your self on your back, and lie as if you were dead without motion, by which means you may count their whole number.

Having attained to the knowledge of discovering them where they lie, the next thing will be a ready

way how to catch them:

Of taking Partridges with Nets.

The Nets wherewith you enfnare Partridges must be every way like your Pheafant-nets, both for length and breadth; onely the Mesh must be smaller, being made of the same Thread, and dyed of the same colour.

[k]

Having

Having found out the Covie, draw forth your No. and taking a large circumference, walk a good rompace with a careless eye, rather from than towards to Partridger, till you have trimmed your Nets, and make them ready for the purpose: which done, you make within the length of your Net: then pricking down a Stick about three foot in length, fasten one end of the Line of your Net, and make it fast in the Earth as you walk about; (for you must make no stop nor stay;) then, letting the Net slip out of your hands, spread it open as you go, and so carry and lay it all over the Partridges.

But if they should lie straggling, so that you cannot cover them all with one Net, then you must draw form another, and do with that as you did with the forms doing so with a third, if occasion require: having so done, rush in upon them, who affrighted, will sign

and fo be entangled in the Nets.

How to take Partridges with Bird-lime.

Take of the fairest and largest Wheat-straws you en get,, and cut them off between Knot and Knot, and lime them with the strongest Lime. Then go to the Haunts of Partridges, and call: if you are answered, then prick at some distance from you your limed Straw in many cross rows and ranks cross the Lands and Furrows, taking in two or three Lands at least: then lie close and call again, not ceating till you have drawn them towards you, so that they be intercepted by the way by your limed Straws, which they shall no soone touch, but they will be ensured; and by reason they all run together like a brood of Chickens, they will be bessear and daub one another, that very sew of them will escape.

This

iny

thu

N

23 23 23

th

th

pl

This way of taking Partridges is onely to be used in stubile fields from August till Christmas. But if you will take them in Woods, Pastures, or Meadows, then you must lime Rods, as was afore expressed for the Parties, and stick them in the ground after the same manner.

How to drive Partridges.

The Driving of Partridges is more delightful than my other way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an Engine in the form and fallion of a Horle, on out of Canvas, and stuff it with Straw, or such light matter: with this artificial Horse and your Nets you must go to the Haunts of Partidges, and having found out the Covie, and pitcht your Nets below, you must go above, and taking the advantage of the Wind, you must drive downward: Let your Nets be pitcht lope-wise and hovering. Then, having your Face covered with something that is green, or of a dark blue, you must, putting the Engine before you, stalk towards the Partidges with a flow pace, raising them on their seet, but not their Wings, and then will they run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a by-way, or contrary to your purpole, then crofs them with your Engine, and by so facing them, they will run into that track you would have them: Thus by a gentle slow pace you may make them run and go which way you will, and at last drive them into your Net, and so dispose of them at your

pleafure

100

y il

00

tri 6

h

How to take Partridges with a Setting-dog

There is no Art of taking Partridges so excelle and pleasant as by the help of a Setting-dog: where fore, before we proceed to the Sport, we shall give

an account what this Setting-dog is.

You are to understand then, that a Setting-dog is certain lufty Land-spaniel, taught by nature to ha the Partridge more than any chace whatever, runch the fields over with fuch alacrity and nimbleness, as there was no limit to his fury and defire, and yet b art under fuch excellent command, that in the vor height of his career by a Hem or found of his Maffer voice he shall stand, gaze about him, look in his to sters face, and observe his directions, whether to proceed, fland fill, or retire: nay, when he is even in upon his Prey, that he may even take it up in his mount yet his obedience is fo framed by Art, that prefend he thall either stand still, or fall down flat on his belle without daring either to make any noise or motion til his Master come to him, and then he will proceed in a things to follow his directions.

ake

1001

TO SE

Pat

ui

Having a Dog thus qualified by Art and Nature, the him with you where Partridges do haunt, there call of your Dog, and by some word of encouragement which he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you; and see that he beat his ground justly and even, without casting about, or stying now here now there, which the mettle of some will do, is not corrected and reproved. And therefore when you perceive this fault, you must presently call him in with a Hem, and so check him that he dare not do the like again for that day; so will he range afterwards with more tem perance, ever and anon looking in his Mater's

her's face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your Dog's ranging you perceive him to stop in the sudden, or stand still, you must then make in to in, (for without doubt he hath fet the Partridge) nearer: but if he goes not, but either lies still or finds shaking of his Tail, as who would say, Here hey are under my rose, and withal now and then boks back; then cease from urging him further, and ake your circumference, walking fast with a careless re, looking straight before the nose of the Dog, and mereby fee how the Govy lie, whether close or frag-

then commanding the Dog to lie fill, draw forth your Net, and prick one end to the ground, and spread Net all open, and so cover as many of the Partridgus you can; which done, make in with a noise, and fring up the Partridges; which thall no fooner rife, hatthey will be entangled in the Net. And if you hatlet go the old Cock and Hen, it will not onely be affact like a Gentleman, but a means to increase your

Pastime.

cella

d is

t by

全音音音音音

d all

tr

d

How to take RAILS, QUAILS, MOR EPOOTS, &c.

PRom what is contain'd in the foregoing Chapters, byou may collect a method how to take other Fowl, uRails, Quails, Morepoots, &c. all which are very good highes for Hawks.

Their haunts are much alike with those of the Partide; onely the Quail loves most the Wheat-field,

Luicher.

[k3]

the

Lur

bett

ble

met

8

biv

ger

wh

out

bey

inf

the

2. 三百二三 3 2 2

WG

you to

at

-

t

the Morepost most the Heath and Eorest grounds, the Rails love the long high Grass where they may obscure.

The way of finding them is like that of the heridge, by the Eye, the Ear, and Haunt: but the diway of all to find them out is the Call or Pipe, which they liften with fuch earnestness, that you on o fooner imitate their Notes, but they will answer them, and will pursue the Call with such greeding that they will play and skip about you, may run on you, especially the Quail.

The notes of the Male and Female differ very mand therefore you mult have them both at your can mand; and when you hear the Male call, you man answer in the Females note; and when the Femalesk you must answer in the Males note; and thus you will see that to have them both come to you, who will see

and liften till the Net is cast over them.

The way of taking these Birds is the same with the of the Partridge, and they may be taken with Ness. Lime, either Bush or Rod, or Engine, which you make with; or by the Setting-dog, which I shall too of in the next Chapter.

How to elect and train a SETTING DOG from a Whelp till he come to perfection.

The Dog which you elect for Setting must be a perfect and good scent, and he naturally addited to the hunting of Feathers. And this Dog may be ther Land-spaniel, Water spaniel, or Mungrel of this both; either the Shallow-slewed Houndy. Tumble Lurche,

Lurches, or small bastard Mastisff. But there is none bester than the Land-spaniel, being of a good and nimble fize, rather small than gross, and of a courageous mettle; which though you cannot discern being young, you may very well know from a right breed, which have been known to be strong, lusty and nimble Rangers, of active Feet, wanton Tails, and busie Nostrils; whose Tail was without weariness, their Search without changeableness, and whom no delight did transport beyond sear or obedience.

When you have made choice of your Dog, begin to infind him about four months old, or fix months at

the uttermost.

œ,

u o

infi

聚色學是學是

H. H. H.

The first thing that you shall teach your Dog, is to make him loving and familiar with you, knowing you from any other person, and following you where-ever you go. To effect this the better, let him receive his food as near as you can from no other hand but your own; and when you correct him to keep him in awe, do it rather with words than blows.

When you have have so instructed your Dog that he will sollow none but your self, and can distinguish your sown from your smile, and smooth words from rough, you must then teach him to couch and lie down close to the ground; first, by laying him often on the ground, and crying, Lie close. When he hath done any thing to your mind and pleasure, you must then reward him with a piece of Bread: if otherwise, chastisse him with words, but sew blows.

After this, you must teach him to come creeping unto you with his Belly and Head close upon the ground, as far or as little a way as you shall think fit: and this you may do by faying, Come nearer, come nearer, or the like; and at first, till he understand your meating, by thewing him a piece of Bread or some other

[K 4]

food

and

cate

and

455

por

giv

pre

food to entice him to you. And this observe in a creeping to you, if he offer to raise his Body or He you must not onely thrust the riting-part down, a threaten him with your angry voice; which if he to slight, then add a sharp jerk or two with a Whit cord-lash.

You must often renew his Lessons till he be very perfect, still encouraging him when he does well.

If you walk abroad with him, and he take a fang to range, even when he is most busic speak to him, as justifie height of his passime make him fall upon his Belly and lie close, and after that make him come one ping to you.

After this teach him to lead in a String or Line, and to follow you close at your heels without trouble or

straining of his Collar,

By that time he hath learned these things aforesided to conceive the Dog may be a twelvementh old a which time the season of the year being sit, take his into the field and permit him to range, but still into bedience to your command. But is through wanton-ness he chance to babble or open without cause, you must then correct him sharply, either with a Whipcord-lash, or biting him hard at the Roots of his Ears.

Having brought him to a good temper and just of bedience, then, as soon as you see him come upon the Haunt of any Partridge, (which you shall know by his greater eagerness in hunting, as also by a kind of whimpering and whining in his voice, being very delivous to open, but not daring) you shall speak to him bidding him take heed, for the like; but if notwithshanding he either rush in and spring the Partridge, or opens, and so the Partridge escapeth, you must then correct him severely, and cast him off again, and let him hunt in some haunt where you know a Covy lies.

and fee whether he hath mended his fault: And if you can any with your Nets, give him the Heads, Necks, and Pinions for his future encouragement.

Many more observations there are, which are too numerous here to recite; wherefore I shall desist, and give you an account of a Water-dog, and so finish this

present Discourse.

1.4.1

or Ho

wn, k

be for

Whi

ry pa-

a fancy

on his

Cres.

and

e or

aid,

0-

D.

00

p.

How to train a WATER-DOG, and the use thereof.

I Shall begin with the best proportion of a Water-dog, and first of his colour. Although some do attribute much to the colour, yet experience lets us know

they are uncertain observations.

To proceed then, your Dog may be any colour and ret excellent; but chuse him of Hair long and curled, not loose and shagged: his Head must be round and curled, his Ears broad and hanging, his Eye full, lively and quick, his Nose very short, his Lip Hound-like, his Chaps with a full set of strong Teeth, his Neck thick and short, his Breast sharp, his Shoulders broad, his Forelegs straight, his Chine square, his Buttocks round, his Belly gaunt, his Thighs brawny, &c.

For the training this Dog, you cannot begin too foon with him; and therefore as foon as he can lap, you must teach him to couch and lie down, not daring to thir from that posture without leave. Observe in his first teaching to let him eat nothing till he deserve it; and let him have no more Teachers, Feeders, Cherishers, or Correctors but one; and do not alter that word you first use in his information, for the Dog takes

notice of the found, not the language.

When

When you have acquainted him with the word in table to his Leffon, you must then teach him to leave the word of Reprehension, which at first should not a used without a Jerk. You must also use words of devisioning, to give him encouragement when he does well and in all these words you must be constant, and in them be attended with spitting in his mouth, or devisiting of the hand. There is also a word of Advicting thrucking him when he does amis.

Having made him understand these several word, you must next teach him to lead in a string or Coller orderly, not running too sorward, nor hanging backward. After this you must teach him to come close at your heels without leading; for he must not range by any means, unless it be to beat Fowl from their Cover.

or to fetch the wounded.

In the next place you must teach him to setch and carry any thing you throw out of your hands. And said ery him with the Glove, shaking it over his Head, and making him snap at it; and sometimes let him hold it in his mouth, and strive to pull it from him; and at last throw it a little way, and let him worry it on the ground: and so by degrees make him bring it you where ever you throw it. From the Glove you may teach him to setch Cudgels, Bags, Nets; &c.

If you use him to carry dead Fowl, it will not be amiss; for by that means he will not tear or bruile

what Fowl you floor.

Having perfected this Lesson, drop something behind you which the Dog doth not see y and being gone a little way from it, send him back to seek it, by saying, Back, Thave lost. If he seem arrazed, point with your Finger, unging him to seek out, and leave him not till he hath done it. Then drop something at a greater distance, and make him find out that too, till you have brought him to go back a trile.

Now

bim f

16

T

tim

DU

Now may you train him up for your Gun, making him halk after you step by step, or else couch and lie age till you have shot.

Many more necessary Rules there are, which for bre-

vity fake I must omit.

And was I said

अर्थ:

de vis

d.

by

The last use of the Water-dog is in moulting-time, when Wild fowl east their Feathers and are unable to sty, which is between Summer and Autumn: at this time bring your Dog to their Coverts, and hunt them but into the stream, and there with your Nets suprize them, driving them into them; for at this time sheep will not drive more easily. And though some may object, that this sickly time is unleasonable; yet if they consider what excellent food these Fowl will prove when cramm'd, the taking of them may be very excussible. I have eaten of them after they have been fed a while with Livers of Beast, Whey, Custs, Barley, Paste, saided Bran, and such-like; they have proved exceeding fat, and have tasted not so fishy as they do by their institual seeding; but exceeding sweet, and deserve to be preferred before any Fowl whatever.

Recketter, managed of the sense of the start bailed is the start of the sense of th

is be come the first of a line first of the color of the colors of the c

I arrive the late to the Late and Conca.

Cool of the state of the state of

How to take, preserve, and keep all sorts of Singing-birds that are commonly known in England. Giving also an account of their Mature, Breeding, Feeding, Diseases of the same, with their Remedies.

In the preceeding Diffcourse I have given you a Summary account of the several ways and artifices which are used to take either Land-sowl, or Fowl properly belonging to the Water. Upon second thoughts I look upon this Third part of the Gentlemans Recreation, called a Treatise of Fowling impersect, if I add not now what I omitted before; a small Essay as to the Taking, Preserving, and Keeping all sorts of Singing-birds commonly known in these his Majesties three Kingdoms. They are thus called.

The Nightingal.
The Starling.
The Gold-fineh.
The Wood-lark.
The Linnet.
The Linnet.
The Chaff-fineh.
The Chaff-fineh.
The Rob.Red-breaft.
The Skie-lark.
The Gold-fineh.
The Green-fineh.
The Wren.
The Hedgeparrow.

Lastly, their Diseases and Cures.

(we

is b

fo'

Of the NIGHTINGAL.

A Ccording to the judgment of most men, the Nightingale carries the Bell from all other Singing-birds, opening her charming Mouth not onely sweetly, but with much variety of pleasant Notes: It is but a small Bird, yet hath a loud voice; which made the Poet call her——Vox, & preterea nibil. They are so well known, a description of them would be needles; and are not onely esteemed of here, but in Italy and other parts.

78

They appear to us at the latter end of March, or beginning of April, and very few know where they inhabit all the Winter; some think they sleep all that featon.

She makes her Neft commonly about two foot above ground, either in thick Quick-fet-hedges, or in Beds of Nettles where old Quick-fet hath been thrown together. She hatcheth her young ones about the beginning of May, and naturally delights to frequent cool places, where small Brooks are garnished with pleasant Groves, and Quick-fet-hedges are not far diffant.

That Nightingale which in my opinion is the best to keep, is he that is the earliest Bird of the Spring; for he will sing the better, having more time to hear the Old one sing than those that are hatched later.

The young Nightingales must be taken out of their Ness when they are indifferently well sledg'd in a mediocrity: for if well feathered, they will become sullen; and if too little, they are so tender the cold will kill them.

For

For their meat give them lean Beef, Sheepshear or Bullocks-heart, taking away first the fat Skin the covereth it, and take away the Sinews; after the foak the like quantity of white Bread in water. foueeze out some of the water; then mince it final then feed them with a Stick, taking upon the point thereof the quantity of a Grey Pea, and give every of them three or four such gobbets in an hour, as he as they shall endure to be in the Nest: when they able to flie out of the Nett, then put them into a Car with feveral Pearches for them to fit upon, and be them with fome green Bays, for they are very subset to the Cramp at first; and at the bottom of the put in some Moss or Hey, as well for other Birds a the Nightingale: it is safe to line their Cages against Winter, or keep them in some warm place. When they are first Caged, continue for a while to put fore of their Meat by them mingled with Ants, which will induce them to feed themselves.

h:)

or l

6

In the Summer you must feed them every der with fresh Meat, otherwise it will quickly grow has or stink. When they begin to moult, give them has Egg hard boiled, and half Sheeps-heart mingled with Saffron and Water. Here note, Duck-eggs will have them: you may give them sometimes red Woms. Caterpillars, and Hog-lice; Meal-worms make them familiar. Suffering them to take them out of your

hand.

The way of taking Old and Young is thus: For the Young, observe where the Cock sings; and if he sings long, the Hen is not far from that place, who oftentimes betrays her Off-spring by being too careful; for when you come near her Nest, she will Save and Cur: if notwithstanding this, you cannot find her Nest, stick a Meal-worm or two upon a Thom, and then lying down or standing, observe which way

tis caried by the Old one, and drawing near, you ill hear the young ones when the feeds them. When on here found out the Nest, touch not the young; bed you do, they will not tarry in the Neft.

品之義 至原表言 多号

The way to take Branchers, by others called Pufpers. bequie when throughly fleg'd the Old ones push dem out of the Neft) I fay, you must take them after this manner: When you have found where they are. hich you shall know by their Curring and Sweeting ; for if you call true, they will answer you immediateh:) having your Tackle all ready, scrape, in the Ditch or Bank-fide, the Earth about three quarters of a vard foure that it may look fresh; then take a Bird-trap. or Net-rap, which you must make after this falhion.

How to make a Net-trap for Nightingales.

Take a Net made of green Silk or Thread, about the compais of a yard, made after the fathion of a Shove net for Fishes; then get some large Wyre, and bending it round, joyn both ends, which you must put into a short Stick about an Inch and an half long; then you must have a piece of Iron with two Cheeks and a hole on each fide, through which you must out force fine Whip-cord three or four times double, that to it may hold the piece of Wood the better unto which the ends of the Wyre are put, and with a Button on each fide the Iron, twift the Whip-cord, that so the Net may play the quicker: you must fasten the Net to the Wyre as you do a Shove-net to the Hoop; then get a Board of the compass of your Wyre, and joyn your two cheeks of Iron at the handle of your Board; then make a hole in the middle of your Board; and put a piece of Stick of about two Inches long, and a Hole at the Top of your Stick, which you must have

have a Peg to put in with two Wyres, an Indianes half long, to flick your Meal-worm upon; then the String in the middle of the top of your Net, draw the Net up, having an eye at the end of the handle put your Thread through, pull it till it frands upid the C then pull it through the hole of the Stick that for in the middle of your Board, and put your Peg in Thef hole, and that will hold the String that the Net can fall down: you must put two Worms upon the Wine before you put it into the hole, and fet it as gently you can, that it may fall with the first touch of the Nightingale: When you have your Net and Wood ready, having first scraped the place, then put for Ants in your Trap-cage, and upon your Board put for Worms upon Thorns, and fet them at the bottomic your Trap-cage, little holes being made for the fare purpose to stick in the ends of your Thorns: The plant your Trap near to the place where you hand them call, either in the Ditch, or by the Bank-fide, or corner of a Hedge, and then walk away; you mayir what number of Trap-cages you think convenient. Do what is here proposed, and you need not doubt the he ving of your defires fatisfied.

est,

the !

to t

wh

or

and

che

har W

0

ai

1

Having taken your Nightingales, (the times is in for ly or August) tye the ends of their Wings with some brown Thread, that so they may be disenabled to hat themselves by beating their tender bodies against the

top and Wyres of the Cage.

Let the Cage be covered above half with green Bays and for four or five days let him be very little diffurbed by company; but withal forget not to feed them half a dozen times every day with Sheeps-heart and Egg shred very fine, and mingle red Ants therewith, and a few red Earth-worms would not do amis.

Here note, that no Nightingale at first taking will eat any other food than what is living, as Worms, Ants,

drawn andle

Prig

in di

CARRE

ntly

of the Word

fore

on of Gant

Fha

card

or

ffet

Do

hı.

ne

nt

nch states Flies, or Caterpillars; which through fullenness en the Will not eat, then take him out, and upon the of a Stick (first opening his Bill) give him four whe gobbets one after another; then turn him into & Cage, frowing the bottom thereof with Egg and sinced Sheeps-heart mingled with fome Pismires. These Nightingales that are taken at this time of the rear, will not fing till the middle of October, and then they will hold in fong till the middle of June: But the Nightingales that are taken from the first of April to the twentieth, are the best Birds for Song in the whole Universe; and these are taken with Trap-cages or Trapnets, as the Branchers aforesaid, in June, July, and Angust. Here observe, that Nestlings nor Branthers (except they have an old Bird to fing over them) have not the true Song for the first twelve months. When you have to tamed them that they begin to Cur and Sweet with chearfulness, and record foftly to themelves, it is a certain figne that they eat, and then you med not trouble your felf with feeding them; but if they fing before they feed, they commonly prove most excellent Birds: Those Birds that are long a feeding, and make no Curring nor Sweeting, are not worth the keeping. If you have a Bird that will flutter and bolt up his head in the night against the top of the Cage, keep him not, for he is not onely good for nothing, but his bad example will teach the best of your Birds to do the like.

Now to the intent you may not keep Hens instead of Cocks, and fo not onely be at useless charge, but be frustrated of your expectation, you shall distinguish their Sexes by these observations. The Cock in the judgment of some is both longer and bigger: others fay the Cock hath a greater Eye, a longer Bill, and a Tail more reddish: others pretend to know them by the Pinion of the Wing, and Feathers on the Head. Thefe no 117

on

Es the

b

Elb

and

4

the

wi

w

m

bri

G

10

de

H

O

th

to

8

These Rules I look not upon as infallible, having sund them contrary to truth by my own experience: Nor to undeceive you, take these true Experimental & servations. First, take notice that if any of your Not lings (before they can feed themselves) do Recordal little to themselves, and in their Recording you perceive their Throats to wag, you need not doubt the they are Cocks; but when they come to feed themselves, the Hen will Record as well as the Cock; therefore mark them when young, for it is very difficult a diffinguish afterwards.

Branchers, whether Cocks or Hens (when taken and do feed themselves) will Record; but the Cock does

it much longer, fouder, and oftener.

The best sort of Nightingales frequent High-way, Orchards, and sing close by houses: these when take will feed soonest, being more acquainted with the company of people; and after their feeding will grow a miliar, and sing speedily. Observe, not to universal soon the Wings of your Nightingale; for if he be not very familiar and tame when he is unived, he will be apt to beat himself against the Cage, and so spoil himself.

Now as to their Discases and Cures, observe this that at the latter end of August they grow very su, either abroad or in a Cage: when it begins to abut when they do not sing, it is a dangerous signe; when fore to remedy this, keep them very warm, giving them Saffron in their meat or water: when you perceive the growth of their fat, purge them thrice a Week sort Month, either with a Worm which is found in Rigeon-houses, or with a speckled Spider, which you may find plentifully about Vines, Currans, or Goose-being-bushes in August, and at no time else. If they are melancholy, put into their Drinking-pot some Liquidit with a little white Sugar-candy, giving them to see

on Sheeps-heart shred small, some Meal-worms, and Fees mingled with Pismires. It is strange that some of the Birds when fat will fast three weeks, which I have

known; but it is better when they eat.

Mighingales kept in a Cage two or three years, are subject to the Gout: for their Cure, take fresh Butter and anoint their Feet four or five days, and they will be well again. Here note, that for want of keeping them clean, their Feet are clog'd, and then their Claws will rot off, and are subject to Gout and Cramp, and will take no delight in themselves; to prevent these mishiels, put dry Sand into the bottom of their Cages.

They are likewise troubled with Aposthumes and breaking out about their Eyes and Neb; for which, use Gapons-grease. And thus much of the Diseases of the

Nighting ale.

三年等音音译是在安全

K,

4

00

4

t

Of the CANARY-BIRD.

Though many of these Birds are lately brought from Germany, and therefore are called by the name of that Country, yet undoubtedly their Original proceeded from the Canary-Islands. They are in colour much like our Green-birds, but differ much in their Song and Nature; and in this they differ from all Birds: For as others are subject to be fat, the Cocks of these never are, by reason of the greatness of their mettle, and their lavish singing; either of these will not suffer him to keep hardly fielh upon his back.

The best of them are shaped long, standing straight

and boldly.

Before you buy either these German or Canary-birds, has them sing, and then you will know how to please [12] your

at

thi do

Pa

bn

ter

21

to

b

T

12

th

u di

2 T 2 T 1

.

your Ear or fancy, either with Sweet-song, Lavier note, or Long-song, which is bett, having most varies of Notes. Some like those that which and chem site unto a Tit-lark; others are for those that begin like the Skie-lark, and so continue their Song with a long, in sweet Note; a third fort are for those that begin the Song with the Skie-lark, and then run upon the Note of the Nightingale, which is very pleasant if he does it well: The last is for a loud Note and lavish, regarder.

ding no more in it than a noise.

If you would know whether your Canary-bird bein health before you purchase him, take him out of the Store-cage, and put him into a clean Cage alone; when if he stand boldly without crouching, without shrinking Feathers, and his Eyes looking brisk and chanfully; these are good signes of a healthy Bird: But now observe, if he bolts his Tail like a Nightingaled ter he hath dunged, it shews he is not well; though the seem lively for the present, there is some Distemper near attending: likewise if he either dung very thin and watry, or of a slimy white, and no blackness in it; these are dangerous signes of death approaching.

These Birds are subject to many Diseases, as Impossible which afflict their head, and are of a yellow colour, causing a great heaviness, and withal a falling from the Pearch, and death ensuing, if this Malady is not speedily cured. The most approved Gure is to make an Ointment of fresh Butter and Capons-great melted together, and anoint therewith the Bird's Impossible three or four days together: if it become so, open it gently and let out the matter; then anoint the place with some of the same Ointment, and this will immediately cure him: during the Cure, give him sign and Liquorish, and white Sugar-candy in his Water.

Canary-birds above three years old are called Runs

Variety

m like

like

Br ya

n chair

Note

e dos

regn.

bein

of the

where

rink-

hear-

But le al. h he hear

it;

8

at two years old they are called Eriffs; and those of the first year are called Branchers; when they are new fown and cannot feed themselves, they are called Pulbers; and those that are brought up by hand, Neftlines. Now fince there are but few Canary-birds which breed in England, it being fo great a trouble to look after them, I shall here insert nothing concerning the ordering when they intend or begin to build; what things are necessary for them when they begin to breed; how to order them when they have young ones; or how to breed the young ones when taken out of the Neft : Those who intend to be informed of every thing hereunto belonging, may eafily be instructed by applying themselves to several Germans in and about the City, who make it their business to breed Canary-birds after the best (German) fashion.

Of the BLACK-BIRD.

A S fome do esteem the Nightingale to be the best Singing-bird in the World, so in my opinion the Black-bird is the worst; yet they are as frequently kept as their betters, and are in great estimation amongst the Vulgar; for no other reason that I know, than for the loudness and coarseness of his Song, as they are Borish in their Speech, and have little but rusticity in their Conditions. To be short, he is better to be eaten than kept, and is much sweeter to the Palate when dead, than to the Ear when living.

She builds her Nest upon old Stumps of Trees by Ditch-sides, or in thick Hedges. As they begin betimes, that is, in the beginning of Mareb, (when many times the Woods are full of Snow) so they breed

at

thi

Pa

lin

bre

ter

de

to

b

T

u

th

th

.

I

your Ear or fancy, either with Sweet-song, Lavillanote, or Long-song, which is bett, having most variety of Notes. Some like those that whick and eben like unto a Tit-lark; others are for those that begin like; Skie-lark, and so continue their Song with a long, of sweet Note; a third fort are for those that begin the Song with the Skie-lark, and then run upon the Note of the Nightingale, which is very pleasant if he doe it well: The last is for a loud Note and lavilla, regarder.

ding no more in it than a noise.

if you would know whether your Canary-bird bein health before you purchase him, take him out of the Store-cage, and put him into a clean Cage alone; where if he stand boldly without crouching, without shrinking Feathers, and his Eyes looking brisk and cherfully; these are good signes of a healthy Bird: But now observe, if he bolts his Tail like a Nightingaled ter he hath dunged, it shews he is not well; though be seem lively for the present, there is some Distemper near attending: likewise if he either dung very thin and watry, or of a slimy white, and no blackness in it; these are dangerous signes of death approaching.

These Birds are subject to many Diseases, as Impossible which afflict their head, and are of a yellow colour, causing a great heaviness, and withal a falling from the Pearch, and death ensuing, if this Malady is not speedily cured. The most approved Gure is to make an Ointment of fresh Butter and Capons-great melted together, and anoint therewith the Bird's Impossible three or four days together: if it become so, open it gently and let out the matter; then anoint the place with some of the same Ointment, and this will immediately cure him: during the Cure, give him sign and Liquorish, and white Sugar-candy in his Water.

Canary-birds above three years old are called Runti

rarict

m lik

like a

& ya

o thair

Note

dos

regg.

bein

fthe

vhere

rink-

icar.

But e afi he icar

it;

at two years old they are called Eriffs; and those of the first year are called Branchers; when they are new flown and cannot feed themselves, they are called Pulbers; and those that are brought up by hand, Neftlines. Now fince there are but few Canary-birds which breed in England, it being so great a trouble to look after them, I shall here insert nothing concerning the ordering when they intend or begin to build; what things are necessary for them when they begin to breed; how to order them when they have young ones; or how to breed the young ones when taken out of the Neft: Those who intend to be informed of every thing hereunto belonging, may eafily be instructed by applying themselves to several Germans in and about the City, who make it their business to breed Canary-birds after the best (German) fashion.

Of the BLACK-BIRD.

A S forme do esteem the Nightingale to be the best Singing-bird in the World, so in my opinion the Black-bird is the worst; yet they are as frequently kept as their betters, and are in great estimation amongst the Vulgar; for no other reason that I know, than for the loudness and coarseness of his Song, as they are Borish in their Speech, and have little but rusticity in their Conditions. To be short, he is better to be eaten than kept, and is much sweeter to the Palate when dead, than to the Ear when living.

She builds her Nest upon old Stumps of Trees by Ditch-sides, or in thick Hedges. As they begin betimes, that is, in the beginning of March, (when many times the Woods are full of Snow) so they breed

[13]

ofte

Shore

the Sp

ont:

mt m

cher.

cating

T

trave

We an inch

often, that is, three or four times a year, according

they lofe their Neft.

The young Black-birds are brought up almost win any meat whatseever; but above all, they love Ground worms, Sheeps-heart, hard Eggs, and white Bread and Milk mixt together.

This Bird fings somewhat more than three months in the year; his Note, as I said, is harsh, therefore to adde a value to him, let him be taught to whistle; yet put Song and Whistle together, in my judgment it is titter for a large Inne than a Lady's Chamber.

Of the THROSTLE.

OF Throstles there be five kinds; the Mistle-throstle, the Northern-throstle or Felfare, the Wind-throstle, the Wood-song-throstle, and the Heath-throstle.

The first is the largest of all the five, and the most beautiful; it feeds for the most part on the Berries of Missletce: and since that they are so good against the Falling-lickness and Convulsions, these Throstler, when dried and pulverized and drank in the water of Missletce, or Black-cherry-water, are much more effectual against those two Distempers. He sings but little, and therefore though the young ones are easie to be brought up, being hardy, yet he is not worth the keeping; for his Notes are rambling and consused, yet not lavish neither.

The second is the Felfare, who comes into England before Michaelmas, and goes away about the beginning of March. In hard weather they feed on Hips and Haws; but when it is indifferently warm, there being neither Frost nor Snow on the ground, they feed on young Grass and Worms.

They breed upon certain Rocks near the Scotish Shore three or four times a year, and are there in very greet numbers: They are not so fit for the Cage as the Spit, having a most lamentable untun'd chattering tone: in Frost and Snow they are very fat, and then are most delicate food; but being killed in open weather, they are so bitter, that they are not worth the cating.

Thirdly, the Wind-throftle, (or Whindle) which travels with the Felfare out of the North, is a smaller Bird, with a dark red under his Wing. He breeds in Woods and Shaws as Song-throftles use todo, and hath an indifferent Song, exceeding the two former; but yet they are fitter for the Pot or Spit than for a Cage

or Avery.

bauc

d and

onth

re to

yet

it is

The fourth is the Wood-fong-thruftle, and fings most icomparably, both lavishly, and with variety of Notes: To adde to his estimation, he fings at least nine of the

welve months in the year.

They build about the fame time, place, and manner as the Black-bird does: her policy in the building of her Nest is much to be admired, fince the composure sannot be mended by the art of Man; Besides the curious building, she leaves a little hole in the bottom of her Nest, as I conceive to let out the Water, if a violent shower should come, that so her Eggs or young ones may not be drowned.

They go very foon to Nest if the Weather sawer them, and breed three times a year, that is, in March or April, May and June; but the first Birds u-

fually prove the best.

Take them in the Nest when they are sourteen days old, and keep them warm and clean, not suffering them to sit on their Dung, but so contains it, that they dung over the Nest. Feed them with raw Meat and some Bread chopped together [14]

with bruifed Hemp-feed, wetting your Bread before yo

mingle it with the meat.

Being throughly fledg'd, put them into a Cage who they may have room enough, with two or three Peaches, and some Moss at the bottom of the Cage, to kee them clean; for otherwise they will be troubled with the Gramp, and for want of delighting in themselve the singing will be spoil'd.

Ti's

Bi

of the

fore t

in th

W

from

bask

fulle

muf

foed

flair

Pit

ON

ke

35

b

Bread and Hemp-feed is as good food for them at can be given; and be mindful of firmilling them at least twice a week with fresh water, they may be the and prune themselves therein, otherwise they will not

thrive.

The fifth and last is the Heath-throstle, which is the least we have in England, having a dark breast. Some are of opinion that this bird exceeds the Song-throstle.

having better Notes, and neater Plume.

The Hen builds by the Heath-side in a Furz-bush, or stump of an old Haw-thorn, and makes not Shaws and Woods her haunt as other Throstles do. She begins not to breed till the middle of April, and breeds but twice in a year; and if kept clean and well fed, will fing three parts in four of the whole year. Their man-

ner of breeding is in like-fort as the former.

To know the Cock from the Hen, according to old Country-judgment, is to chuse the top-bird of the Nest, which commonly is most sledg'd. Others think that to be the Cock which hath the largest Eye, and most speckles on his breast. Others chuse the Cock by the pinion of his Wing, if it hath a very dark black that goes a cross it; but above all, chuse him thus: If his Gullet be white with black streaks on each side, his spots on his Breast large and black, having his head of a light shining brown, with black streaks under each Eye and upon the pinion of the Wing; these are the best marks that ever I observed.

Ore yo

Pen o kee With

ldva

em a

ma

bathe

l not

the

ome

the.

a,

ns

ı 1

of the ROBIN-RED-BREAST.

Tis the opinion of some, that this little King of Birds for sweetness of Note comes not much short of the Nightingale. It is a very tender Bird, and therefore must have its Cage lined. They breed very early in the Spring, and commonly thrice a year.

When the young are about ten days old, take them from the old ones, and keep them in a little Bowerbasket: if they tarry long in the Neft, they will be fullen, and therefore more difficultly brought up : you must feed them as you feed the Nightingale in all refeets: finding them grow strong, put them into a Cage, put Moss in the bottom thereof, and let them fland warm.

The way of taking a Robin-red-breaft is so easie and common, that every Boy knows how to take him in a Rifall; but with a Trap-cage and a Meal-worm you may take half a score in a day: Hearing them sing, keep those birds which most delight you. If you take any without hearing them fing, thus you shall know whether he be Cock or Hen; if a Cock, his breast will beof a darker red, and his red will go farther up upon the head than the Hens.

Of the WREN.

His Bird in my opinion is a pretty sweet dapper I Songster, being of a nature chearful; as he is pleasant to the Ear, so he is to the Eye; and when he fings

fings cocks up his Tail, and throws out his Notes wis
for much alacrity and pleasure, that I know not as
bird of its bigness more delights the sense of the

ring.

This Bird builds twice a year, about the latterend of April, in thrubs where Ivy grows thick, and sometime in old Hovels and Barns. They lay a numerous quantity of Eggs; and I can affure you I have seen a Net containing two and twenty: herein are two thing greatly to be wondred at; first, that so small a bin should cover such a great quantity of Eggs; second, when they have hatched, to seed them all, and note

miss one bird, and in the dark also.

Their second time of breeding is in the middle of Tune: of either breed, what you intend to keep mi be taken out of the Nest at thirteen or fourteen days old. Let their food be Sheeps-heart and Egg mined very small, or Calves or Heifers-heart; but be fur to clear them of the Fat and Sinews, which must be age. neral rule to be observed for all Meat-birds. Feed then in the Nest every day very often, but a little at a time; let the instrument you feed them with be a Stick; and when you observe them to pick it off of their own to cord, then cage them, and putting meat to them in a little Pan, and about the fides of the Cage, to entice them to eat; however, have a care to feed them too left they neglect themselves and die. When they can feed themselves very well, give them once in three days a Spider or two. You may teach them to whiftle tunes if you so defire it; for they are easily taught, being a bird that's very docible. Here note, if they be fed with Paste, they will live longer than if they fed upon Hearts, The brownest and largest of the young Wrens are the Cocks.

HOM

7 bu

rcelle

Thi

on of

are i

r lea

or no

T

TOU

Qi.

when

largi

1

ad had

hvi

Ni

no

th

ris

V La

Of the WOOD-LARK.

ction come prefer the Wood-lark before the Nightingale; but it is of this bird as all others, some are more

ot : f Ha

end o

Ot to

e d

to

D

d

Not reclient in length and fweetness of Song.

This bird breeds the soonest of any we lead to bird wor his extraordinary mettlesomeness This bird breeds the soonest of any we have, by reaon of his extraordinary mettlesomeness: and thereore if they are not taken in the beginning of February t leaft, they grow fo rank that they will prove good or nothing.

The places this bird most delights in are gravelly mounds, and Hills lying towards the Orient, and in Their building is in your Laiers grounds, Out-flubs. where the Grass is rank and ruffet, making their Nests of Bernet-grass, or dead Grass of the field under some large Tuffet, to shelter them from the injury of the weather.

This Bird hath very excellent pleafant Notes, with met variety, infomuch that I have observed some have ad almost thirty several Notes; which if they sing with, is a most ravishing melody or harmony, if the

Nightingale joyn in consort.

These Birds are never bred from the Ness as ever lould hear: I have several times attempted it, but to no purpole; for notwithstanding my greatest care, they died in a Week, either of the Cramp or Scowring,

The times of the year to take them are June, July, duguit; and then they are called young Branchers, having not yet moulted. They are taken likewise at the htter end of September; but having then moulted, the young and old are not diffinguishable.

Laftly,

Lastly, they are taken from the beginning of January to the latter end of February, at which to the they are all coupled and returned to their Breedin will

places.

The way to take them in June, July, and August, with an Hobby, after this manner; get out in a den Morning, and go to the fides of some Hills which to the rising of the Sun, where they most usually for quent; and having sprung them, observe where the fall; then surround them twice or thrice with you Höbby on your Fist, causing him to hover when you draw near, by which means they will lie still till not clap a Net over them, which you carry on the points a Stick.

MCC

you

mi

He

po

K

SE B

.

If three or four go together, take a Net like or made for Partridges: when you go with a Settingdog onely, the Mesh must be smaller, that is, a Lark-mesh, and then your Hobby to the Lark is like a Settingdog to Partridges, and with your Net at one draught me

may take the whole flock.

The Wood-lark that is taken in June, July, and dignst will sing presently, but will not last long, by refon of their moulting. That which is taken in Juneary and February will sing in five or six days, or some, and these are the best, being taken in sull stormack, and are more perfect in their Song than those taken at other seasons.

If in the Cage you find him grow poor at the beginning of the Spring, give him every two or three days a Turff of Three-leav'd-grass, (as is used to the Skie-lark) and boil him a Sheeps heart and mine it small, mingling it among his Bread, Egg, and Hemp-seed, which will cause him to thrive extraordinarily.

If he be troubled with Lice, (a Distemper he is commonly afflicted withal) take him out of the Cage, and smooth

neathim with Tobacco; give him fresh gravel, and the bim in a hot place where the Sun shines, and this will cure him if he have strength to bask in the Sand.

If you would have him fing lavish, feed him with seeps-heart, Egg, Bread and Hemp-feed mixt togeter, and put into his water a little Liquorish, white sugar-candy, and Saffron: Let this be done once a

week.

ch ti

Mg Mf.

a den

ally from

you

en you

int of

one

-doe

ch.

dog

YOU

14.

2-

¥-

d

Upon the first taking of your Wood-lark, thus must you do; you must put into your Cage two Pans, one for minc'd meat, and another for Oat-meal and whole Hemp-seed. Then having boil'd an Egg hard, take the crums of white Bread, the like quantity of Hemp-seed pounded in a Mortar, and mingle your Bread and it with your Egg minc'd very small, and give it him. Let there heat the bottom of the Cage sine red Gravel, and let the shifted every week at farthest; for he delights to bask in the Sand, which will not be convenient if solld with green Bays, or which is better, make a pearch of a Mat: and less they should not find the Pan so soon as they should do, to prevent famine, strew upon the Sand some Oat-meal and Hemp-seed.

How to know the Cock is thus: first, the largeness and length of his Call: Secondly, his tall walking: Thirdly, at Evenings the doubling of his Note, which Artists call Cuddling, but if you hear him sing strong,

you cannot be deceived.

Here note, that if a Bird fings not that is taken in February and January within one month after, you may conclude him not worth the keeping, or else is an Hen

infallibly.

The Wood-lark as it is naturally endewed with incomparable notes, so it is a tender Bird, and difficult to be kept; but if rightly ordered, and well look'd to, will

LAKE

w th

Je in

a and

ith f

e pu

at cac

tron

CAIT

hear are

allf

Par Par

t

will be a most delightful Songster to its many growing better and better every year even to the last.

These Birds are very subject to the Cramp, of diness in the Head, and to Louziness. The best to dy to prevent the Cramp, is to shift the Cage often a fresh Gravel, otherwise the Dung will clog to their which causeth the Cramp. The giddiness of the serving this distemper, give him some Gentles, the common Bait for Fisher-men) Hog-lice, Emmets at their Eggs, with Liquorish, all put into water, as serve in their stead, and will cure immediately. Louiness (which causeth leanness in this bird) is cured as said before by smooking Tobacco.

of the SKIE-LARK: The several ways to take them; and when taken, how to order them.

There is a great difference between one Skielink and another; for one may not be worth two pence, when another shall be worth two pounds.

This Bird is very hardy, and will live upon any food in a manner, fo that he have but once a week's Turff of Three-leav'd-grafs. As the Wood-lark bath young ones in March, the Skie-lark hath rarely any till the middle of May. They commonly build in Com, or thick high grafs Meadows, and feldom have more than four: take them at a fortnight old, and at find give them minced sheeps-heart with a chopt hard Egg mingled: when they can feed alone, give them Bread, Hemp-seed, and Out-meal; let the Bread be mingled

led with Egg, and the Hemp-feed bruifed: Let them we fand in the bottom of their Cage; Pearches there-

in ar to no purpole.

the

A ren

CH P

e fla

PO

(the

3

, 1

OD

u

26

1

As the Wood-lark is taken with Net and Hobby, so my the Skie-lark be taken also. They are taken likeic in dark nights with a Trammel; this Net is about
to and thirty yards long, and six yards over, non through
with six ribs of Pack-thread; which ribs at the ends
the put upon two Poles sixteen soot long, made taper
at each end, and so is carried between two men half a
yard from the ground; every six steps touching the
ground, to cause the Birds to sly up, otherwise you may
carry the Net over them without disturbing them:
hearing them sly against the Net, clap it down, and they
are safe under it. This is a very murdering Net, taking
all sorts of birds that it comes near, as Partridges, Quails,
Walcocks, Snipes, Felfarer, and what not, almost in every dark night.

The next way of taking them is with a pair of Drynets and a Glass, which is incomparable passine in a Frosty Morning. These Nets are commonly seem Foot deep, and Fisteen long, knit with your French Mesh, and very sine Thread. These Nets take all sorts of small Birds that come within their Compass, as Bunting-larks, and Linnets in abun-

dance.

These Larks are also taken by a Low-bell, with a goat light carried in a Tub both by one man, and the Netby another; this Bell and Light so amazeth them, that they lie as dead, and stir not till the Net overcast them. By this Bell are all sorts of Fowls and Birds taken, as Partridge and Pheasant; and if the Bell be loowd, or very deep, Duck, Mallard, Woodcook, and Supe may be taken.

The last way of taking Larke is in a great sow, by taking an hundred or two hundred yards

of Pack-thread, fallning at every fix inches a Normade with Horle-hair; two hairs are sufficient. I fince I have already described this way of taking I I shall desist, and onely inform you that those Larly intend to preserve for singing, must be taken in the or November: Chuse the straightest, largest, and loss Bird, and he that hath most white on his Tally these are the marks of the Cock. Observe in this as in all others, that you give no salt Meat, nor he season'd with salt.

Of the LINNET.

and

Heir Nests are usually in Thorn-bushes and Fund bushes; and some of the hotter fort of them will breed four times a year. The young ones may be ula at four days old, if you intend to teach them to white or learn the Song of other Birds: for being fo your they know not the tune of the old Bird. Being h young, keep them very warm, and feed them dim and a little at a time: there must be bruised sorked Rape-feeds, with the like quantity of white bread, of which there must be fresh made every day to prevent fowring, which will make them fcowr to death: It not their Meat be too dry, for fear of being Venburnt, If you intend they shall whistle, do you whist to them in the time of Feeding, being more apth learn before they can crack hard feeds. Whatever Bit you intend your Linnet shall learn his Notes of, hing him under it, and he will perfectly imitate him: my, fo docible this Bird is, as I have been credibly intomed, that some of them have been taught to speak To know the Cock from the Hen, mutt not always discovered by their Breasts; but the Cock is best toom by the brownness of his Back and the white his Wing; that is to say, take your young Linness to the Wing-feathers are grown, and stretch out his wing, holding his body sast with the other hand; and to observe the white upon the sourch, siste, and the white goes close to the Quil, this is a sure sign of a cock.

Many are the Diseases of this Bird, as the Prisick, mown by his panting, flaring Feathers, lean Breaft, and spilling his Seeds up and down the Cage; and this Difease happens for want of Water, or for want of green Meat in the Spring: He is troubled also with Streins or Convulsions of the Breast: Sometimes heis afflicted with hoarfness in his voice, being overhen'd in finging : he is sometimes melancholy , at oher times afflicted with scowring, of which there are forts; the first is thin, and with a black or white fattance in the middle, not very dangerous; the feand is between a black and white, clammy and sticking this is bad; but the third and last is most mortal, which is the white clammy scowring: The several Cures I shall not here set down for brevity sake, but reler you to the care of the Bird-merchant

ent let

Of the GOLD-FINCH, or CHRIST-MAS-FOOL, so called in Norfolk.

They are taken in great plenty about Michaelmas, and will foon become tame. The beauty of this Birds feverally-colour'd Feathers is not much taken solice of, because they are so common among us; but they

they have been fo noted and valued beyond Sel e

great rarities.

They breed commonly in Apple-trees and Patrees thrice a year. You must take the young a with the Nest at ten days old, and feed them after manner: Take some of the best Hemp-seed, pour list it, and mix it with the like quantity of bread, with some slower of Canary-seeds; and out the quantity of a white Pea upon a small Side in them therewith three or sour bits at a time, must seed they can feed themselves, for their nature is tender.

Mo

149

For the purgation of this Bird, as well as all one which feed on Hemp-feed, take the feeds of Mela Succory, and Mercury, which is a principal Head to the Liques; but the best for the Gold-fines are Letter and Plantain; and nothing can be more wholester for him than Wall or Loom-earth, and fore he Sand, and a lump or two of Sugar put always in the

Cage.

Of the TIT-LARK.

This Bird is very short in his Song, and no varied in it; yet some fancy him for his white, Turring, and Chewing: He commonly appears at that time of the year that the Nightingale does, which is the beginning of April, and leaves us at the beginning of September: They are fed when taken as the Nightingale; you must cram him at first, for he will not feed himself, by reason he always feeds on live

Of Fowling.

177

mest in the field, for which cause he is unacquainted with the meat we offer him: when he comes to feed of himself, he will cat what the Wood-lark cats, or al-

most any other meat.

This Bird breeds about the latter end of April, or beginning of May, and builds her Nest on the ground is some Pond-side or Ditch-side, and feeds her young the Caterpillars of Flies. They are easily brought op long hardly, and are not subject to Golds or Gramps of their Birds are, but live long if preserved with the Birds are, but live long if preserved with the Birds our felt with his Song; all that I can say the Birds our felt with his Song; all that I can say the Birds and speech

of the CHAF-FINCH, and about

There is no scarcity of this Bird, and in my mind fitter for the Spit than a Cage, having but one fort plain Song, yet for that he is admired by some,

and kept very charily.

weV.

They build their Ness in Hedges and Trees of all lors, and have young ones twice or thrice a year; they are seldom bred up from the Nest, because they are not apt to take another Birds Song, nor to whistle. The Estation is best both for length of Song, and raicty, concluding it with several Notes very prettily. He is very little subject to any Disease, onely he is included to be very louse, if he be not sprinkled with a bittle Wine twice or thrice a month.

in: witen he comes to teed

No

de

Ь

of

it,

W

K

'n

4

100

3

-

Louis Of the STARLING.

and leads her young His Bird is generally kept by all forts of people; agranbove any other bird for whiftling; but their and tell fault is they have them too fledg'd out of the Ne and that makes them retain commonly fo much of the own hardt Notes ; therefore those who do intend in have them excellent, and avoid their own fqualing Notes, must take them from the old ones at the end of three or four days; and thus you must do to all bid you would learn to whiftle, or speak, or learn another birds Song by hanging under him.

is no ferralty of this bird, and in my mind on and of the REDSTART. eat he is admired by true

His Bird is a Fore-runner of the Nightingale, and is of a very fullen dogged temper in a cage; but abroad is very chearful, and hath a very pleasant lind of whiffling Song.

The Cock is fair and beautifully coloured, and is delightful to the eye. They breed thrice a year; the litter end of April, in May, and towards the latter end d

Jung. They build usually in holes of hollow Trees, a under house-eaves: She is the shiest bird I know a her building; for when the is about her Neft, if the perceive any look on, the forfakes it; and if you touch an Egg she never comes more to the Nest, and if the have young ones and you do the like, the will either flarve them, or break their Necks over the Nell Now

Now though the old ones are thus dogged, yet if you bring up their young, their nature will alter, and becine very tame. I'm usy . qu' inquaid ad or abid

You must take them out of the Nest about ten days de; if they flay longer, they will learn somewhat of the old one's fullen temper, You must feed them with Sheeps-heart and Eggs chopped and mixt together, about the quantity of three white Peas, upon the end of a Stick, when they open their mouths: when they will thus feed, put them into a Cage with meat about it and a Pan of meat therein; and though he feed himfelf, yet it will be very sparingly for four or five days, wherefore you must now and then feed him your felf. Keep him warm in the Winter, and he will fing as well in the night as the day.

Of the BULL-FINCH.

THe Bull-finch hath no Song of his own, nor whifile neither, but is very apt to learn any thing almost, if taught by the mouth.

Of the GREEN-FINCH.

THis Bird is not worth a keeping for his Song, but I for his colour, and being a hardy heavy bird to ring the Bells. Said to die of a face

They breed very fillily by the High-way-fide, and early before the Hedges have leaves upon them; which causes every one to see their Nests at first, so that seldom their first Nests come to any thing. They breed three a Al Tible availage me tage times times a year, and the young ones are very harbirds to be brought up. You may feed, them white Bread and Rape bruifed and foaked together. He is apres to take the Whifile than another But Song. All that can be faid of him, he is a very dat Bird, and will never kill himself either by singings whittling.

Of the HEDGE-SPARROW.

This is not so despicable a bird as some would have it; for if you will mind its Song, you will find very delightful Notes, and sings early in the Spring with great variety. Old or young become tame very quickly, and will sing in a short time after they are taken; so that you take them at the latter end of James you beginning of February: they will feed almost any thing you give them.

Hedge, laying Eggs much different from other Bluk, being of a very fine blue colour. This Bird is very tractable, and will take any bird's Song almost, if the ken young out of the Nest. I shall only speak a few Experiments of others, and deliver some Observations of my own concerning the length of Birds lives, and which are most proper for whistling, and so shall and this Treatise.

First, As to the length of Birds Lives; Among Netting aler formelive but one year, some three, some fire, some eight, and some twelve; singing better and beter for the first seven or eight years, and after that decline by little and little. They must have queful keepers that can preserve their lives to the fifth year;

experi-

liv' ny

1 h

8

H

ni

of

4

6

t

1

t

1

0

greener informs us, where one lives to that age, an

The Wood-lark seldom lives in a Cage above fix

and hardly five.

The Robin real-breast rarely lives above seven years; he is a tender Bird, and much subject to the Falling-sickness, Cramp, and Oppression of the Stomack.

The Skie-lark as he is a hardy Bird, so he is long livid also. All forts of Seed-birds live longer than any soft-beak'd Birds, especially the Canary and Linnet. I have known a Canary-bird live and sing within a year of twenty; in like manner the Linnet.

Somuch as to the Lives of Singing Birds; let us now

consider which are most fit for Whistling.

In the first place I look upon the Starling to be the best; and never heard better than at the Grey-Hund in St. Mary Ax, taught and sold by the ingenious Master of that House. But since I have spoken of the Starling and Bull-sinch already, I shall insist no father.

The Black-bird hath a kind of rude Whiftle; and if young taken out of the Neft, is very apt to

kam.

hare

find

ring

4

m.

on

ate

17

.

The Robin-red-breast is a most incomparable Bird for the Whistle, and to Speak also. A Robin is a hot-mettled Bird, and therefore he must not be in the hearing of another; wherefore if you breed two, let them be separated into two several Rooms, that they may not hear; and so consequently spoil each other.

The Canary-bird will learn to Whistle any thing almost, if taken young out of the Nest, otherwise not; for being a very hot-mettled Bird, he will run upon his own Song do what you can.

The Linnet will learn any Tune almost, if not too long.

long, and too full of variety. Learn him one to first, then another, keeping him dark and still, on the noise of other Birds.

Take this for a general Rule for all Birds, That younger they be, the better they will prove, and a fiver your expectation for all your trouble and put in bringing up and keeping them.

SI

ne T

and d p

.110]

An Abstract

ending for use symmething

Of fuch

STATUTE-LAWS

As concern

FOWLING.

3001 Tall Stat. 11 Hen. 7. cap. 17.

None shall take Phealants of Partice ges with Engines in another's ground without Licente, in pain of 101 to be divided betweet the Owner of the Stound and Profecutor.

Stat. 25 Hen. 8. cap. 11.

Rone thall destroy of take away the Eggs of any Mild fowl, in pain to forfeit for every Egg of a Crane of Bustard to taken or destroyed 20 d. Of a Bittern, Hern, or Shoveland 8 d. And of a Ballard, Ceal, or other Mild fowl 1 d. to be divided betwirt the king and the Profecutor.

Stat. 23 Eliz. cap. 10.

Pone hall kall of take any Phenon of Partringes with any Net of Engine in the night-time, in pain to facilities the Phealant 20. And the enery Partringe in which if the Offender pay not within in bays, he shall luster, one months Impliement without Ball, and enter into Bandforting years) with good Auchtes being long Justices of Peace, not to offend in like kind.

. Il. Done thall bank or bunt with its Spaniels in tranding Grant, or before its Stocked (ercept in his own Ground, with the Owner's content) in pain to form 49s. to the Owner of the laid, Fround, to k recovered as aforelaid.

This an Hall list celegin kowers we within the grant of the control of the contro

Stat. 1 Jacob. cap. 27.10 1110116

Every person convicted by his own Confession, or by two Michelles upon Dath, befold we'd wish Assisted by Deale, to have lasted or Eakin and Philadest of the trings in the Confession of the Confession of the Confession of The Confession Datterages of Sudity, spirited by The Confession Datterages of Sudity, spirited by The Confession Datterages of Sudity, spirited by The Confession Datterages of Sudity of Philades by The Confession Dats, unless by Timberson of the Pour where the Offence was committed the Pour where the Offence was committed.

01 3

to be apprehented, 20% for every powers to be to be a feet of other free for the contract of t

delect person conviced as abovesto, and a Gree spuito. Dog, or Retto kill anke Deer, pare, spealant, or Particular Luples he have imperitante of roll a london, a Lease for ilse of 301 per Annum, or world 2001 in Subse, or other wife be son of a Baron or knight, or Deir sparent of an Esquire) shall luster Impriment as a socially, unless he pay 40 s. to the abovestio.

m. Pone thall fell, or buy to fell again to Pheafant or Partribge; (except by sin traced up or brought from beyond say in vain to forfelt for every Pheafant and every Partribge 10 s. to be vivided bewirt the Profecutor and the Pour of the wrish where fuch Offence is committed.

Stat. 7 Jacob. cap. 11.

Every person convicted by his own Concession, or by two Clitnesses upon Dath, being two or more Justices of Peace, to have review, or bestroyed any Pheasant or Partifles, between the first of July and the last August, that confer one Boneths Impriment without Bait, unless he pay to the site of the Por where the Offence was committed

mitted, 02 be apprehended 40 s. for every to fo hawking, and 20 s. for every Phealan Partridge to taken or bestroped: Burn offence shall be profecuted within it mon after it shall be committed.

- II. It hall be lawful for the Lord of Pannoz, or any having free calarren, heritance of 40 l. per Annum, Free-hold 80 l. per Annum, or Sword worth 400 l. or the Bervants (Licensed by them) to the Phealants or Partridges within their of Sounds or precina, to they no it in the day-time, and only betwirt Michaelmas am Christmass.
- final be convicted by his own Confession, a by one Witness upon Dath before two a more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or Taken any Pheasant or Partrioge with Dogs, Mets, or Engines, he has by the said Justices be Committed to Prison without Bail, unless he pay to the use of the Pw where the Offence was committed 20 s so every Pheasant or Partrioge so killed a taken: And also become bound before one or more Justice of Peace in a Recognizance of 201, never to offend in the like kinds a gain.
- 1V. Every Constable of Peadborough (upon Clarrant under the hand of two Justices of Peace) hath power to fearth the Poules of persons suspected to have

Df Fowling.

setting-Dogs or Mets for the the ta-of Spealants, or Partridges; and the gs of Mets there found to kill and cut pieces at pleature, as things forfeited un-

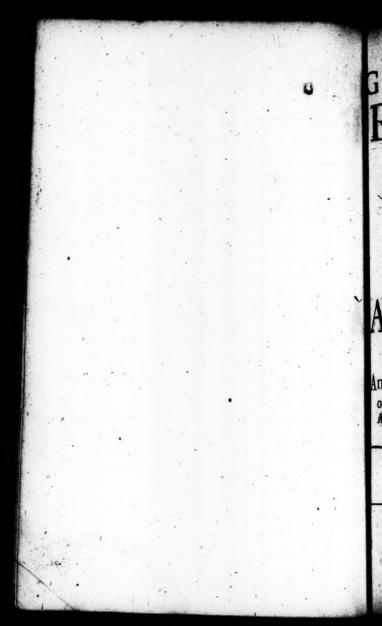
西西西西西

ion

a selection the selection of the selection t

v. be that thall be punished by vertue this act, chall not be puniched again by urtue of any other Law for the same Of-

The



GENTLEMAN'S Recreation:

Containing
DIRECT RULES
FOR THAT
Noble and Delightful
ART OF

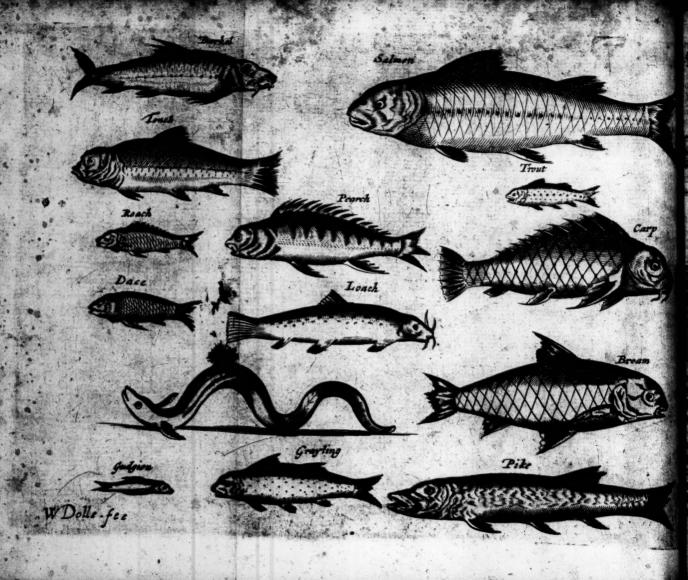
ANGLING:

Whereunto is annexed

An Abstract of all such Statute
or penal Laws relating to that Curious
Art.

The Fourth Part.

LONDON,
Printed by J. C. for N. C.



ISHING

The Introduction.



NGLING is an excellent Art, which as it pleads great Antiquity, so the knowledge thereof is with much difficulty to be obtained: and indeed it bears some similitude to Poetry in this, that as it is faid. Paeta nascitur, non fir, so ought the Piscator or Fish-

nan to have a natural inclination unto the Art of cling, or his knowledge therein will be always and imperfect; not but that it may be much conned by practice and experience.

Now he that intends to be his Crafts-mafter in this smless Pastime or Recreation, must not onely dilitive archandenquire into the mysteries and depths the Art, but must also be furnished, as atorelaid, in a natural propensity thereunto, attended with speand Patience: And having gotten by observating practice a competent knowledge, or having conquer-

conquer'd the difficulties of Angling, it will the onely prove pleasant, but profitable, and be his

tue, a Reward to it felf.

Now that I may farther commend this ingenprofession, be pleased to take notice of the Antion thereof; some saying it is as ancient as Descan-Flood. Some attribute it to the invention of one a lung the first-Author of vertuous Recreations. One say that Seth left the knowledge of Angling to posterity ingraven on brazen Pillars with the first diments of the Mathematicks, and other useful and by which means they were preserved from perishin the universal Deluge.

Divers are the opinions of men concerning the A tiquity of this Art. let it suffice, that certainly is older than Christ's Incarnation; for both Job and it Prophet Amos make mention of Fish-hooks, and as sequently there must be Anglers then in those dark

The next thing that offers it self in the commendation of this Art, is the benefit of Contemplate which is acquired hereby, which is a thing (and ding to the opinion of some learned Cloister'd me to be preferred before Action, because say the it makes us mortals the nearer to come to the Cotor by way of imitation; for he is all Contemplate of his own infinite Power Goodness, &t.

But waving this, I cannot let slip the expression an ingenious Forreiner, who said, That Rivers and Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for men to contemplate, and fools to pass by without confuration. Modesty will not permit me to rank to self in the number of the first; and I shall endeaved to clear my self from the scandal of the last, by giving you a short account of Rivers and their watry list bitants.

I shall first discourse of Rivers : one whereof I have

of scituate in Epirm, which hath a strange double contrary property; the one is, that it will extinany Torch that is lighted: and the other is, to

a Torch never lighted before.

The River Silarus in a few hours will (as report convert a Rod into Stone. And I my felf w a Lough in Ireland, that in some years will myert Wood into Stone, of which are made the best Cambden makes mention of a Well near aby in Cumberland, that ebbs and flows feveral times

very day.

ne de ton Andi

e Ai

The same Author makes mention of the River Mole in Surrey, which, running feveral miles under ground, being opposed by Hills, at last breaks out again bacoff, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast (as he Spaniards of the River Ama) that they feed feveal Flocks of Sheep on a green Bridge. There is fuch other green Bridge in Wales, the River running a mat way under ground, and there disemboguing it reput a living Goose into the Hole where the Waith no Feathers on her back.

Mr. Thomas May in his History of The Reign of King Henry the Second, relates two strange things from Gricaldus Cambrensis, of certain Wells in Ireland. His

Words are thefe:

A Well there is in Munfter to be feen, Within whole Waters whofoe're hath been Once drench' d, his Hair streight takes an hoary dye-Another Fountain of quite contrary Effect to that in Ulfter Springs; for there Those that have washed once, how old soe're, Shall never after have an hoary Hair.

Another

Another thing, though against Nature, yet for strangeness of it I cannot choose but relate, and is of a certain River near Harwood in Bedfird which in the year of our Lord 1399, (a little the Civil Wars between the Houses of York and Leafter burst forth) of a sudden stood still, and ded it felf asunder, so that men might pass three m together on foot down the midst of the Cham leaving the Waters like a Wall behind them.

in his Descript. Bedford.

I shall conclude with two of the strangest Ring that ever were heard of. The sirst is a River can Elensima, which is so merrily disposed, (if your believe a man of no less Authority than Aristotle) it will dance to a Fiddle, bubling at the noise of the sick, and will grow very muddy; but as soon as Musick ceaseth, it ceaseth its motion, returning to former calmness and clearness. The other is as we derful, and (if you will believe Josephus that learne Jew) it is a River in Judea, which runs very swift all the six days of the Week, but resteth on the wenth, which is the Jewish Sabbath.

And now a word or two concerning Fish: Play faith, That Nature's great and wonderful powers more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land: and this may appear by those numerous and various Cratures which inhabit in and about that Element; which will appear more at large, if you will read their History written either by Rondeletius, Gesner, Johnstone, or Aldrovandus. The number and the various shapes of these Fishes are not more strange, than their different Natures, Inclinations and Actions. Give me leave to

speak a little hereof.

There is a Fish called the Cuttle-fish, which will cast a long Gut out of her Throat, with which she gles: For lying obscurely in the Mud, she permis

fma

W

10

20

-

OI A

Fift to nibble at it, and by that means draws near her by little and little, till coming within reach, the leaps upon them and devours them: me the is called the Sea-Angler.

The Hermit is a Fish that when she grows old will out a dead Fish's shell, fit for her purpose and ere dwell secluded from all company, studying nohing more than how to defend her felf against the

maries of Wind and Weather.

The Sargus is a Fish so lascivious, (as Du-Bartas expresent it rarely well) that when he cannot find change of Mates enough in the Sea, he will get ashore and Cuckold a Goat.

Goes courting She-Goats on the graffy Shore, Horning their Husbands that had Horns before.

Whereas it is reported that the Mullet is fo chaft, that when the is deprived of her Mate, fhe will follow him

to the shore and dye.

and d ee

le)th

of Mastin

won arme vifth e Se-

The Torpedo, or Cramp-fish, is a Fish of so baneful and poylonous a nature, that all other Fish that come within her reach are immediately stupisfed and without motion, fo that they eafily become her prey nay, he will fo fuddenly convey her Poy fon up the Rod and Line of the Angler, when she feels her self entangled, that his Hands and Arms immediately losing their frength, become nummed and fenfelefs.

The Scolopendra hath as rare and strange a way of defending her felf from the Anglers fubtilty, as any Filh whatever, if we may credit the relation of Lu-

Bartas, whose words are these:

But if the Scolopendra have sucht in
The sowre-sweet morsel with the barbed pin,
She hath as rare a Trick to rid her from it;
For instantly she-all her Guts will vomit;
And having clear'd them from the danger, thus
She fair and softly sups them in again,
So that not one of them within her Womb
Changeth his Office or his wonted room.

Bef

eto

wh

Go

cho

me

Fi

Filhin

The Remora is a Fish of so strange and secret a preperty (and for that reason is often used for a Men phor) that as the same Du-Bartas saith,

Let all the Winds in one Wind gather them,
And (seconded with Neptune's strongest stream)
Let all at once blow all their stiffest gales,
Aftern a Galley under all her sails;
Let her be holpen with an hundred Oars;
Each lively handled by sive lusty Rowers;
The Remora sixing her seeble Horn
Into the Tempest-beaten Vessels Stern,
Stays ber Stone-still.

In the year of our Lord 1180, near Orford in Suffolk, there was a Fish taken in the perfect shape of Man; he was kept by Bartholomew de Glanvil; is the Castle of Orford above halfa year; but at length, not being carefully looked to, he stole to the Sa, and was never seen after. He never spake, but would eat any Meat that was given him, especially raw Fish, when he had squeezed out the juice: He was often had to Church, but never shewed any sign of Adoration.

Let what is already spoken of Fish suffice, since it will not onely be impertinent to enlarge farther, but impos-

possible here to give an account of the natures of il fish: I shall therefore refer you to such Authors to have made it their business to write large Vo-

Before I put an end to this Introduction, permit to infert something in the praise of Fishermen and Fishing.

A foot Encomium, or somewhat in Praise of Fisher-men and Fishing.

T is very remarkable, that amongst the Twelve HolyApostles there were four of them Fisher-men, whom our Saviour elected and inspired to preach the Gospel. And the reason that some give for this choice is, that he knew and sound the hearts of such men naturally more fitted for Contemplation and quietness, having Spirits mild, sweet, and peaceable.

Belides, our Saviour seems to have a more than common respect for their Ocupation, for two reasons. First, He never reproved these for their profession, as he did others, viz. the Scribes and Money-changers. Next, He dignified these poor Fisher-men with the prority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his Twelve Apostles. Nay, that which is more observable is this, that our Saviour took only three of these fisher-men with him when he ascended the Mount to bear him company at his Transfiguration.

Now as to the lawfulness of Fishing, I think none can speak against it, since our Saviour himself commanded St. Peter to fish to pay Casar his Tribute.

And as the Ancients have highly applauded and approved

proved of this ingenious Exercife, several of there ro's of old, in the height of their glory, having executed themselves herein: so several of our emindate Divines have done the like; as Dr. Whitaker, and Perkins, Dr. Nowel Dean of St. Pauls Long and the incomparable Sir Henry Wotton Provok and would frequently say thereof, that it was after his Study a Rest to his mind, a chearer to his Spirit, a diverter of sadness, a Calmer of unquiet thoughs, a Moderator of Passions, a procurer of Contents and that it begot habits of Peace and Patience in those that profess and practice it. And thus conclude the praise of Angling, though much more might be spoke thereof.

By Bil

15

B

fe

CI

t

How to Improve Fish-ponds, and the Fish therein contained.

Before I shall lay down such Observations and last structions, which with much pains and cost last collected, to render a Fisher-man compleat in that delightful Exercise of taking Fish. I shall give an account of Ponds, and how they may in the best

manner be improved.

Imprimie. Consider the scituation of your Pond, and the nature of those Currents which run into it. In the next place, observe whether it be a Breeder, or not; if it be a Breeder, Experience will instruct you never to expect any large Carps from such Ponds; for the greatness of the number of the Spawn will over stock the Pond; therefore for large Carps Store-pond is ever accounted best.

gera

mine

r les

glin

after

ghts

nted

husi

Now to make a Breeding-pond become a Store-tend, when you cannot make a Store-pond become Breeding-pond, thus you must do. When you sue pond, confider what quantity of Carps it will maintain; then put in all Milters, or all Spawners. which means in a little time you will have Carps that are both large and fat beyond your expectation. By puting in but one Sex of them, there is an impossibility of encreasing of them; but of the Roach it will notwithstanding multiply abundantly: Therefore it is medful, and altogether necessary for such who keep Breeding-ponds, to fue them once in three years, for fear of the encrease of Roaches, though none were ever put in, which may feem very strange, if the truth thereof could not be made manifest; as thus: there are feveral Ponds frequented by Wild-ducks, which usually come at nights to feed with the Tame ones there abiding: Now those Wild-ducks bring thefe Roaches with them, for their feeding amongst weeds in Rivers.

Besides the Spawn of Roaches will hang about their Feet and Feathers, which is washed off by the water of those Ponds they are accustomed to haunt; by which means in a few years they become so numerous though you your self did not put one into the Breeding pond; for which cause you find your Carps so

lean, and almost hunger starved.

By the way, give me leave to infert this true story. A Gentleman not far from the City of London, had a large pond of about four Acres of ground; a Gentleman standing by at the suing thereof, and seeing not only a great quantity of Fish, but the best grown that ever he saw, he advised him to put in two or three hundred of stores of Carp, about three or sour years growth, out of a pond that was over stocked, and to put Sixty of those he had taken out; which

accordingly he faw done, fancying to fee stately co

at the next fuing.

After the expiration of four years, this Gentler was advised to fue his Pond, to fee what Monsters for years addition to their growth would produce; for those fixty Carps were from Eye to Fork from file Inches to eighteen Inches when he put them in : no having fued his Pond, he found almost the whole number of his Carps; but they were in fuch a lean condition, that he did not know them; for they were Monsters in Nature their heads being bigger the their whole bodies, and almost as heavy and the bappened it feems by his own folly, by putting in but twenty Roaches; and when the Pond was fued there were bushels of small Roaches, and these Roaches eat up all the fweet feed from the Carps; for Roaches are like sheep to great Cattle, which eat up and devoural the sweet feed, and what affords the greatest nutri-This Gentleman was very much frustrated of his expectation; and the Fish-monger which came from London to buy a penny-worth as foon as he perceived the Monsters, he mounted his Horse, and rid as if the Devil drove him, not fo much as bidding the Gentleman farewel. Here is to be noted, that Ponds which will not breed one Carp; Roaches in one year will multiply by thousands; therefore you must be careful every year to view your Pond, and observe if any fuch fry appears, left when you come to fue your Pond, you be deceived in your expectation.

How to make Carps grow to an extraordinary bigness in a Pond.

PErceiving about the month of April that your pond begins to grow low in Water, then with an Iron-Rake

the rake all the fides of your pond where the wais fallen away; then fow some Hay-feeds, and
it well; by this means at the later end of Sumthere will be a great growth of Grass; which
in winter comes, and the pond being raised by
thin to the Top, will overflow all that crass; and
then the Carps having water to carry them to the
fid, will fill themselves, and in a short time become
a fat as Hogs that are kept up for that purpose: Do
this every Summer till you sue your Pond, and you
will find no River-Carp to surpass them either in fatand or sweetness.

Myole TOD

Were

tha

thi

but

here

are are

triloi

me errid General Observations to be understood by all such who desire to attain to the compleat and perfect Art of Angling.

Outh of live other form is into Cakes, and caffeing

By me means fish in light and dazling Apparel but let your Cloathing be of a dark dasky colour.

Wherefoever you use to angle (for the Angler and his peculiar haunt) cash in once in four or five days Conn boiled soft; if for Carp and Temb, oftner: the you may cash in Garbage, Livers of Beasts, Worms chopt in pieces, or Grains steeped in Blood and dried. This will attract the Fish unto the place; and to keep them together as you fish, throw in his a handful of Grains of ground Malt. This must be done in still water; but in a Stream you must call your Grains above your Hook, and not about it; for as they float from your Hook, so will they draw the Fish after them?

If you will bait a Stream, get some Tin-boxes me full of holes no bigger than just fit for a Worm in creep through; then fill these Boxes with them, and having fastned a Plummet to sink them, cast them to the Stream with a string fastned thereto, that you may draw them forth when you please, by the smalness of the holes aforesaid, the Worms can craw out but very leasurely, and as they craw the Fish will

E SEE

tö

refort about them.

If you would bait for Salmon, Trout, Umber and the like, in a Stream, then take some blood, and then with incorporate fine Clay, Barley, and Malt groun adding thereto some Water; make all in a Passe win Gum of Ivy; then form it into Cakes, and cast the into the stream. Some will knead or stick Work therein fast by the head. If you find your bait take no effect in the attracting of the Fish, you may the conclude some Pike or Pearch lurketh thereabout to seize his Prey, for fear of which the Fish dare not venture thereabout: you must therefore remove the obstructions of your sport, by taking your Trowl; and let your Bait be either Brandlings or Lob-worms; by you may use Gentles or Minows, which they will greedily snap at.

Keep your Rod neither to dry nor to moift, let the one make it brittle, and the other rotten. If it wery foultry dry Weather, wet your Roda lietle before you Angle: and having struck a good Fish, keep your Rod bent, and that will hinder him from running to the end of the Line, by which means he will

either break his hold or the Hook.

If you would know what Bait the Fish loves belt at the time of your fishing, having taken one, shi his Gill, and take out his Stomach, and open it without bruising, and there you will find what he last fed on and had a fancy to; by which means you may bait your Hook accordingly. When

When you fish, shelter your felf under some Bulk free, or fland fo far from the brink of the River you can only difcern your Float : for Fifth are rous, and are affrighted at the leaft fight or mo-The best way of Angling with the Fly is the River, and not up, as you will find by ex-

erence.

You never need make above half a dozen trials in place, either with Fly or Ground-bait, when you for Tront; for by that time he will either offer oule, or refuse the Bait, and not stir at all.

If you will have Fish bite eagerly and freely, and ithout suspition, you must present them with such as paturally they are inclined to, and in fuch

If you use Pastes for Baits, you must add Flax or Wool, mix a little Butter therewith and that will The Eyes of fuch Fishes as you kill, are most excel-

ant Baits on the Hook for almost any fort of Fish.

Laftly, make not this or any other Recreation your dayly practice, lest your immoderate Exercise therein ring a Plague upon you rather than a pleasure.

Astrological Elections for Angling in general.

If as the Wife man faith, fand I think there is none that dare question his Authority) that There is a Hope time and feafon for every action under the Sun, I hope it will not be offensive nor impertinent to show what time and feafons the intelligent Angler ought for my own part, I have so often experimented the thath of these Rules, that by my good will I would never

never Angle but at an elected time of the ingrie will not despife them, and for others they were intended: And they are these;

If you would Neptune's scaly Subjects get,
Nights horned Queen in the Midheaven set:
Thence let her on the Paphian Goddes shine
Ith' West, and greet her with a friendly Trine.
Be sure you always fortify the East,
And let the Maiden-Star posses be West:
However let some Aquatick Sign ascend,
And let all power his happy Lord attend.
Then see the setting Constellation be
Afflicted by some hateful Enemy,
At least his Lord, the sixth with strength defaultet active power his Radiant Lord attend.
Then may you boldly venture to the Flood,
And take from thence what Fishes you see good.

What provision is to be made for Angling-Tools.

THE time of providing Stocks is in the Winter-Solftice, when the Trees have shed their Leave, and the Sap is in the Roots: For after January it ascends again into the Trunk and Branches, at which time it is improper to gather Stocks or Tops.

Let your Stocks be taper-grown, and your Tops the best Rush-ground-shoots you can get, not knotty, but proportionable and slender; otherwise they will netther cast nor strike well, and by reason of their unpliableness your Line will be much endanger'd.

Having gathered your Stocks and Tops all in one ka-

and as straight as you can, bathe them, faving Tops, over a gentle fire, and use them not till feafoned, till about a year and four months : they rebetter if kept two years.

Now to preferve thefe Stocks or Tops from rotting. morm-eating, rub them over thrice a year with Sal-tor Linfeed-oyl; fweet Butter will ferve, if never led; and with any of these you must chase well an Rods: if bored, pour in either of the Oyls, and them bathe therein twenty four hours, then pour and this will preferve your Tops and tocks from injury

How to joyn the Stock or Top together, or how o make all forts of Rods for Fly, Ground, or otherile, with what lengths are best for several sorts of shing, I need not here relate; since without putting our self to the trouble, you may purchase them of

ich as fell them at no dear rates.

CI-CS,

it

ich

at.

ŀ

a-.

How to make a Line after the best manner.

I ET your Hair be round, and twift it-even, for that L strengthens the Line; and let your Hair, as near byou can, be of an equal bigness: then lay them in Water for a quarter of an hour, by which means you will find which of the Hairs do shrink; than twist them over again.

Some intermingle Silk in the twifting, but I cannot approve of it; but a Line of all Silk is not amis; aloa Line made of the smallest Lute-string is very good,

but that it will soon rot by the Water.

The best colour for Lines is the forrel, white, and grey; the two last for clear waters, and the grey for middy Rivers: neither is the pale watry green to becontemned, which colour you may make after this manner. Take

Take a pint of ftrong Ale, half a pound of se a small quantity of the juice of Walnut leaves, in the like quantity of Alum; put these into a pipe and boil them together about half an hour: Han so done, take it off the fire, and when it is cold put

aM

œh

in

di

Wi Dir

-00

W

P

ge Bi

ti

F

0.5

your Hair. Or thus:

Take a pottle of Alum-water, somewhat not then a handful of Marigold-flowers, boil then a yellow scum arise; then take half a pound of grace Copperas, with as much Verdegreece, and beat the together to a fine powder: put these with the limit of the Alum-Water, and let it lie ten hours or more then take the Hair out, and let it dry.

In the making your Line leave a Bought at bot ends, the one to put it to and take it from the Rol, the other to hang your lowest link upon to which your Hook is fastned; and so you may change your

Hook as often as you please.

Of the Hook, Flore, and other things worth the Observation.

Y Our Hook ought to be long in the shank, somewhat round in its circumference, the point standing even and straight; and let the bending be in the shank.

Use strong, but small Silk, in the setting on of your Hook, laying the Hair on the inside of your Hook for if it be on the outside, the Silk will fret and cutit

afunder.

As for the Flores, there are divers way of making them: Some use your Muscovy-Duck-quills, which are the best for still Waters; but for strong streams take good sound Cork without slaws or holes, and bore it through with a hot Iron; then put into ita Quill

primidal form of what bignels you think fit; after

figrind it smooth.

P ST

Bio

gree then

160

nore:

bot

Rod

hich

your

me-

an-

the

bur

k:

tit

ns id a

H

To plum your Ground, you must carry with you a Musquet bullet with a hole made through it, or any other fort of Plummet, tying this to a strong twist, ting it on your Hook, and so you will find the depth of the Water.

and that you may not incommode your Tackle, it will be very requilite to make several partitions in piece of Parchment sowed together, by which each

then il may have a place by it felf.

many wife forget not to carry a little Whetstone with you to sharpen your Hooks if you find them

blunt and dull.

PALMER, or put you in mind of having feveral Boxes of divers fizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thread, Lead, Flies, &c. or admonish you not to forget your Linnen and Wollen Bags for all forts of Baits; but let me forwarn you not to have a PAUN-DER that is heavy, for it can never be light enough: those which are made of Osiers I think are the best.

Lastly, forget not carry with you a small Pole with a Loop at the end thereof, to which you may

falten a small Net to land great Fish withal.

There is another way much better, and that is by the Landing-hook, which hath a Screw at the end of it to forew it into the Socket of a Pole: to which Socket may be fitted also two other Hooks, the one to pull out Wood, and the other sharp to cut away Weeds. Of Flies Natural and Artificial, and how to use them.

co Bu

K

en o villad v f fi

Atural Flies are innumerable, there being as many kinds as there are different forts of Fiuits: in avoid prolixity, I shall onely name some of them, with the Dun-fly, the Stone or May-fly, the Red Fly, the Moor-fly, the Tawny-fly, the Shel-fly, the Cloudy at Blackish-fly, the Flag-fly, the Vine-fly; also Caterpiles, Canker-flies, and Bear-flies, with Thousands more which frequent Meadows and Rivers, for the contemplation of all, but particularly the recreation of Anglers.

These come in sooner or later, according to the season of the year, that is, sooner, or later according to the forwardness or backwardness of the Spring; for Flies being bred of Putrefaction, commence that being according as the Heat doth surther their seminal

vertue unto animation.

I cannot prescribe you Rules to know when eath Fly cometh in, and is most grateful to every fortal Fish; and therefore I shall leave the knowledge hered

to your own observation.

Moreover, there are several sorts of Flies according to the several natures of divers Soils and Rivers, of diversity of Plants; yet some there are common to all, although but sew.

All Flies are very good in their feasons for sua Fish as rise at the Fly; but some more peculiarly good, as being better beloved by some fort of fish.

Fish generally rise at these Flies most eagerly when most forts of Flies resort to the Water-side, hanging in, a manner in clusters on Trees and Bulbs, delighting themselves to skip thence and play upon the water; and then do the fifth shew their craft in

catching them.

its: to

n,viz

y, the

dy a

Diller,

mon

100

on a

o the

ding

ing;

heir

tinal

ach

toi

eof

ing

00

to

To the intent you may the better know what kind of Fly the Fish then most covet, observe thus to do; coming in the Morning to the River-side, beat the Bushes with your Rod, and take up what variety you may of all forts of Flies, and try them all; by which means you will quickly know which are in greatest chimation among them. Not but that they will change their Fly sometimes, but then it is when they have glutted themselves therewith for sive or six days together, which is commonly upon the going out of that Fly: for Fish never covet that Fly more than when there is greatest plenty, contemning them at their first coming in.

There are two ways to fish with these natural Flies; either on the surface of the water, or a little underment it. Now when you angle for Chevin, Roach, or Dace with the natural Fly, move it not swiftly when you see the Fish make at it, but rather let it glide spontaneously towards it with the Stream: If it be in a still and slow water, draw the Fly slowly sideways by him, that will make him eager in pursuit of it; whereas if you should move it swiftly, they will not follow it, being a lazy sish and slow of motion. These sish delight to shew themselves in a Sun-shiny-day almost on the very surface of the Water, by which

means you may pick and choose.

The Artificial Fly is feldome used but in blustering weather, when by the Winds the Waters are so troubled, that the Natural Fly cannot be seen, nor rest

upon them.

There are (according to the opinion of Mr. Walton, a very ingenious man, and an excellent Angler) twelve forts of Artificial Flies to angle with on the top of the Water, of which these are the principal.

H₃ The

The first is (to use his own words) the Dong in March, made of dun Wool, and the Feathers a Partridge's Wing.

The second is a Dun-fly too, and made of blid Wool, and the Feathers of a black Drake; the Bon made of the first, and the Wings of the latter.

The third is the Stone-fly, in April; the Bodyn made of black Wool made yellow under the Winn and Tail.

The fourth is the Raddy-fly, in the beginning of May; the Body being made of red Wool, and bom about with black Silk, with the Feathers of a red copon, which hang dangling on his fides next his Tail.

lie

tict

Fly

by

M M

10

ck

to

8

The fifth is the Tellow or Greenish Fly, in Jun; the Body is made of black Wool, with a yellow Lie on either fide, and the Wings taken off the Wings of a Buzzard, bound with black braked Hemp.

The fixth is the Moorish-fly; the Body made of diskish Wool, and the Wings made of the blackish Mail

of the Drake.

The seventh is the Tawny fly, good until the middle of June; the Body made of tawny Wool, the Wing made contrary one against another, of the whitil Mail of the white Drake.

The eighth is the Wasp-fly, in July; the Body made of black Wool lapt about with yellow Silk, the

Wings made of Drake-feathers.

The ninth is the Shel-fly, good in the middle of July; the Body made of greenish Wool lapt about with the Herle of a Peacock's Tail, and the Wings made of Buzzards Wings.

The tenth and last is the Drake-sty, good in Angust, the Body made of black Wool lapt about with black Silk, his Wings of the Mail of the black Drake with

a black head.

And then having named two more, he concludes wittily, Dung Thu have you a Jury of Flies, likely to betray and there of Junall she Trouts in the River.

This in my opinion feems a redious and difficult I should rather think it better to find the Fly e Bod coper for every season, and that which the Fish at lattime most eagerly covet, and make one as like it spossibly you may, in colour, shape, and proportion; of for your better imitation lay the natural Fly beore you.

There are feveral ways of making these artificial lies, which I shall forbear here to relate, thinking it more proper to leave it to the ingenuity of every parnicular person, which will be very much help'd by feing and observing the Artist's method in their com-

polition.

Wings

ng of bound

dC

ail.

HIM:

Lif of a

duf.

fail

dle

183

The best Observations I can collect for artificial

fly-filling, are thefe:

Firft. Observe to Thin a River somewhat disturbed by Rain, or in a cloudy day, when the Waters are moved by a gentle breez: the South-wind is best, the Welt indifferent, but the East is stark naught. But as wthis I give not much credit; for let the Sky be cloudy, and the Season not too cold, I'le bid defiance to any Wind that blows not too hard. If it blow high, yet not so high but that you may conveniently guide your Tackle, they will rife in plain Deeps, where ron shall kill the best Fish : but if the Wind be smail, then is the best angling in swift Streams; and be fure to keep your Fly in continual motion.

Secondly, Keep as far from the Water-fide as you can, whether you fish with a Fly or Worm; and fish down rhe Stream, having the Sun on your back, not fullering your Line to touch the Water but your Fly onely. Here note, that the light Fly makes most sport inadark night, and the darkest or least Fly in a clear

day.

Thirdly, In clear Rivers ever Angle with a fa Fly with flender Wings; but in fuch as are much by Rain, use a Fly that is larger bodied than ordina

Fouribly, When the water beginneth to clear a Rain, and becomes brownish, then use a Red or range Fly; if the day be clear, a light-coloured hand a dark Fly for dark Waters; if the Water beau wheyish complexion, then use a black or brown has a will not say these Directions or Rules are with exceptions.

Fifthly, Let your Line for Fly-fishing be twice long as your Rod, unless the River be cumbred and

Wood.

Sixthly, For every fort of Fly, have several of a fame differing in colour, to sute with the difference of several waters and weathers.

Seventhly, You must have a nimble eye, and and stive hand to strike presently with the rising of the so or else he will be apt to spew out the Hook, finding his mistake.

Eighthly, Let your Fly fall first into the Water, he if your Line fall first, it scares the fish, and therefore

you must draw again and cast.

Ninthly, When you angle in flow Rivers of fill places with your Artificial Fly, cast it over cross the River, and let it fink a little in the water, and drawn gently back again, so as you raise no Circles, nor break the Water; and let the Fly float gently with the Current, and hereby you will find excellent sport.

Lastly, Take notice that your Salmon-flies must be made with their Wings standing one behind the ther, whether two or four, He delights in the find gawdiest colours you can choose, in the Wings chiefly,

which must be long, and so must the Tail.

Bull

gro

pla

Но

100

Ca

ft

Li

Of Ground Angling.

F you fish under the Water for a Trout, it must be without a Float, onely with a Plumb of Lead, or a Bullet, which is better, because it will rowl on the ground. And this way of fishing is very good in cold weather, when the Fish swim very low: you must place this Bullet about nine Inches from the baited Hook; your Top must be very gentle, that the Fish may more easily run away with the Bait, and not be sared with the stifness of the Rod. You must not strike as soon as you feel the Fish bite, but slack your Line a little, that he may the better swallow the Bait and Hook. When you strike do it gently, for the least matter does it.

Let your Tackle be fine and slender, for that is better than your big and strong Lines, which serve onely

to fright the Fish.

muddina Ordina lear an

ed ord ired for ir be d

Wn P

with

Wice

ed wi

of the

Beren

lan a e filh, idiog

for fore

the it

ak

You will find it a better way of Angling to do it without Float or Lead, onely making use of a Garden-worm, drawing it up and down the Stream; by which you will take more Trouts than any other way, especially if it be in a clear day. The Morning and Evening are the chiefest seasons for the Ground-Line for Trout: but if the day prove Cloudy, or the Water muddy, you may Angle at Ground all the day.

of Night-Angling.

Reat Fish (especially Trouts) are like Buck, wary and circumspect in their self-preservation, and know the seasons most fit for them to seed with out danger; and that is the Night, as they suppose thinking then they may most securely range abroad.

In your, Night angling take two great Gardenworms of an equal length, and place them on your Hook; then east them a good distance, and draw them to you again upon the superficies of the Water, no suffering them to sink; to which end you must not use a Plummer. You may easily hear the Fish rise, and therefore give him some time to swallow your Ban, then strike him gently. If he will not take it at the top, sink your Bait by adding some Lead, and order your self as at Day-angling on the Ground.

I have frequently experienced it, that the best Transbite in the Night, rising most commonly in the fill

Deeps, but unufually in the Streams.

Instead of these Garden-worms you may use a black Snail, or a piece of Velvet in its likeness: this is a most excellent Night-bait for a Trout, and nothing like the black Snail for a Chub in the Morning early.

You may bait your Hook with a Minnow for a Trout thus: put your Hook through the point of his lower Chap, and draw it through; then put you Hook in at his Mouth, and bring the point to his Tail, then draw your Line straight, and it will bring him into a round compass: But be sure you so order his Mouth that the Water get not in.

mel

not gi

otte

lept f

is you

with

Li

time

they

lies !

free

CONT

froi

mt

itb

on

SA

yo Re

1

n

that times are seasonable, and what unsea-sonable to Angle in.

Alm and clear weather is very good to angle in ; but cool cloudy weather in Summer is beft; but most not be so boisterously windy as that you canot guide your Tackle. The cooler the weather is in bottest Months, the better it is: and if a sudden viobut hour hath diftur bed and muddied the River, then syour time to angle in the Stream at the ground with a red Worm.

Likewise a little before the Fish spawn is a very good time for Angling; for then their Bellies being full, they come into fandy Fords, and there rub their Belis to loofen them, at which time they will bite very

freely.

Bucks.

ation

with.

pole

ad.

rden-

Vour

hem

DOL

not

and ait,

the ler

ets

ill

If you intend to fish for Carp and Tench, you must commence your sport early in the Morning, fishing from Sun-rifing till eight of the Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Night; and in hot Months till

it be very late.

In the heat of Summer Carps will shew themselves on the very Rim of the water; at which time, if you Mwith a Lob-worm as you do with a Fly natural, you will have excellent sport, especially if it be among Reeds.

In March, April, September, and all the Winter, (in which feafon Fish swim deep very near the Ground) lay, in those Months it is best fishing in a clear serene warm day, for then they bite fastest: But all the Summer-time Mornings, Evenings, and cool cloudy weather are the best times for Angling.

Here note, that by experience you will find that Fish rise best at the Fly after a shour of Rain that hath onely onely beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River windout muddying them. The proper Moneths and the of the day for the Fly, are March, April, May, the beginning of June; in which Months let you times be in the Morning about nine, and between three and four in the Afternoon. A warm Even is very feafonable, if the Gnats play much.

After a clear Moon shiny-night, if the day succeeding prove cloudy, it is a very good time for Angling for, having abstained from food all the night, for they will not stir for fear in bright nights) the per day they become hungry and eager, and the gloom

ness of the day makes them bite boldly.

At the opening of Sluces or Mill-dams go alow with the course of the water, and you will find True and other fish will then come out to seek for wing food the water brings down with it.

Having shewn you what seasons are most proper and profitable to Angle in, I will demonstrate to you see

as are not.

And First, In the extremity of Heat, when the Earth is parched with Drought, there is little sport to be obtained, especially in muddy or clear shallow River.

Secondly, In the Winter or Spring-time, who there happeneth any hoary Frost, then will not the hite kindly all that day, unless it be in the Evening, and if that prove serene and pleasant: but it is not convenient to sish at any time when the Wind blowed so high that you cannot manage your Tools to advantage.

Thirdly, Sheep-shearing time is an an Enemy to the Angler, for then the Fish glut themselves with what is washt off the Sheep, and will scarcely bite till that season be over. Likewise sharp East and North nipping-winds do very much prejudice the Anglers Recreation: neither is it good to fish immediately after

Spawn-

din Re

clou

ite:

Af f

L

clot

Shi

for

ti

ming-time; for at that time their appetite is

it is a very strange thing to consider the natural inctin Fish in foreknowing the approach of a showr stain; for I have tried, that upon the rise of a cloud that threatned a sudden Showr, they would not hit; from which observation I have often sav'd my

Affrom being wet to the Skin.

nd tin

betw

Eveni

fucos

ngline

IL, (for

ne per

loom

alog Trans

rand

foch

arth

ers.

th

Lafty, If the preceding night prove dark and cloudy, the succeeding day will prove inessectual for shing, unless for small sish; for at such times the great coss prey abroad for the lesser, who, by instinct knowing the danger, hide themselves till the Morning; and bring safted all night become then very hungry, whilst the great ones having gorg'd themselves lie absonded all the day long.

The next thing we shall insist on, is the way of taking several sorts of fish (as they are here alphabetically set down) with several proper Baits according

to the best of experiences.

Of the BARBEL.

THE Barbel is fo called by reason of the Barb which is under his Nose or Chaps. He is a leather-mouth'd-fish, that is, such a one as will not break his hold when hook d; but will frequently break, if big, both Rod and Line.

They fwim together in great Shoals, and are at worst

in April, though not very good at any time.

The places where he loves most to resort, are where Weeds grow, or in a gravelly rising ground, wherein he will dig and root like a Hog with his Nose: not

but

but that he frequents the strongest swifts of monfometimes, as deep Bridges or Wears, where he was so fettle himself among the Piles and hollow plate or amongst Moss or Weeds, that let the Water never so swift, he will remain immoveable. This has custome in the Summer-time; after which times retires into deep waters, and there helps the Forms to dig a hole in the Sand for her to hide her Spann

tim:

tro

ftro

WILL H

and

end

lag a

from being devoured by other Fish.

This Fish is of a delicate Cast and handsome show, with small Scales placed after a most curious manner, and as his shape is curious so is his palate, for he want not eat any thing but what is clean; and therefore you intend to make any sport with him your Bait must be very well scowed. The best for him is a Lowworm, at which he will bite boldly, if you bait your ground the night before with big worms cut in piece. For him you can never bait the Ground too much, nor

can you fish for him too early or too late.

Gentles also are a very good Bait for him, if green; and so is Cheese made tough by keepingit in a wet Linnen Bag a day or two: This Cheese steeped in clarified Honey, and the Ground where you intend to fish baited therewith, will give you an opportunity to catch store enough of Barbels, if there be any thereabout. You may do well to bait your Hook with Cheese that is sost, and Sheeps-tallow wrought into a Paste: but there is no bait like the well-scowred Lob-worm, or Cheese steeped in Honey an hour or two.

When you fish for this Barbel, let your Rod and Line be both long and strong; on your Line let there be a running Plummet, that is a Bullet with a hole throw the middle, let a knot or little bit of Lead be placed a Foot or more above your Hook, to keep your Bullet from falling down on it: so your Worm

by at the bottom where they always bite, and when takes your bait the Plummet will lye and not check the fifth, and you may know by the bending of the upof your Rod when he bites, and likewife feel the with your hand make a firong fnatch, then firike and you rarely fail, if you play him well and tire him; for as he is very subtile, so is he extraordinary frong and dogged to be dealt withal, and will so fregle, that if you manage him not dextrously, he will break your Line.

His best time of biting is about nine of the Clock, and the chiefest time of fishing for him is at the latter and of May, June, July, and the beginning of Au-

raff.

meri

(hape,

inner

e wi

ote if must Lob.

tour ices. nor

if

it

íe

re

0

if

Of the BREAM.

There are two forts of Breams, the one a fresh and the other a salt water-Fish, yet neither differ

much in shape, nature, or taste.

Ishall onely speak of the fresh-water-Bream, which atfull growth is a large and stately Fish, and breeds either in Ponds or Rivers; but chiefly delights in the former, which if he likes, he will not onely grow exceeding fat, but will fill the Pond with his issue, even to the starving of the other Fish.

As for his shape, it is very broad, and thick scaled very excellently, with a forked Tail; his Eyes are large, but he hath a very little sucking Mouth, dispro-

portionate to his Body.

The flesh of this Fish is accounted more pleasant than wholesome by some: but as for my part, I am of the judgement of the French, who have a great estimation for it; and if you will but taste his Belly or Head, you will say it is most excellent food.

The

The Bream spawneth in June, or the beginning of July, and is easily taken; for after one or two gent turns he will fall upon his side, and so you may dra him to Land with ease. The best time of Angling for him, is from St. James-tide till Bartholomen-tide for having had all the Summers food, they are exceeding fat.

The Bream is a great lover of red Worms, especially such as are to be found at the root of a great Document and lie wrapt up in a round clue; also he loves Pake Flag-worms, Wasps, green Flies, Butter-flies, and

the (

ho

the s

ett

YOU

21

ca

Grass-hopper with his Legs cut off.

The way of taking Breams is thus: First baitthe ground (where you know they refort) with a convenent quantity of fweet-ground Barley-malt, boyled but a little while, and strained when it is cold: with it to the place about nine a Clock at night, the take your Malt, and squeezing it between your Hands. throw it into the River, and it will fink : If the stream run hard, cast in your squeezed Balls a little above the place you intend to angle in. Having thus baited your ground, in the Morning bait your Hook with the greatest red Worm you can get; you may find them in Gardens or Chalky Commons after a showre of Rain; of which you must store your self beforehand. keeping them a Month at least in dry Moss, changing the Moss every three daies. Having baited your hook so that the worm may crawl to and fro, for the better inticing of the Fish to bite without suspition, observe where your fish play most and stay longest, which commonly is in the broadest, deepest and stillest, part of the River generally in deep and still back Waters: then plumb your ground, and fish within half an Inch of it; for although you shall fee some Breams play on the top of the Water, yet thefe are but · the Sentinels for them beneath. You

You may have three or four Rods out at a time in the Bank-fide, and let them be long, the Floats or Goofe-quills, which must be funk with the tops bearing above water about half an Let your Rods be cast in one above the other total yard and a half distant, and then withdraw on telf from the Bank so far that, you can perceive while but the top of the Float; and when you perceive sink, then creep to the Water-fide, and give to much Line as you can: if it be a Carp or Bream, be will run to the other side; then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while, but do not half for then you spoil all; but you must first tire am before you can land them, being very shie. Of the two, the Carp is the worst, being more brisk and stong.

Here take notice by the way, if Pike or Pearch be dereabout, it will be but a folly to think of killing Ceror Bream; and therefore you must remove those offacles, by fishing them out first. And to the intent passay know whether there be those Fish of Prey dereabout, take a small Bleak or Guageon, and bait it, string it alive among your Rods, two toot deep from your Float; with a little red Worm at the point of your Hook: if a Pike be there, he will certainly snap

at it.

ock,

alle,

the eni-

go)en

ds, am

ed

he

m

of

d,

of the BLEAK.

THE Bleak is an eager fish, and is caught with all forts of Worms bred on Trees or Plants, alwith Flies, Paste, Sheeps-bloud, &c. You may angefor them with half a score Hooks at once, if you can fasten them all on. Also in an Evening the Bleak will take the natural or artificial Fly.

If it be a warm clear day, there is no Bait to go for the Bleak as a small Fly at the top of the war which they will take at any time of the day, but the cially in the evening: there is no fifth that yields be sport for a young Angler than this, for they are no ger that they will leap out of the water at the Bait

If the day be cold and cloudy, Gentles or Cale

are best about two foot under water.

This fame Bleak by some is called a Fresh-water sprat, or River-swallow, by reason of his continuous.

Some would have him called Bleak from the whit colour, and that is onely under his Belly, for his Ber

is of a pleafant Sea-green.

There is another way of taking Bleaks, by who ping them in a Boat or on a Bank-fide in I wift Warn in a Summers evening, with a Hazel-top about free tax foot long, and a Line twice the length of the Red; but the best way is with a Drabble that is the eight or ten small Hooks along a Line two Inches above or another the biggest Hook the lowermost, by which you may sometimes take a better Fish, and bait then with Gentles, Flies, or small red Worms, by which means you may take half a dozen or more at or time.

of the BULL-HEAD, or MIL-LER'S-THUMB.

litt. qui

Ri

Be his de

of

off

tè

THE Bull-head is a Fish which hath a broad Hall and wide Mouth, with two broad Fins near is Eyes, and two Fins under his Belly: instead of its Teeth his rough Lips as flift him in nibbing at the ball. He hath Fins also on his Back, and one below the Vent; and his Tail is round, his Body being allowed covered.

gered with whitish, blackish, and brownish spots: They begin to spawn about April, and are full of wa all the Summer-feafon. The Bull-head's comhabitation is in Holes, or among Stones in clear Water in Summer ; but in the Winter he takes up his Minnow; or we cannot guess otherwise where their Winter-abode should be.

He is easily taken in the Summer, for he is lazie and simple. You may see him in hot weather lie Sunming himself on a flat Stone or gravelly Ground, at mich time you may put your Hook (which must be which he seldom refuseth to bite, so that the veriest

bugling Angler may take him.

He is an excellent fish for tast, but of so ill a shape, that many women care not for dreffing him, he fo much refembles a Toad.

of the CHEVIN.

THE Chevin spawneth in March, and is a very ftrong (yet unactive) fifh, yielding in a very little time after he is struck. The larger he is, the

quieter he is taken.

As for his food, he loveth all forts of Worms and Flies, alfo Cheefe, Grain, black Worms, flitting their Bellies that the white may appear: he loveth to have his Bait large, and variety of Baits at one Hook. He delights very much in the Pith that grows in the bone of an Ox back, of which you must be careful in taking off the tough outward Skin, without breaking the tender inward Skin.

Early in the Morning angle for your Chevin with Snails; but choose some other Bait for him in the heat heat of the day, for then he will not bite at them, the Afternoon fish for him at Ground or Flie. The is no Fly he loveth better than a great Moth will great head, whose Body is yellow, with whitish Wing which is to be found commonly in Gardens about Evening. He will not stick sometimes to snapar Lamprey.

of the CHAR.

I Could never read nor hear that the Char wastele any where but in a Mere in Lancashire, called in nander mere, the largest, according to report, that in the Kingdom of England, being ten miles in length, and as smooth as a Bowling-green at the bottom,

This Char is spotted like a Trout, and its dimension feldome exceeds seventeen Inches or a foot and half. This Fish is delicate food, having scarce a Bonebut what is on the Back. Now since the place is so remote from London where these Chars are taken, I shall forbear to trouble our City-Angler with Rules and Directions how to angle for him, and pastofed Fish as are frequently sound in every River here are adjacent.

of the CHUB.

This Fish hath several appellations; for he is called a Chub, a Chavender by the French, by some Villian, by others a Cheven. As for my part, call him what you please, I like him not for these reasons: first, he is full of small forked Bones dispersed every where throughout his Body; next, he eats very waterils; and lastly, this Fish is unfirm, and (in my opinion) in a manner tasteless.

Of all fish he is the best to enter a young Angler, for entery easily taken however give me leave to presibe you some more Rules than what I have already with the Angling for the Cheven, which is the same than the Chab or Chevender.

Wou must find out some hole, where you shall have menty or more of them together in a hot day sloaning almost on the very surface of the water: let your hold be long and strong, and your Line not above and or two long, very strong; and an indifferent large Hook; then bait your Hook with a Grashopper, bely our Grashopper up and do wn one the top of the mater, and if there be any Chub near he will rise; hat is abscond your felf that you may not be seen, so he is a very searful sish, and therefore the least sladow will make him sink to the bottom of the water, set he will rise again suddainly; this is called Bob-

Having baited your Hook drop it gently fome too foot before that Chub you have elected by your to be the best and fairest, and he will instantly he greedily thereat, and be held so fast by reason of insteather-mouth, that he can seld on break his hold:

If therefore you may do well to give him play empty, and so tire him; otherwise you may endanger

wour Line.

hat is

rion half.

bar

s fo

ules uch ear

If you cannot find a Grashopper, then bait your Hook with any kind of Fly or Worm, as I said before, a Dots; Beccles, Bobs, Cod or Case worms.

When you fish for the Chub with a Fly, Grashopper, a Beetle, it must be at the top of the water; if with

Marah and April angle for your Chab with Werms; in May, June, and July, with Flies, Snails, on Cherries. Where note he will rarely refuse a Graf-hopper on the top of a swift Stream, nor at the bottom

I. 2

the

the young Humble-bee. In Magust, September thake use of a Paste made of Parmian, or Holland of pounded with Sastron in a Mortar, adding these a little Butter. Orhers make a Paste of Cheese Turpentine for the Winter-season, at which time Chub is in his prime; for then his forked Bones are ther lost, or converted into a Gristle; and he improved that meat baked.

In hot weather angle for him in the middle of a

for him near the bottom

Chavender, I shall only say that his Spawn is excelled and if he be large, the Head, when the Throat is a washe, is the best part of the Fish.

of the CARP.

T is tonfels'd by all, that the Garp is the Queen of a Fresh-water-sish, being not only a good, but subtlessish and living longest of all sish (excepting the sist out of his proper Element. Those that die sooned at Herring's, for salt water; and for fresh water, Transcent are observed to breed several Months in any year; and for this reason you shall hardly ever the either Male or Female without Melt or Spawn. The breed ever more naturally in Ponds than in running water: in the latter very seldom or never; and when they breed, they breed innumerably.

felf with a world of Patience, by reason of the emporting fubility and policy of that Fish: They water choose to lie in the deepest places either Ponds or Rivers where is but a small ranning Stream Next, you are to observe that the Carp will feldon bit

me in cold weather; and in hot weather you cannot no early or too late at your sport: and if he bite, need not fear his hold, for he is one of those mer-mouth'd-fish, who have their Teeth in their

Then you angle for the Carp, your Rod and Line bestrong; and because he is so very wary, it is not to intice him by baiting the Ground with course in Marela he seldom resulted the red Worm, and com June, nor the Grashopper in July, Anand September.

the Carp takes delight in Worms or Iweet Paltes, which there are great variety. The best are made into Honey and Sugar, and ought to be thrown into water some hours before you intend to angle, if you throw in you? Paste strade into small Pellets to or three days before, it will not be the worse, estably if you throw in also Chickens guts, Garbage, a loud incorporated with Bran or Cow dung.

by may make your Pate in this manner: Take a develor quantity of Bean-flour, or any other Flour, and their beat them a logether in a Mortar fo long, till they are fo tough to hang upon a Hook without washing off. For the best effecting thereof, mingle therewith some with Wool, and if you would keep it all the year, add defents of one Virgins-wax and clarified Honey.

If you fill with Gentles, anoing them with Honey put them on your hook with a piece of Scarlet dipe in the like. This is the most approved way to decive and captivate the subtile Carp. Honey and crums of White-bread mixt together is a very good rate for a Carp.

An approved way bow to take Carp in a muddy Pond.
Vide Chap. Of the Tench.

3 200

eficial it in the attent foot and it had better of the DACE and DARE

HE Dace, Dare and Roach, are much of both in manner of feeding, cunning, goo

and commonly in fize

The Dace or Dace will bite at any Fly but a cially at the Stone-cadice fly or May-fly, the end of April and the begining or most part of Man a most excellent bait, floating on the top of the ter; which you may gather great quantities of the Reeds and Sedge by the water fide, or from Ha thorne bushes which grow near the bank of a share Gravel-stream, on which they yery much delight hang: also at Ant-flies of which the blackish is the which are found in Mole-hills about the Monta a June, July, August and September. The way of referring them for your use is, to put them alive into Glass-bottle, having first laid therein some of the moilt Earth from whence you gatherd them we some of the Roots of the Grafs of the faid littlet. having laid your Ant-flies in gently without men-dicing their Wings, lay a clod of Earth over it in you may keep them a Month, if you bruile them not If you would keep them longer, put them into a la Rundlet, having first wash'd the inside with water and Honey: having thus kept them three Months, they are an incomparable Bait in any Stream and cles Water, either for Dace, Dare or Roach, and are good also for a Chavender, fishing within a handful from the bottom.

The best time for making use of the Ant-flie is who they swarm, and that is generally about the lattered of July, and begining of August; they will covers Tree or Bush with their multitude, and then if you make the rie of them, you may lead your left with Roach

hawarm day he rarely refuseth a fly at the top of water? but remember that when you fill under ster for him; it is best to be within an shaldful or string more of the ground, we more stories to a

bont Alballoppide, where ever you see Heath or Sandy would him for Dave or Dave in winters then bont Alballoppide, where ever you see Heath or Sandy would him a white worm with a red head, as big as the post of a mans little singer. You may know where and of the are, by the number of Crows and Rooks which fit on the plowed land. The worm by very soft and by some termed a Grub, which is nothing but the spawn of a Beetle. Cather what quality you mink fit, and put them into a Vessel with some of the lath from whence they were taken, and you may be them all the Winter.

galves es Baneagha W. To boord ghiby the will the form of a factor and state of the same o

baised, and plumb'd with a Float so discover when

I shall not trouble you with variety of discourses concerning the being of an Eel, whether they breed by some Generation, or Corruption as Worms or by certain Glutinous dew drops, which falling in Mey and Jane on the Banks of some Ponds or Rivers; are by the liear of the Sup turned into Eels and these are by some called Telvers, of which I have feel Cakes made, and have eaten thereof when fried, with much fatisfaction. I say waving away all Discourses of this nature, I shall onely tell you that some have differenced Eels into four sorts chiefly: namely, the Silver-

def

if in

lait in

fyou

TV ar

nd a

alled Bo

T

字思民君君

W

Til

10

Eel va Greenish Eel (which is called a Corego) about ish Eel, with a broad flat head; and lastly an Eel reddiff Fins.

I shall onely speak of the first, which is the Si Echil This Eel is generally believed to have its be from Generation, but not by spawning, but the you coming from the Female alive, and no bigger than fmall Needle. Tool uov 19120

This Edimay be caught with feveral forts of him but principally with powder'd Beef. A Garden wom or Loby or a Minnow or Hen's gut, or Ga bage of Fift, is a very good bait : but some pe fer a Pride which others call a Lamprey, beyond an

come termed a Grub, which is abonise toy As Establicand themselves in Winter taking in their constant relidence in the Mud, without Riring out for fix Moneths; to in the Summer they taken delight to be abroad in the day and thereforethe most proper time to take them is in the night, with a ny of those Baits aforesaid, faltning your Lane to be Bank-side with your Laying hooks in the water. O you may throw in a Line with good store of Hooks baited, and plumb'd with a Float to discover where the Line lieth, that in the Morning you may take up with your Drag-hook.

There, is another way of taking Eals, and that is by Snigoling. This Sniggling is nothing elie but taking in the day-time a firong Line and Hook bated with a Lob or Garden-worm, and marking fuch Holes and places where the Eels use to abscord themselves in the day-time pear Wears; Mills, or Flood gates, and gently by the help of a Stick putting your bait into fuch holes where you imagine Eels are: and if there be any, you shall be fure to have a bite; but then have a care you pull not too bard, left you spoil all. Here note, that the Top of your Stick mult

releft, wherein you must put a strong Hook, but finatrow compass; which Stick must guide the Bit into the Hole where the Eelis, by which means, if your Tackling hold, you may get as large Eels as my are in the Rivers Mill, pond, or Flood-gate, &c. and as this way of fishing is called Sniggling, so it is

alled Broggling for Eels.

Bobbing for Fels is done after another manner : that Take very large Lobs, flowr them well, and with Needle run fome ftrong twifted Silk through them fom end to end; take fo many as that you may wrap en about a board a dozen times at least, then tie may hang in fo many Hanks; then faften all to a frong Cord, and about a handful and a half above the Worms fasten a Plumb of three quarters of a pound in weight, and taken your Gord to a strong Pole : having so done, fish in muddy Water, and you will feel the Eels tug luftily at themed When you think they havefwallowed them as far as they can, gentle draw apyour Line, till you have brought your Eduto the sop of the water, and then bring them afhore as fast you can. The Gentleman (and an experienced angler) from whom I received this Intruction, told me, he hath taken fix or feven large Eels at a time this very way. The tree very way.

There is another way also for taking of Eels (though it be somewhat laborious, and for that reason is best to be made use of in cold weather) and that is by an instrument called an Eelsspear it is made for the most part with three Forks or Teeth, paged on the sides; but those are better that have four. This you are to strike into the Mud at the bottom of the River; and if you chance to light where they lie, you need not fear taking them if your Instrument be

good.

If you would take very large Eels indeed, but we Night-hooks with small Roaches, und let the Holie in the Mouth of the Fish,

of the FLOUNDER

I shall not go about to tell you the nature of a flader, or give you his description, since he is an

fo well known to every one.

In April, May, June and July, you may fish for the Flounder all day long, either in a swift Stream of the still Deep, but best in the Stream. Your no proper Baits are all forts of red Worms, Waspan Gentles.

of the GRAILING.

Hen you angle for the Grailing, you must head der narrow plate of Lead, and let it be flenderest at the bent of the Hook, that the Bait which must be large Grashoper, may with more facility come over it. At the point let there be a Cad bait, and keep the bait in continual Motion; and forget not to pull off the Grashopper's Wings which are uppermost.

wint to come, fifth in a sty Wester, and you will find

In the Months of Mirch and April, there is a vercellent Bait for the Grailing, which is called a Tatail: This worm is of a pale Flesh-colour, with a vellow Tag on his Tail, somewhat less then half an Inch long; which is to be found in Marled Grounds and Meadows in fair weather, but not to be seen in

cold weather, or after a showre of Rain.

ov jed kelt where they liet your

riour well k

He

ion.

Sire

Het

the

T be I

hin

by

th

1

1

of the GUDGEON.

with the literal or former with

15 and

ead en.

at

The Gudgeon, though finall, is a fifth of so pleasant a taste, that in my opinion it is very little inferior to the Smelt. I need not describe him, he is so well known.

He spawns three or four times in the Summer seaion. His seeding is much like the Barbel's, in sharp streams and on Gravel, slighting all manner of Flies. He is easily taken with a small red Worm, fishing near the ground.

This Fish is Leather mouthed, and will not easily be lost off the Hook when struck. You may fish for him with Float, your Hook being on the ground; or by hand with a running line on the ground, without either Cork or Float.

Wasps, Gentles, and Cad-baits are good baits for the Gudgeon, but the small Red worm the best; you may fish for them with two or three hooks at once and find very pleasant sport where they rise any thing large. When you Angle for them, stir up the Sand or Gravel with a long Pole, which will make them gather to that place, and bite saster and with more eagerness.

of the GUINIAD.

I Cannot fay much of this Fish, only that it is excellent food; and therefore I shall conclude my discourse of the Guiniad with a very strange observation; and that is, This Fish is not found any where but in a large Water called Pemble-Mere: but that which is most remarkable is this, That the River which

which runs by Chester hath its Head or Fountain Merionith shire and in its course runs through the Pemble-Mere, which abounds as much with Guiniah, as the River Dee doth with Salmon, of each both fording great plenty; and yet it was never know that any Salmon was ever caught in the Mere, nor ever any Guiniahs taken in the River.

When Dee that in his course fain in her lap would lie Commixtion with her store, his stream she doth denge By his complexion prov d, as he through her doth glish. Her Wealth again from his she likewise doth divide: Those white fish that in her do wondrously abound, Are never seen in him; nor are his Salmons found At any time in her; but as she him disdains, So he again from her as wilfully abstains.

Draytons Polyolb. Some o.

of the LOACH.

The Loach, though a small yet a dainty sish: his breeding and feeding is in little and clear swift Brooks or Rivulets; here and in sharp Streams Gravel is his vsual food. He is small and stender, seldom exceeding three Inches in length: he is bearded like a Barbel, having two Fins at his sides, four at his Belly, and onely one at his Tail and is freckled with many black or brown spots.

This Loach is commonly full of Spawn, which is, with the flesh, a very grateful food to weak Stomacks affording great Nourishment. He is to be taken with a very small Worm neer the ground, for he delights to be neer the Gravel, and therefore is seldom from on

the top of the water.

beec

200

gen till

qua

reT

Gravel Kive the exact hot com of which held to cond by plug WONIM Miss being bale with finall and or brindles Worms. Hort wood

ntain

iniadi

othat

know

14

9.

The Minnow is a fish without Scales, and one of the least of the watry Inhabitants; but for excelency of meat he may (in my opinion) be compared to any fish of greatest value and largest fize; and little things should not be despited. The Spawners generally full of Spawn all the Summer long, for they need often, as it is but necessary, being both Prey and Baits to other fish. They come into the Rivers generally about March and April, and there continue till the cold weather drive them into their Winter quarters again.

Of colour this fish is greenish, or wavy sky-coloured; his Belly is very white, but his Back is blackish. This Fish will bite sharply at a small Worm; and if you will trouble your self to catch enough of them you may make an excellent Tansie of them, cutting off their Heads and Tails, and frying them in Eggs,

facing them with Butter, Sugar and Verjuice.

Anglers use to find him oftner then they would: Deep places he seldom frequents. It is a Fish no way ortious of his seeding, for any Bait pleaseth him if he can but swallow it, he will strain hard for what he cannot gorge. The chiefest food he loveth is a small red Worm, Wasps, or Cad-baits.

of the POPE, or RUFF.

This Fish with a double name is small, and seldome grows bigger than Gudgeon; in shape he is not unlike a Pearch, but esteemed better food, being of tast as pleasant and delightful as any fish whatever. The

bon H

a w

6/2

书一书记

Rick

NO ST

Fig.

the al

'n

10

in

6

h

The Ruff frequents the deepest running plant a Gravel River, the exact bottom of which be found by plumbing, and your Flooks being but with small red or brandling Worms, (for I wo have you fish with two or three) you will have comparable from as long as you defire.

The Ruff makes excellent foort with an more richced Angler, for he is a greedy biter ; and they min great Shoals together where the Water is den importh, and calm. If you would carch a good rough antity, bait your ground with Earth, and angle to

them with a small red Worm.

of the PIKE

THE Pike is a very long-liv'd creature, and if
we may credit Sir Francis Bacon, or Gefner the
famous Brutologist, he outlives all other Fish; which
is pitty, he being as absolute a Tyrant of the Fredwaters, as the Salmon is, the King thereof.

The larger the Pike, the courfer the food, the imaler being ever-best; contrary to the nature of Ed, which improve their goodness by their bulk and age.

He is a melancholick Fish, because he never swins in Shoals, but rests himself alone; and he is as both as any fish whatever, if we may believe Report, which informs us a Pike hath been known to fight with an Otter for a Carp he had taken, and was carrying out of the Water. Another bit a Mule by the Lip as he was drinking, and stuck thereunto so fast, that by that means the Owner of the Mule took him. Another bit a Maid by the Foot as she was washing. He will frequently devour his own kind unnaturally; from whence's suppose he may obtain the name of a Freshwater-wolf.

As the Pike is in nature like the Hawk, a Bird of bey, to he is like her in generation, neither of them ding but once a year : and when the Pike Ipawns is between February and March. The best Pikes are band in Rivers, the worst in Meres or Ponds.

His common Food is either Pickerel weed. Frogs. nexp or what fish he can procure. This Pickerel-weed some

ball.

le fo

OUN

10

d if

fy, both feeds and breeds them.

There are two ways of fifting for the Pike, first by

the Ledger, second y by the Walking-bait.

Ledger, second y by the Walking-bait. the Angler may be absent; and this must be a living Baceither Filh or Frog. Of Fish the best are a Dace. tinch, or Pearch: for Frogs, the yellowest are the bet. How to keep them alive on your Hook, your

own ingenuity will inform you.

When you intend to use the Ledger-bair, if it be a The flick your Hook through his upper Lip; and then faltaing it to a strong Line at least twelve or fourten yards in length, tie the other end of the Line either to some Stake in the ground, or to some bough of a Tree near the Pike's usual haunt or where you think is like he may come. Then winde your Line on a forked stick, (big enough to keep the bait from drawing it under water) all except about half yard or fomewhat more; and your flick having a small cleft atheend, fasten your Line therein; but fo, that when the Pike comes, he may eafily draw it forth, and have Line enough to go to his hold and pouch.

If your Bait be a Frog, put the Arming-wyre in at his Mouth, and out at his Gills; and then with a fine Needle and Silk fow the upper part of his Leg with one stitch onely to your Arming-wyre, or tic his Leg above the upper joynt to the Wyre; but as

gently as you can left you hurt him.

I have teen excellent sport with living baits tied about about the Bodies of two or three couple of Data driven over a place where store of Pikes bave frequency. I have observed the Pike to strike so violently the living Bait, that being hung he hath drawn Duck clear under water. The like may be done of such baits tied to bladders, suffering them to soatder the River, whilst you mind your sport walking a its Banks.

on M

Ħ

H E

H

Oil

the

The next way of Angling for a Pike is with a Tra with a Winch to wind it up withal. As this Fift very ftrong, fo must your Tackle; and your Rod me not be very ilender at top, where must be placeda Re for your Line to run through. Your Line mult Silk two yards and a quarter next the Hook, which must be double, and strongly armed with a Wyres bout seven lnches: the rest of your Line may ke ftrong Shoemakers-thread. Upon the shank of the Hook fasten some smooth Lead; and having place your Hook in the Mouth of a Minnow, Dace, or Roach; with your Lead fink your Bait with his head downward. Having so done, cast your Bar up and down: if you feel him at the Hook, give him length enough to run away with the Bait and pouch it; which when you think he hath done, frike him with a smart jerk, and so continue your sport with him as long as you shall think fit. Take like wife this next Direction from a friend that speaks not much different.

When you intend to Trowl, you may make choice either of Roach, Dace, Bleak, or Gudgeon to has withal, (but for my own part I always prefer the Guogeon) which you must do thus: put your Atming-wyre in at the Mouth, and thrusting it along by the Back, bring it out again at the Tail, and there she she it with a Thread Having your Reel in your hand, and your Line sastned to your hook through a Ring at

etop of your Rod, cast your bait into some likely the pool your Rod, care your office in the water as you all gently by the River-side: when you have a bite which you may easily feel, for he will give a good to be fure to give him Line chough. You get him lie almost a quarter of an hour because you strike; and then have a care you do it not be fish to boot.

If you sish at Snap, you must give him leave to run site, then strike, striking the contrary way to which site, then strike, striking the contrary way to which site, and your Tackle must be much stronger than that is and your Tackle must be much stronger than that is and your Tackle must be much stronger than the for the Trowl, because you must strike with greater a force.

The strength of the trowl, because you must strike with greater a force.

The strength of the trowl, because you must strike with greater a force.

The strength of the trowl is the strike to strike and move it up and down in the water as you

y be

the

acod

Bait

give

and

rike

port

ike-

not

oice bait the

Atby

fa.

nd, the Here note, that a large Bait more invites the Pike to hie but the leffer takes him more infallibly, either at

ap or Trowl. or bis

If you fish with a dead bait for a Pike, this is a most mellent bait : Take a Minnow, Frog that is yellow, Dice, or Roach, and having dissolved Gum of Ivy in Olof Spike, anoint your baith therewith, and cast it there Pikes frequent. Having lain a little while at orom, draw it to the top, and fo up the Stream, and mwill quickly perceive a Pike follow it with much agerness.

A Pike will bite at all baits, excepting the Fly, and hits best about three in the afternoon in clear water with a gentle gale, from the middle of Summer to helatter end of Autumm; he then bites best in still lates or a gentle Stream: but in Winter he bites all heddy long. In the latter end, and beginning of the bring he bites most eagerly early in the morning,

and late in the evening

Of the PEARCH.

THE Pearch is a fifth that is hook-backt, somewing bow'd like a Hog, and armed with stiff on these, and his sides with dry thick Scales. He is a best bitter, which appears by his daring to adventure on of his own kind with more courage than the Piliphy much.

Some fay there are two forts of Pearches, them falt-water, and the other fresh: the first hath but on Fin on his Back, the latter two, which is more than

most Fishes have.

He spawns but once a year, and that is in February or March, and seldome grows longer than two soot. His best time of biting is when the Spring is far spen, at which time you may take at one standing all that are in one hole, be they never so many.

His Baits are a Minnow, or little Frog; but a Worm called a Brandling is best, if well scoured. When he bites give him time enough, and that can hardly be too

much.

The Pearch biteth well all the day long in cool cloudy weather; but chiefly from eight in the Moning till ten, and from three till almost fix.

You may angle for him with Lob-worms well for red, Bobs, Oak-worms, Gentles, Colewort-worms,

Minnows, Dors, Wasps, and Cad-baits.

He will not bite at all the seasons of the year, especially in Winter, for then he is very abstemious; as if it be warm he will bite then in the midst of the day; for in Winter all fish bite best about the her of the day.

If you rove for a Pearch with a Minnow, (which of all baits yields the most delightful recreation to the

Ang

Ang

107

00

nd T

200

COL

me:

of t

kee

the

feel be

at is

地門

off

enc

fer

YO

wh

þ

th

lei

in

pł:

10

Angler) it must be alive, sticking your Hook through his opper Lip or back Fin, and letting him swim about midwater, or somewhat lower; for which purpose must have an indifferent large Cork with a Onish wow Line.

always make use of a good strong Sik Line, and a good Hook arm'd with Wyre, so that if a Pike do ome I may be provided for him, and have by this means taken several. I use also to carry a Tin-pot of about two quarts or three pints, in which to keep my Minnows or Gudgeons alive: the Lid of the Pot is full of little holes, so that I can give them seeh Water without opening it; which ought to be about every quarter of an hour, sell they die.

If you take a small Casting-net with you, you may

without farther trouble.

When you fish with a Frog, you must fasten the most through the skin of his Leg towards the upper

part thereof.

ewha ff Ori.

a bold

DI ODE

e one

t on the

oot.

ent,

hat

TI

he

00

10

n-

S,

The Pearch is none of the Leather-mouth'd fort offifies; and therefore when he bites give him time chough to pouch his bait, lest when you think all fire, his hold break out, and you lose your fish and your patience too.

The best place to fish for Pearches is in the turning of the Water, or Edwing in a good Gravel Scoure, where you will not fail of them, and Russ before

spoke of.

He that will take a Pearch must first take notice that this fish feeds well, and bites seely. Let the Anglerover-night bait his ground with Lob-worms chopt in pieces; and in the morning let him come to the place, where he must first plumb his ground, then gage his Line and bait his hook with a red knotted worm, or a Minnow, which is better in my opinion: the hook

K

must

The Teth

month

nin . mall mall

mder

Ma gine .

Pofts done you

dica 1

ma

ali

tol

W

20

20

60 l

must be put in at the back of the Minnow betwirt fish and the skin, that the Minnow may swim up down alive, being buoyed up with a Cork or On that the Minnow may have liberty to fwim a foot the ground. Let these directions be carefully ferved and followed, and the Angler need not fearth frustration of his expectations.

of the RUD.

HE Rud hath a forked Tail and is small of free Some fay he is bred of the Roach and Bream and is found in Ponds; in some they are in a manner in

numerable.

There is little less difference between the Rud and Roach, than there is between the Herring and Pilching their shape being much alike, onely differing in balk or bigness. Since the Rud is but a Bastard-Roach ! shall speak no more of him, but discourse of the genuine Roach onely.

of the ROACH.

HE Roach is not looked on as any delicate Fish at all; if there be any thing prizable, it is his

Spawn.

A COM

The Roach is a very filly fish, being every whit a simple as the Carp is crafty. They are more to be esteemed which are found in Rivers than in Ponds, although those that breed in the latter are of a much larger fize; yet the Thames below Bridge abounds with very large fat Roach, such as I may confidently affirm exceed in magnitude all others either in Ponds or Rivers. The

The Roach is a Leather-mouth'd-fish; having his Teth (as I faid before) in his Throat, as all Leather-

win April the Cads or Worms are proper Baits to ge for Roaches; in Summer fish for them with mall white Snails or Flies: but note, they mpft be under water, for he will not bite at the top. Or take May-fly, and with a Plumb fink it where you imagine Reaches lie, whether in deep water, or near the Posts and Piles either of Bridge or Wear: having so done, do not haftily, but gently pull your Fly up, and von will fee the Roach (if any there) pursue and wheit near the rim of the water, left by flight it should dcape. Sin to our

ם מו

foot a

Hy d fearth

fize.

n,and

r in.

and

and, balk

,1

go-

In Autumn you may fish for them with Paste onely made of the crums of fine White-bread, monlded with alittle water and the labour of your hands into a mugh Paste, colour'd not very deep with Red-Lead, with which you may mix a little fine Cotten or Lint, and a little Butter; these last will make it hold on and not wash off your Hook. With which you must Mh with much circumspection, or you lose your bait. la like manner in Winter you may angle for Roach with Paste; but Gentles are then the better bait,

Take these next Observations experimentally tried by some of us, viz. There is another excellent bait either for Winter or Summer, and that is this; Ta e. anhandful of well-dried Malt, and put it into a Dish of Water, and then having grubbed and washed it betwixt your hands till it be clean and free from Husks, put that water from it, and having put it into a little fresh water, set it over a gentle Fire, and let it boil till it be pretty foft; then pour the Water from it, and with a sharp Knife, turning the sprout-end of the Corn upwards take off the back-part of the Husk with the point of your Knife, leaving a kind of inward K A Husk

0.91

FH

excelle

Hook

more

LAGE

prov

bleb

YOU

YOU

and

ali

ter pli

UK

Husk on the Corn, or elfe you spoil all: then cut a little of the sprout end, that the white may appear and also a very little of the other end for the Hoot to enter. When you make use of this bait, cast nor and then a little of it into the water; and then your Hook be small and good, you will find it are cellent bait either for Roach or Dace.

Another good bait is the young brood of Waspite Bees, if you dip their Heads in Blood. So is the thick blood of a Sheep being half dried on a Trenche, and then cut into such small pieces as will belt a your Hook: a little Salt will keep it from turning

black, and make it the better.

Or you may take a handful or two of the larger and best Wheat you can get, boil it in a little Milk till it be fost, then fry it gently with Honey and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in Milk.

The Roach spawns about the middle of May; and the general baits by which he is caught are these mall white Shails, Bobs, Cad-baits, Sheeps blood, all soms of Worms, Gnats, Wasps, Paste, and Cherries.

The way of fishing for Roach at London-Bridge's after this manner: In the Moneths of June, and July, there is great refort of those Fish to that place. where those that make a trade of it take a strong Cord, at the end whereof is fastned a three pound weight; a foot above the Lead they fasten a Packthread of twelve foot long to the Cord, and unto the Packthread at convenient distances they add a dozen frong Links of Hair with Roach-Hooks at them, bair ed with a white Snail or Perriwinkle; then holding the Cord in their Hands, the biting of the Fish draweth the Packthread, and the Packthread the Cord, which admonsheth them them what to do: whereby some times they draw up half a dozen, fometimes less, but commonly two or three at one draught. 0f

Cut of Ppear, Hook

ft nov

ien, if

aner

psor

thick

cher.

A fi

guin

gelt

zle

nd

ts

of the STICKLEBAG.

THis Fish is Small, prickly, and without Scales and not worth the confideration, but that he is an recellent bait for Trouts, especially if his Tail on the Hook be turned round, at which a Trent will bite more eagerly than at Renks Roach, or Minnow. lach is every whit as good a bait as the Sticklebag, provided you place either aright on the Hook. To the intent you may do it, take this observation the simble turning of the Penk, Minnow, Loach, or Sticblibag, is the perfection of that fort of fishing. That won may attain thereunto, note, that you must put your Hook into the Mouth of any the aforefaid Baits, and out at his Tail, tying him fast with white thread alittle above it, in fuch manner that he may turn : after this fow up his mouth, and your defign is accomplified. This way of baiting is very tempting for large Trouts, and feldome fails the Angler's expectation. This fifth in some places is called a Banstickle.

Of the SALMON.

THE Salmons evermore breed in Rivers that are not brackish, yet discharge themselves into the Sea, and spawn commonly in August, which become Samlers in the Spring following. The Melter and Spawner having both performed their natural duty, they then betake themselves to the Sea. I have known that when they have been obstructed in their passage, they have grown so impatient, that, clapping their Tails to their Mouths, with a sudden spring they have leapt clear over Wear, or any other obstacle which

al Mi rong

ties be

You

to TO

10:2

Line.

u

thre

ther

am

tim

lau

Ы

wi

pr

which flood in their way: Some having leapt to have been taken by that means. If they are for ftructed that they cannot find their way to these they become fick, lean, and pine away, and de the two years. If they spawn in the mean time, in thence proceeds a small Salmon called a Skern which will never grow great. It is the Sea that min them grow big; but it is the fresh Rivers that make fails them grow fat; and fo much the farther they me from the Sea up in the River, the fatter they grow and the better their food.

From a Samler swhich is but little bigger than Minnow) he grows to be a Salmon in as short times

a Gollin will grow to be a Goofe

A Salmon biteth best at three of the clock in the Afternoon, in the Moneths of May, June, July, and August, if the water be clear, and some little breezed Wind stirring, especially if the Wind bloweth against

the Stream, and near the Sea.

Where note; that he hath not his constant refe dence, like a Trout, but removes often, covering to be as near the Spring-head as he may, fwimming generally in the deepest and broadest parts of the River near the ground; and he is caught like a Trom, with Worm, Fly, or Minnow. The Garden-worm is an Excellent bait for the Salmon, if it be well scoured, and kept in Moss about twenty days, after which time those Worms will be very clear, tough and lively.

There is a way of fifthing for Salmon with a Ring of Wyre on the top of the Rod, through which the Line may run to what length is thought convenient, having

a. Wheel also near the hand.

I have been told that there is no bait more attractive of and eagerly purfued by the Salmon and most other fish, than Lob-worms scented with the Oil of Ivy-her-

or the Oil of Polypodie of the Oak mixt with apentine; nay, Ala Fætida they fay is incompara-

the Se The Artificial Fly is a good bait for a Salmon; but must then usea I rowl as for the Pike, he being a rong fish. As the Salmon is a large fish, to must your lesbe larger than for any other, with Wings and make Tails very long.

You shall observe, when you strike him, that he will plange and bounce, but doth not usually endeavour form to the length of the Line, as the Trout will do:and therefore there is less danger of breaking your

Line.

t mak

ney at

grow.

than

mea

nithe.

eof

inf

fi-

g

If you will angle for Salmon at ground, then take three or four Garden-worms well scoured, and put them on your Hook at once, and fish with them in the

fame manner as you do for Trouts.

Befure to give the Salmon (as well as all other fish) time to go gorge the Bait, and be not over-hafty, mless your bait be so tender it will not endure nibbling at! Much more may be faid of Salmon-fishing, which I shall pass by, leaving the rest to your own practice and observation.

of the TENCH.

Shall now discover an approved way how to take I Tench and Carp in a muddy Pond : but know, I do not make publick this following Secret, to teach knaves how to rob Gentlemens Ponds, but that the proper Owners may be able upon cases of necessity to supply themselves with Fish, without being put to so much trouble and charge as to fue their Ponds. to the purpose. In the first place you must provide your felf with a very good large Casting-net, well

remo'

No

my C

世紀

lk

leaded; let not the Melhes from the Crown to all yard and a half be too small; for then if the Pondany thing of a depth, the fish will strike away before the Net comes to the ground: the whole Net out to have a large Mesh, well leaded, and deep Too.

ked.

The second thing to be done is, to make the place clean from Stakes and Bushes, and try with the Ne before you intend for the fport : if your Net happen to hang, then all your pains will prove ineffecting: therefore you must be sure before you cast in you Net that you clear and cleanse the place very we twice or thrice with a Rake. Then take a quarter of a peck of Wheat, baking it well in an Oven, puting in near three quarts of Water; when it is well baked take five pints of Blood, and incorporate the Wheat and Blood together, adding thereto as much Bran a is sufficient to make a Paste thereof: and that it may the better hold together, put some Clay to it; after this, knead it well together with a quart of Lob worms chopt in pieces, and worked into Paste as aforesaid then roll it into balls as big as a Goofe-egg, and throw it into the Pond within the circumference of your Casting-net; and between whiles throw in some Grains; and when you think the fish have found out the Baiting-place, then come in the close of the Evening (having baited very early in the Morning) and cast your Net over the baited-place: then take a long pole with a large Fork made for the purpose, and fir all about the Net; for the Carps and Tench are struck up beyond their Eyes in Mud, and stand exactly upon their Heads: let the Net lie near an half hour, still ftirring with your Pole, if the place be not too deep: when you have covered the Fish, you may go into the Pond, and take them out with your hands; but if the water beldeep, when you find the Carps begin to stir, (for

for they cannot stand long on their heads in the then lift up the Crown of your Net bolt up the with a long Staff, that so the fish may play into the Tuck of the Net.

Here note, that should you draw up your Net sudinly after you have cast it in, it is an hundred pound mapenny whether you should take one Carp or Teneb; but letting the Net lie, the Mud will chook them if they

move not out of it.

ppen tual

your well

ed, eat as ay

Now here I cannot omit a very pleasant story in my opinion: A Gentleman having special Carps in is pond, but not knowing how to take one of them, mes it were by chance with Hook and Line; I demed him that we might tafte of his Carps, and motold him, a brace of them would ferve our turns: He answered, I might freely have them, if Iknew how to catch them. Hereupon I prepared fomeingredients, and having baited a convenient place very early in the Morning, at the dusk of the Evening we came with a Casting-net, and at the first throw cowered a great quantity of fish, as hereafter will appear; but not one feem'd to stir a jot under the Net, being all struck into the Mud. Hereupon the Gentleman fell a laughing heartily, faying, Sir, If I had no other provision to trust to but what fish you shall catch this night, Ibelieve I shall go supperless to Bed. Hearing him say fo, I defired that he would have a little patience, for the fish were asleep, and I was as yet loath to disturb them; but half an hour hence, if he would stay fo long, I should make bold to awake them with a witness: So the Gentleman having smoaked a pipe of Tobacco a Carp began to play in the Net; and after this in a very little time a great many more began to dance and skip: whereupon I lifted up the Crown, that they might play in the Tuck; and when I thought they were all got out of the Mud I began to draw, and

and at one draught drew up in the Net Seventy Corps, great and small, to the admiration and great isfaction of the Owner and the rest of the company aving in all their life-time not seen the like before. In The Tench hath but small Scales, (and they smooth yet very large Fins, with a red Circle about the Eyes, and a little Barb hanging at each corner of Mouth.

The Slime of a Tench is very medicinal to would ded Fishes; and therefore he is commonly called the

Fi hes Physitian.

The Pike is so sensible of his vertue, that he will not injure the Tench, though he will seize on any other sists of his size that comes in his way: And when the Pike is sick or hurt, he applies himself to the Tench, and sinds cure by rubbing himself against him.

The Tench hath a greater love for Ponds than clear Rivers, and delights himself amongst Weeds, and loves to feed in very foul Water; and yet his foods

nourishing and pleasant.

The time of Angling for him is early and late, both morning and evening, in the moneths of June, July and August, or all night in the still parts of the River.

He is a great lover of large red Worms, and will bite most eagerly at them, if you first dip them in Tar. The Tench loves also all forts of Paste made up with strong-sented Oyls, or with Tar, or a Paste made of brown Bread and Honey. He will bite also at a Cadworm, a Lob worm, a Flag-worm, green Gentle, Cad-bait, Marsh-worm, or soft boyled Breadgrain.

Sp

ıT

100

Eat

fo T

enty

mpany fore

DOOD)

aut &

of M

POUR.

Will

ther the

and

car

nd

is

h

of the TORCOTH.

He Toreoth is a fifth having a red Belly, but of what estimation I know not; for that, let the Welshman speak, who best know him: for as I have heard he sonly to be found in the Pool Lin-peris in Carnarvanire. I only name him that you may know there is social fish.

of the TROUT.

IT is observed that the Trout comes in and goes out of season with the Stag and Buck, and Spawns at hour October or November: which is the more to be mondred at, because most other fish Spawn in warm weather, when the Sun by his heat hath adapted the Earth and Water making them fit for generation.

All the Winter, the Tront is Sick, Lean and unwholfome, and you shall frequently then find him Louzy. These Trout-lice are a small Worm with a big Head flicking close to his sides, and fucking moisture from him that gave them being: and he is not freed from them till the Spring or the beginning of Summer, at which time his strength increaseth; and then he deferteth the still deep waters, and betakes himself to gravelly ground, against which he never leaves rubing till he hath cleanfed himfelf of his Louzines; and then he delights to be in the sharp Streams and such as are swift, where he will lie in wait for Minnews and May-flies; at the latter end of which month he is in his prime, being better and fatter in that Month, especially at the latter end thereof, than in any other throughout the whole year.

There

There are several sorts of Trows highly prime as the Fordidge-Trow, the Amerly-Trow, the Bull in Northumberland, with many more which I shall bear to mention, but only tell you what is general observed; and that is, that the red and yellow from the best, and as to the Sex, the Female is the bearing a less head and a deeper body then the Manager the Hog-back you shall know that they are in the sex of the

fon, with the like note for all other fish.

The Tront is usually caught with a Worm, Minister or Fly natural or artificial. There are several force Worms which are baits for the Angler; the Early worm, the Dug-worm, the Maggot or Gentle; be for the Tront, the Lob-worm and Brandling are the best, or Squirril-tail, having a red head, streakt down the back, and a broad Tail. The Brandling is found commonly in an old Dung-hill, Cow-dung Hogdung, or Tanners-bark. Here note, that whatever Worms you fish withal are the better for keeping which must be in an Earthen pot with Moss, which you must change often in Summer, that is, once in three or four daies, and in twice as long time in Winter.

When you fish for a Trout by hand on the ground, takea Lob-worm and clap your Hook into him a little above the middle, and out again a little below the same; then draw your Worm above the arming of your Hook, making your first entrance at the Tailend, that the point of the Hook may come out at the Head-end.

When you fish with a Minnow, take the whitest and middle-sized, for those are the best, and place him so on your Hook, that he may turn round when he's drawn against the Stream.

The best instructions (for putting the Minnow of the Hook) which I can lay down are these: Put your

Hook

M

ain

E CAL

mall

of th

m A

which

what

If

folic

1 fo

fhe

U

took in at his Mouth and out at his Gill, drawing it tough about three Inches; then put the Hook again his Mouth, and let the point and beard come out his Tail; then the Hook and his Tail you must tie out with a fine white Thread, and let the body of Minnow be almost straight on the Hook: then try wanst the Stream whether it will turn; where note; cannot turn too fast. If you want a Minnow, a small Loach or Sticklebag will serve the turn: if none of these can be gotten, you may in their season have an Artiscial one made of Cloath by one that is living, which I have found to be every whit as good a Bait as what are natural.

If you fish with a Natural or Artificial Fly, then follow such directions as I have already prescribed in a foregoing Chapter, which particularly discourses of

flies Natural and Artificial,

of the UMBER.

It is the opinion some, that the Umber and Grailing differ onely in Names, and are of a Trout-kind, but seldom grow to the bigness of a Trout, I having never seen nor heard any exceed the length of eighteen Inches.

He frequents fuch Rivers as the Tronts do, and is taken with the fame Baits, especially the Fly; and, being a simple Fish, is more bold than the

Trout is.

C Marine

dio

rtsd

arti.

be

the Own

und 183-Ver

Sich ich

n-

In the Winter he abscords himself, but after April he appears abroad, and is very gamesome and pleasant. He is very tender-mouth'd, and therefore quickly lost after he is struck. For what more may be said, I reser you to the Chapter of the Grailing.

Thus have I given you an Alphabetical and in mary account of the Nature of Fish, and the veral ways to take them, according to ancient and dern experience: I shall onely give you more a far discovery of their Haunts; and so I shall conclusive this Treatise.

Next to the Art of taking Fish, the knowledged their Haunts and proper places to find them in according to their kinds is rightly to be considered: for not knowing what Rivers or what parts of them are fittest for your Baits, or what Baits best sute with each River and the fish therein contained, you onely angular adventure, and, instead of reaping satisfaction, you

onely lofe your pains and your labour.

Wherefore in the first place you are to understand, that fishes change places with the season. Some in the Summer keep always near the top or rim of the Water; others are continually at the bottom. For the first, you may angle with a Float or Fly; the latter are to be found at the Arches of Bridges, Mill-ponds, Wears, Flood-gates, &c. In Winter all fish in general fly into deep Waters.

The Barbel, Roach, Dace, and Ruff delight in fandy gravelly ground. The deepest part of the River and the Shadows of Trees are equally grateful.

The Bream, Pike, and Chub choose a Clay and Ouzie ground. The Bream delights most in the midst of a River whose Stream is not too rapid, but gently gliding: the Pike is for still Waters full of Fry; and that he may the better and secure seize his Prey, be frequently absconds himself amongst Water-docks, under Bushes or Bull-rushes.

Gal

and t

T

ras

OF W

S

teft

for

Se

16

the

nd m

flor

nclude

ige of

CCOr.

n are

each

angle

you

and.

the

Na-

the

ds.

ne-

dy

ie

a

d

Tench, and Ed frequent still Waters, and are foul and muddy Eds lie lurking under Roots tones. The Carp is for the deepest place of the ter; and where there are green Words the Carp Tench delight most of all.

Pearch delight in gentle Streams not too deep, yet by must not be shallow; and a hollow Bank is their highest refuge.

Gadgeons love fandy ground in gentle Streams, they feet mall Rivers above the large, or small Brooks, and bite best in the Spring till they Spawn.

The Salmon delights most in Rivers which ebb and how, are large, and have a swift current, in such Riers are the greatest plenty. If the Rivers are rocky of weedy, so much the better.

Shad, Thwait, Plaice, and Flounder have the greault love for falt or brackish Waters which ebb and low.

The Umber affects Marly Clay grounds, clear and wife Streams; but they must then be far from the sa, for they seldom come near it.

There are many more Rules to be observed, which generally hold good, but I will not conclude them infallible, since I have found some of them (well credited) very salse; wherefore let every man's expenience be his guide in the knowledge of the name of Rivers, and the Fish their Inhabitants. And therefore it will be very requisite for him that would becompleat in the Art of Angling, diligently to observe whatever River or water he fisheth in, whether it be

L

muddy,

muddy, slimy stony, gravelly, swift, or of a flow many and as he must have a competent knowledge wers, Ponds, or all sishable waters he is accurately with; so must he know the nature of each Fish, what Baits are most proper for every kind, or he never attain to the reputation of a good experience. A NGLER.

I shall conclude this Treatise with the experimental observations of an ingenious Gentleman, who had practiced the Art of Fishing many years, and therefore the more sit to give Directions for the right with the control of the right with the experimental observations of the control of the co

of the Angle.

Experi-

perimental Observations and useful Directions for the right use of the Angle; and is a true and brief Epitome of the whole Art and Mystery of the Fishing Recreation.

One certainly is so ignorant to address himfelf to the River for Recreation, but he will lemindful to carry necessary Tackle with him: being compleatly furnished therewith, let him in the first pace consult Sun, Wind, Moon, Stars, and change of lir; for without observing Times and Seasons, his Tackle, though never so good, will prove ineffectual.

Wherefore observe, if the Sun be obscured with Clouds, and his Face hidden from your Eyes, then set forth your Ground-baits, and use your brightest Files. Is the Sun shine out gloriously, then use the darkest of

your Flies. Here note,

If that the Wind be in the South, It blows the Fly in the Trout's Mouth.

If the weather be warm, it is no matter in what point of the Compass the Wind lieth, so that it blow

not too high; the same observation holds good Night as well as Day. If the Sun shine bright Moon prove stees, or the Stars glitter, there has

little fport to be expected.

Gentlemen, I write to you that have more common experience in the Art of Angling, and the fore I hope you will not expect that I should here form you how to profecute the little recreation at Thimes, how to catch Bleak, Dace, &c. lince the handly any young beginner that is ignorant than Whereof omitting fuch triffing discourse I shall upon that which is somewhat more insterial and in how to take Betra When the Angler Rays a nighter two, let him take five or fix Lines for what number he thinks fit) each of them about fixteen wards long. and at every two yards long make a Noole to hangon a hook armed either to double Thread, or Silk-twift. for it is better then Wyre. His Hooks must be baired with Miller schumbs, Loaches, Minnows of Guagens: the Lines mult ly cross the River in the deepelt place either with Stones or pegged lying in the hottom, we must watch all night, or rife as foon as ever it break of day. (or elfe you will lofe divers that we hung) and draw up the Lines, on each of whill have known two of three Eets at Grigs. 2012 2017 Every one that delights in Fly-lining ought to

Every one that delights in Fly-filling ought to learn the way of making two forts of Artificial Flis, the Palmer ribbed with Silver of Gold, and the Ma-

fly, both which are the ground of all Flies.

In the making of the Palmer-Fly, he must arm his Line on the infine of the Hook, then with a pair of Sizers let him cut so much of the brown of a Malards Feathers as he shall think sufficient to make the Wings; then see him lay the outer most part of the Feather next the Hook, and the point of the Feather

la h

in C

filt

ap

and of

tin Po

or

£

wards the Shank of the Hook; let him whip it or four times about the Hook with the same he armed the Hook; then make his Silk fast: he let him take the Hackle of the neck of a Cock Capon (but a Plovers Top is best) and let him take The one fide of the Feather; and then he must take he Hackle-filk, or Gold or Silver thread; and let im make all these fast at the best of the Hook, working them up to the Wings; every bout shifting in Fingers, and making a stop, then the Gold will all right, and let him make fast: then work up the lackle to the same place, and make it fast: after this whim take the Hook betwixt his Finger and Thumb in the left hand with Needle or Pin, and part the Wings in twain; then with the Arming-filk (having fallaed all hitherto) let him whip it about as it falleth coss between the Wings, and with his Thumb he must turn the point of the Feather towards the bent of the Hook: then let him work it three or four times about the shank, so fasten it, and view the proportion for other Flies.

If he make the grounds of Hogs-wool, fandy, black, of white, or Bears-wool, or of a red Bullock two years old, he must work these grounds on a waxed Silk, and

multarin and fet on the Wings as aforesaid.

one gon with a lace, we have

The body of the May-fly must be wrought with fome of these grounds, which will be admirably well when ribbed with black Hair. The Oak-fly he must make with Orange-Tawny and black, for the body; and the brown of the Mallards Feather for the Wings.

The next thing to be observed, is the Floating for Scale-fish in Pond, or River: First, take notice that the Feed brings the Fish together, as the Sheep to the Pen; and there is no better in all Angling for Feed, than Bloud and Grains; though Paste is good yet inserviour to these.

181k

Neco

Nice

dor de

Mee

the

Por

CH

Next, let him observe to plumb his ground, a ling with fine Tackle, as single hair for half the linext the Hook, round and small plumbed according to his Float. There is a small red worm with a low tip on his Tail, which is an excellent bait for the fort of Fish or any other. Other special baits are the Brandlings, Gentles, Paste or Cadice (otherwise call Cock-bait.) They lie in Gravelly husk under the store in the River.

There is a way of Trowling for Pike with an Hzle rod of Twelve foot leng, with a Ring of Win on the top of the Rod for the Line to run through within two foot of the bottom of the Rod, there ha hole made to put in a Wind to turn with a Barrel, m gather up the Line and loofe it at pleasure: This is

the best manner of Trowling.

There is another way to take more Pikes either in Meere, Pond, or River, than any Trowler with his Rod can do, which is done after this manner.

Take a forked stick with a Line of Twelve yards long wound upon it; at the upper end leave about a vard, either to tie a bunch of Flags, or a Bladder to buoy up the Fish, and to carry it from the ground. The Bait must be a live sish, either Dace, Gudgeon, Road, or small Trom: The forked stick must have a sliting the one side of the Fork to put in the Line, that he may set his live sish to swim at a gage, that when a Pike taketh the Bait, he may have the full liberty of the line for his seed. He may turn these loose either in Pond or River, in the Pond with the Wind all day long, the more the better: at night let him set some simal weight that he may stay the Buoy till the Fish taketh it.

For the River he must turn all loose with the Stream; the Hooks must be double, the Shanks must be somewhat shorter then ordinary; for the shorter

cordin

an H.

Wyn

Ough:

re isa

el, to

is is

r in

his

rds

ta

to

be

6,

Hook is off the Shank, without doubt it will less arthe fish: and it must be armed with small Wyre foftned; but certainly a hook armed with twiftsik is better.

hayd for the If you arm your hook with Wyre, the Needle must made with an Eye; then must he take one of those e their ing Baits, and with one of his Needles enter within le cally straws breadth of the Gill of the Fish, so pull the ftones! Needle betwixt the Skin and the Fish, then pull the Needle out at the hindmost Fin, and draw the Arming thorough the Fish, until the Hook come to lie close to he Fishes Body : having so done, let him put off in Mere or pond with the Wind; in the River with the Stream : the more that he pulls off in Meere or Pood, he is the likelier to have the greater Paltime.

There is a time when Pikes go a Frogging in Ditchs, and in the River to Sun them, as in May, June, and July; at these times you shall hardly miss one in twenty; and thus must the Angler deal with them. Let him take a Line of Seven or Eight foot, and let him arm a large Hook of the largest fize that is made, and arm it to his Line; let him lead the shank of his Hook neatly, of fuch a weight that he may guide the Hook at his pleasure. He may strike the Pike that he fees with the bare Hook where he pleafes. This Lipe

and Hook doth far exceed Snaring.

In the taking of a Carp either in Pond or River, if the Angler intends to add Profit to his Pleasure, he must take a Peck of Ale-Grains and a good quantity of any Blood, and mix the Grains together, with which let him bait the Ground wherein he intends to Angle. This feed will wonderfully attract the Scalefilh, as Carp, Tench, Roach, Dace, and Bream. In the Morning early let him profecute his pastime. plumbing his ground, and Angling for a Carp with a strong Line: the bait must be either laste, or a knotted red Worm

Worm : by this means he shall find sport enough. In the Taking of a Trout with Ground-baits to must the Angler do: In the first place he must be neat taper Rod, light before, with a tender Ho top. He may Angle with a fingle hair of five length one tied to the other for the bottom of the Line, and a Line of three hair'd links for the upper part; and h if he have room enough he may take the large Trout that fwims in the River. He that angles with a line made of three hair'd links at the bottom, and more at the top, may take Tronts; but he that Angle with one Hair, shall take five Trouts to the other one: For this Fish is very quick fighted; therefore the Angler both day & Night must keep out of light He must Angle with the point of his Rod downthe Stream.

month

Male

Rhd C

900

No.

hel

111

000

1

H

He must begin to Angle in March with the Groudbaits all day long: but if it prove clear and bright, he must take the Morning and evening, or else his labour

will be in vain.

He that Angles with Ground-baits, must fit his Tackle to his Rod, and begin at the upper end of the Stream, carrying his Line with an upright hand, feeling the Plummet running on the ground fome tea Inches from the Hook, plumbing his Line according to the swiftness of the Stream that he Angles in, for

one Plummet will not ferve for all Streams.

For his Bait let him take the red knotted Worm, which is very good where Brandlings are not to be had. The Minnow (or as some call it a Penk) is a singular Bait for a Trant; for he will come as boldly at it as a Mastissed at a Bear. It will be advantageous to him in his angling to use a Line made of three Silks and three Hairs twisted for the upper most part of the Line, and two Silks and two Hairs twisted for the bottom next the Hook, with a Swivel night to the middle of

the bines with an indifferent large hook. Let him be hook with a Minnew, putting the hook through the mouth part of his mouth, so draw the Hook with them put the hook in at the mouth again, and athe point of the hook come out at the hindmost south will close, that no Water will get into his Belly. In this before, he must angle with the point of his hid down the Stream, drawing the Minnew up the small by listtle and little nighthe, top of the Water: the world will come most fiercely at it; but the Angler must not then presently strike: this is a translay without Lead; for many times they will come worthe Lead, and for take the Minnew.

and 6

s with

then

efore

ght.

the

idhe or

İs

The next direction is how to angle with a Fly for a Thurs anthe first place let the Angler sit himself with a Hazle of one piece or two set conveniently together, lighthand phiable. The lower part of his Line next the Flysmussi be of three or sour hair'd Links; but if he can attain (as aforesaid) to angle with a single thir, who shall meet with more proper and pleasure.

before he begin to angle, having the wind on his back, let him try how far he can cast his Line, on at what length his Fly, and let him be careful that the Fly fall first on the Water; for if any of the Line light upon the Water, he had better to have stood still than to have thrown at all. He must always cast down the Stream, with the Wind behind and the Suni before him; it is a great advantage to have either Sun or Moon before him.

March is the moneth for him to begin to angle with the Fly, but if the Weather prove windy or cloudy, there are feveral forts of Palmers that are good stitute time: The first is a black Palmer ribbed with Silver: The fecond a black Palmer with an Orange-tawny Body: Thirdly, a Palmer whose body is all black: Laftly, there is a red Palmer into with Gold, and a red Hackle mixed with Or Gruel. These Flies serve all the year long Morning and Evening, whether Windy or Cloudy Weather But if the Air prove serene, he may then imitate Hawthorn-sly, which is all black and very small, at the smaller the better.

In May let him take the May-fly and imitate the which is made several ways: Some make them with a shammy Body; 'tis best with black Hair's Other make them with sandy Hogs-wool, ribbed with black Silk, and winged with a Mallards Festhe several ways, according to the humour of the Magle. Another called the Oak-fly, is made of Orange coloured Cruel, and black, with a brown Wing. Lat. ly, there is another Fly, the Body whereof is made of the strain of a Peacock's Feather, which is very good in a bright day. These several sorts of Flie will serve the whole year, observing the times and lessons.

Here note, that the lightest Flies are for cloudy and dark! Weather, the darkest for bright and light, and the rest for indifferent seasons, for which his own Judgement, Discretion, and Experience must guide him. Of late days the Hogs-wool of several colours, the Wool of a red Heiser and Bears-wool are made use of, which make good grounds, and excellent passime.

The Natural-fly is a fure way of Angling to Augment the Anglers Recreation. Now how to find them take notice that the May-fly is to be found playing at the River side, especially against the Rain.

The Oak-fly is to be found on the But of an Oak, on an Ash, from the beginning of May to the end of Angust: It is a brownts Fly, and stands always with head towards the Root of the Tree, very easy to be found.

The

The

No

Let it mo

> low and

> > th

a

The Black-fily is to be found on every Hawthornhafter the Buds are come forth.

Now with these Flies he must use such a Rod as to age with the ground bait: the Line must not be

olong as the Rod.

Let the Angler withdraw his Flie as he shall find it most convenient and advantageous in his Angling. When he comes to rep Water (whose motion is but sow) let him make his Line about two yards long, and dop his Fly behind a Bush, and he shall find incom-

mable sport.

then

With the

ler.

co.

de ty

h

d

The way to make the best Paste, is to take a convenient quantity of fresh Butter, as much Sheeps-suet that is fresh, a sufficient quantity of the strongest Cheese can be gotten, with the pith of an old stale white Loaf: Let all these be beaten in a Mortar till they come to a persect paste; and when the Angler intends to spend some time in Angling, let him put hereof the quantity of a green Pea upon his Hook, and let him observe what pleasant effects it will produce.

An Angling SONG.

Ome lay by all cares, and hang up all forrow, Let's Angle to day, and ne're think of to morrow; And by the Brook-side as we Angle a long, Wee'l cheer up our selves with our sport and a Song.

Sometimes on the Grass our selves we will lay, And see how the watery Citizens play; Sometimes with a Fly stand under a Tree, And choose out what Fish our Captives shall be:

Thus woid of all care we're more happy then they That sit upon I hrones and Kingdoms do sway; For Scepters and Crowns disquiet still bring, But the Man that's content is more blest than a King.

An Abstract of such Penal

STATUTES

As Relate to

FISHING.

13. E Dw. 1. cap. 47. Ro Salmons thall be taken the Nativity of our Lady unto & Martin's day. Poung Salmons may not be descript nor taken by Rets nor other Engines, at Mill-pous from the miost of April until St. John Baprist. The Penalties you may see in the said Statute at large.

I. Eliz. cap. 17. Pone thall take and kill any poung Brood, Spawn, os Fry of Eels, Salmon. Pike, or any other Kith, in any Flod-gate, Pipent the tail of a Hill, Wear, or in any Straights, Streams, Broks, Rivers fresh or falt. Por take or kill any Salmons, or Crouts not being in feafon, being Ripper Salmons, or Ripper Trouts, Shedder Hanns, or Shedder Trouts.

II. Pone hall take or kill any Pike or Pickeril not being in length ten inches Kith, no: Salmon not being in length firteen inches Kith, no: Trout under eight inches, nor Barbel under tinglive inches.

III. Sone thall take Kith with any manner of Trammel, ec. in any River or other places, but one ly with Pet or Trammel, whereof every Bell or

Bask

thall be two inches and t broad. Angling er-

IV Aevertheless this Statute allows Smelts, unites, Pinnows, Endgeons, Eeles, ac. to be taken because in such places, and such ways as heretogether have been.

V. The penalty for every offence is 20s. and the fib to taken, as also the Engine or Device whatso

cer whereby the offence was committed.

St. 90 be

P

L

Eliz. cap. 21. Pone may by bay or night break um, cut out, or beltroy any Head or Dam of any dens, Pols, Potes, ec. where any Fish Gall be us in or sored withal by the owners thereof. Por hall Cake, kill, or Steal away any of the said Fish in he said Ponds, ec. against the will of the Dwner.

23 & 23 Car. 2 cap. 25. It is not lawful for any mion to use any Casting-net, Thief-net, Trammel, hope net, or other pet; nor to ule any Angle, Bair. Ante Spear, or Trowl : Por to lay any Dets, Mears, Pots, Filh-hooks, or other Engines; Dr to the any filb by any other means or device whatlos der, in any River, Sew, Pond, Bote, or other Alas m: Por be aiding or affilling thereunto, without the Licente or confent of the Lord or Dioner of the faid Water. And in case any person be convict of any of dele Diffences, by his own confession, or by Dath of me fuff cient Witness, within one moneth after the Offence be committed, before any Juffice of the Beace of such County, Riving, Division, or Place, wherein such be committed; every such person in Taking, Stealing, or Billing Fith, thall for every fuch Diffence give to the Party er Parties grievedor injured fuch recompence for his or their Dameges, and within such time as the faid Inflice the Il appoint, not exceed. ing treble Damages: And over and above pay town presently unto the Dierfrers fert the por where fuch Diffences

Offence is committee, such sum of Honey, we ceeding 10s. as the said Austice that think meet in default of payment, as accressive, the same which by distress of the Offenders Goods, by this under the Hand and Seal of such Austice before the Offender that be conducted, rending the obesit is any be: And for want of Distress the Offender Offenders that be committed to the bouse of Common, for such time as the Austice that think st, min ceasing one Month, unless the party offending to enter into Bond with one competent Survey or such ties to the party intured, not exceeding ten pomenter to offend in like manner.

II. And every Justice of Peace, before whom in Disease that be convict, may take, cut in pieces, a destroy all such Angles, Spears, Pairs, Pair, Trowls, Whears, Pots, Fish-hoks, Nets, of the Engines whatsoever, wherewith such Diseasers

forefaid thall be taken or apprehenbeb.

III. Pevertheless, any person aggrieved may peal to the Institutes of the Peace in their next quant Bestions; who may give relief, and make such Ona therein as shall be agreeable to the Cenor of this Antwhole Droer therein shall be smal, if no title of Lamb Moyalty, or Fishery be therein concerned.

, FINIS.

The Hunter.

A DISCOURSE of HORSEMANSHIP:

Directing
The right way to breed, keep, and train
HORSE, for ordinary Hunting
and Plates.



OXFORD,
Printed by L. Lichfield, Printer to the University, for

Printed by L. Liebsield, Printer to the University, for Nicholas C.x. 1685.

1 . 90

pet ing am not this of this of and it all at Scion R

of

The HUNTER.

CHAP. I.

of Hunting-Horses in general, their Excellency, and the necessity and benefit of the Lit of Keeping.

I shall omit to speak in praise of Huming in general, since I would avoid (as much as might be) Repetitions, and that it is already done at the Begining of the foregoing Book, with more Address than I am Master of. But since that Author hath spoken nothing of the Huming-Horse, which is a principal infrument of that Excellent Recreation, I desire leave to speak a word in his Behalf. In Behalf, I say, of this noble Creature, to whom all that are Followers of Hunting are oblig'd: since it is by his Strength and Vigour that we gratise at ease our Eyes and Ears with all the Pleasures that Huming affords; and without whose Assistance, a great part of us could enjoy it a little more than in Imagination.

But tis not to us only, that are Humfmen, but to Mankind, that the Hunter is (or may be) ferviceable. Has our Prince, or Country occasion for our Service in the Field: on what Horse can we venture our Lives more securely, than on the Hunter? His Readines to obey the Hand and Heel, equals him to the

Man-

In times of Peace he is equally Useful, not only for Pleasure, but also for Necessity, and Prose. How diverting to the Eyes, is a Beautiful Horse after a Pack of Dogs? and with how much ease to our Bodies, and delight to our Minds, are we carried up to them; with so much Vigour and Pride to be disceined in his Countenance, as if he emulated the Howain their Speed, and was desirous to excell them, in his

Obedience to their common Lord.

How Necessary is the Hunter beyond all other Herfes, if his Masters urgent Affairs (where either Life or Fortune are in hazard,) exact the performance of a long Journey in a short Time. If his Master, in hopes of Advantage, has match'd him against any other Horse; how ready and willing is he, to perform the Utmost that Nature is capable of, or his Master can reasonably expect from Him and having Art joyn'd to his natural Abilities, will not only excell all other Horses, but accomplish things beyond his Masters Hopes, or Expectations; for without its Affiftance in Dieting and Exercise, no Horse can follow the Hounds, or indeed undergo any other extreme Labour, without hazarding the melting bis Greafe, the breaking of bis Wind, or foundring him either in Feet, or Body: all which are confequences of immoderate Labour, and Ignorance in this Art.

That

4

My.

how

Ho.

17,山

in

1969

thi

fer of

po

DI

0

ti

ti

d

B

forts

bas

tary

ong

rice,

ift-

refe

ice,

for

WO

a

0-

to d

in

is

fe

f

S

r

e

That I may therefore give you some Light into its dysteries, I shall first direct you how to breed such the that may be for Training; or else instruct you, tow otherwise to procure them. Secondly, how to how by Shapes, Marks, and other Tokens, what the may be most convenient for your purpose. Thirdly, how to diet him so, that he may perform all things within his Power, without Danger. Lastly, what manner of Exercise is most conducive to this Design: and on these Heads I intend to inlarge in my following Discourse.

But before I enter upon my Subjett propos'd, I think it necessary to answer Four Objettions that may be made against this Art of Dieting and Training Horfet, that I may remove all prejudice from the minds of those, who think they may have Reason to oppose it; and that I may vindicate (with Truth) this

At, and clear it from all Aspersions.

The first Objection I shall mention, is made by do Grey in his Epistle to the Reader, (Edit. 4th.) where under the Ombrage of his Love to Horses, and in pity of the Hardships they undergo in Hunting, he extreamly inveighs against it, as the Sourse of all their Miseries. But that I may not be tax'd of Prevarication by my Reader, and for his satisfaction I shall set

down his Words, which are these.

If the Nobility and Gentry of this our Isle of Great Britain, did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horsemanship were, and how much they are esteemed and admir'd, who are the true Professors thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and to have good Horses; but it much troublets me to see, how little Esteem Gentlemen have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Mannage, yet for Hunting: but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting for sooth, or Harriers, which be as sleet as petty Grey-hounds, wherewith

they do so much over-strain the strength of these we storses, (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Comand wet and rough Sands,) that albeit those Holes Strong and able, yet are they so toil dout therewith, that when they come home at night they would pit the Heart of him that loveth an Horse to see them so home as if such Horses had been ridden to the Great-Sadde and Cannon, they would infinitely have delighted all and Cannon, they would infinitely have delighted all and control to the control of the control

that (bould have beheld them.

To this I answer, that for my own part I amou very fond of Fox hunting; but I can see no Reason why Persons of Honour should not gratifie their Family with this Recreation, fince from the beginning Horses were made for the service of Man; and doubtless for their Recreation, as well as more necessary Uses. And I am very confident, that if Horses be train'd, dieted, and ridden according to Art, there will be left no ground for this Objection. For by good Feeding Faintness would be prevented; and by Airing, and de Exercise, the Horses Wind would be so improved that no moderate Labour would hurt him: nay, though a Horse by immoderate Riding, were reduc'd to fuch Tragical Exigencies, as De Grey mentions, yet by the Assistance of Art Nature may be in Twenty four hours space so reliev'd, that all those dangerous Symptoms shall be remov'd, and all the Natural Faculties act as formerly.

Now as to the last part of his Argument, I appeal to all the greatest Masters of Academies here, or in Foreign Parts; whether in the Mannage, the Spurs are not as much us'd, (not to say more,) as in Hunting; and the Duke of Newcastle in his Methode Nowvelle in 8°. p. 85. says, il n'y a point d' Exercise si violent pour les Chevaux que celuy de Manege; that is, There is no Exercise so violent for Horses as the Man-

14. 10

DOC

afor

ries

for nd

ed, no t-

le l

ge: so that you see Hinning is not the only violent recise: and Salomen de la Brove goes surther in Cavalorise Françoise, telling us, that Mannag'd onles should sometime be us'd to the Chase, since using assists his wind, and brings him to a civil Measing assists his wind, and brings him to a civil Measing assists with other Horses: inserving from hence, that bunting procures to an Horse two Benefits, viz. Seed and Strength, and reforms in him two Vices, salvageness and Restiveness.

secondly, there are others, that though they may approve of keeping their Horles clean, yet are not reconcil'd to hunting; but being either Admirers of their health, and the taking the Air; will not be perlwaded, but that they can bring their Horles to the same Perfection without hunting, as with it.

To answer the first of these, I mean Courses; I assum, 'tis impossible to attain the end of this Art by that Means: for being oblig'd in search of their Game to toil their Horses all day, over deep Fallows, in a soot-pace only, they are likelier to bring their Horses to Weariness than Persection.

And the same Answer may serve the Others likewise: for Riding a Horse up and down the Field after nothing, brings a Weariness and Dislike to an Horse in his Exercise, through his Ignorance of the Time, when his Labour shall cease; whether, or to what End he is so labour'd. Whereas on the contrary, an Horse naturally takes delight in following the Dogs, and seems pleas'd with their Musick, as is evident by his pricking up his Ears, gazing on them, and pressing to gallop towards them, when ever he hears them in suffery, (though at a distance.) Nay surther, I have been Master of a Stonehorse, that so entirely lov'd the Hounds, that when at any time (through eagerness of Sport, and desire to save the Hare from being

fo carefully avoid treading on them, that he more than once hazarded my Limbs (by making falle step) to fave theirs. From hence I infer, doubtless Horses extreamly delight in hunting, consequently, that it is a fit Exercise for them.

Thirdly, Others Object, That what foever the fure there may be in Huning, they had rather day themselves that satisfaction than hazard the Lame their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no Hamiltonian their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no Hamiltonian their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no Hamiltonian their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no Hamiltonian their Horses, which is the same told of the same tol

riole: the 3

ble

是看看

the

éq

to

10

at D

ters escape.

That Hunters are fometimes Lame, I do not dem but cannot allow, that it proceeds alwaies from the Exercise. For tis the Indiscretion of the Riders, in. verstraining their Horses at Leaps; and by that means fometimes clapping them on the back-sinews, catching in their shoos, and fuch like, and not the Sport, that is the cause of Lameness. But on the contrary, I will undertake to shew any man Twenty other Horses lame (which never knew what belong'd to Hunting) for One Humer. There are several other Reasons belides Hunting to be given for Lameness; as for Instance. Much Travel though but moderate, if care be wanting) will produce Wind-galls, and Splints, which are the fore-runners of Lamenefs. Want of Exercise will ftraiten the Hoofs, and dry up the linews; and too much negligence in Travail occasions Surbating, Foundring, and Gravailing. Horses on the Road oftentimes stumble, and now and then fall, and so become Lame, Nav, a Slip, or an Over-reach are as incident to the Pad, as to the Hunter. And to conclude, the Horle that is Dress d, is more liable to a Strain in the Back and Fillers, than the Hunter; by meanes of his fhortturns: fo that you may perceive that Lameness is Epidemical, and therefore no more to be objected against Hunting-Horses, than the rest of that Species. Fourth-

orthly, Some again are Enemies to this Art of Horfes in particular : affirming, that such exact makes them tender, fickly, and takes them off Stomach: and that the Charges are not only

t. but likewise unnecessary.

To the First part of this Obiection, I answer, that Horse is so far from being made tender, or losing Appetite, by fuch extream and feveral Feedings, chave proportionate Exercise, that it rather inshim to hardfhip. For much Labour (if not too ment) either in Man or Beaft, instead of weakning siemack, and causing Sickness, does rather advance he Appetite and preserve his Health; and it may be blerved, that it doth oftner heighten than decay he Stomack. In like manner moderate Airings puin his Wind, and both together render him Heal-

by, and fit for Service.

eny.

111

on-or

es e.

t-

e

nes, gin the As to the several forts of Food, we shall prove in the fequel, that every part of it is both nourishing, and natural to all Horses Constitutions; so that con-Equently, tis not only allowable, but necessary: And oprove this, needs no more; than to ride an ordimry Horse drawn clean, a days Hunting, or three Heats, and a Courfe, against the best of those Horses, which the kept by fuch Persons who think that half a Peck a Day, and fetching his water at the next Spring is Harfemanship sufficient; and they will find by keeping and Exercise, the Ordinary Horse will become long winded, and flick at Mark: when the other that is Fool-fed, and fat, will foon give out, for want of Wind; cr otherwise if he be hardy will dy under the Spur; whereas if the untrained Horse had been rightly ordered he would have worsted Twenty such

Now to the Charges of Keeping , Fifty Shillings a Mar disburs'd for Bread, besides Hay, Straw, Corn and

and Phylick, (which all Horses of Value must be shed) is all that will be requisite, to keep an Horse as good State for Ordinary Hunting, as any whatsoever. Lastly by being Skilful in the Keeping, this Advantage will insue; that no District per relating either to the Head or Body can converted themselves from his keepers knowledge, whole so will inform him, how to put a stop to them, bear they have made any considerable Advances to the Horse Prejudice. And he that grudges so small expence on so noble and useful a Creature as a Horse is, deserves never to come on the back of one.

CHAP. II.

Of Breeding, the Choice of a Stallion, and Marcs, with some general Remarks on Marks and Colours.

Th

in A

di

0

Since Creation and Generation preceded the An of Riding, and that the first thing which is of Course to be treated of, is the Choice of an Horse it for this exercise of Hunting, I shall speak somthing cursorily of the Art of Breeding, before I treat of the Hunter ready for service. To them therefore that have grounds convenient for Breed, I shall direct this part of my discourse: and lay them down some sew Rules that may be serviceable to them, though I shall be as brief as possible, and refer them to Markham, de Grey, Morgan, Almond, and Farring Compleated, (which is collected from the forementioned Authors Markham

them and de Grey) all which have treated of the

of Breeding more at large.

therefore I would advise you to buy either an har Horse (if you can procure him,) a Spaniard, a or a Barb, for your Stallion, that is well fbap'd, good Colour to beautify your Race, and well to agree with most mens Opinions; though derwife they are not fo fignificative as Mr. Blundeand his Italian Author Frederigo Griffone, would mus believe.

To begin with the Arabian; Merchants, and other ck of Contlemen that have travell'd those parts, report, matthe right Arabians are valu'd at an incredible, as mell as an intolerable Rate; being priz'd at Five indred, others fay at one, two, and three thousand funds an Horse; that the Arabs are as careful of deping the Genealogies of their Horses, as Princes in læping their Pedigrees; that they keep them with Midals; and that each Son's Portion is usually two Suits of Arms, two Cymeters, and one of these Horses. The Arabs boast, that they will ride fourscore miles a day, without drawing Bitt: which has been perform'd by several of our English Horses. more was atchiev'd by an High-way-man's Horse; who having taken a Booty, on the fame day rode him from London to York, being One hundred and Fifty Miles. Notwithstanding their great value, and the disculty in bringing them from Scanderoon to Englad by Sea; yet by the care, and at the charge of some Breeders in the North, the Arabian Horse is no franger to those parts; where Persons who have the oriofity, may (as I prefume) at this Day fee fome of the Race, if not a true Arabian Stallion.

The Spanish Horse (according to the Duke of Newcaftle) is the Noblest Horse in the world, and the most Beautiful that can be; no Horse is so curiously shap'd all over from Head to Croup, and he is absolutely best Stallion in the world, whether you design Breed for the Mannage, the War, the Pad, Him or for Running Horses. But as he is excellent. wants not for price, Three or Four hundred Pile being a common Rate for a Spanish Horse. Several have been fold for Seven hundred, Eight hundred and a Thousand Pistols a piece; and One particular Horse called el Bravo, that was fent to the Arch-Duke La pold, was held worth as much as a Mannour of Thousand Crowns a year. The best Spanish Horses are bred in Andalouzia, and particularly at Cordon where the King has many Studds of Mares, and h have several of the Spanish Nobility and Gentry. Now besides the great price at first, the Charges of the Journey from Spain to England will be very considerable: for first, he must travel from Andalouzian Bilbo, or St Sebastien, the neerest Ports to England and is at least Four hundred Miles : and in that hot Country you cannot with fafety travel your Hone above twenty Miles a day, then there is the Expense of your Groom and Farrier, belides the casualty of Lameness, Sickness, and Death : fo that though he do prove an Extraordinary good Horse, by that time he arrives at your own home he will likewise be an Extraordinary dear one.

The Turk is little inferior to the Spanish Horse in Beauty, but somewhat odd-shap'd, his bead being somewhat like that of a Camel: He hath excellent Eyes, a thin Neck excellently risen, and somewhat large of body: his Croup is like that of a Mule; his Legs not so underlimb'd as those of the Barb, but very sinewy, good Pasterns, and good Hoofs: They never amble, but error very well: and are accounted at this present better Stallions for Gallopers than Barbs, 28 when I come to speak of them) I shall shew.

Some

care T

Oir

bein

tra0

960 Cant

wa the

COL

F

th

some Merchants affirm, that there cannot be a see noble and divertive fight to a Lover of Horses, into walk into the Pastures near Constantinople, and Soyling-time, where he may see many bundred plant Horses tethred, and every Horse has his Atalant or Keeper, with his little Tent (plac'd near in) to hie in, that he may look to him, and take are to shift him to fresh Grass, as occasion requires.

Veral and

orfe,

of a

are

love

d fo

the

era.

to

hot

rfe

ace

of

do he

x-

in

It

t

The Price of a Turk is commonly One hundred or bundred and Fifty Pounds a Horse, and when lought tis difficult to get a Pass; the Grand Segnior king to very strict, that He seldom (but upon exmordinary occasions) permits any of his Horses to perported his Dominions. But if (when obtain'd) mutravel by Land, without a Turk or two, for your Convoy, you will be fure to have them feiz'd on by the way. Then, as in the former, fo here, you will find the same difficulties of a long Fourney, (for you must ome through Germany, which is a long way,) and the same charges attending it, I mean your Groom and Farrier. who must be careful that they entrust no Persons what soever with the care of him, but themlelves, especially in shooing of him: For tis the common practice beyond Sea, (as well as here) where they discover a fine Horse, to hire a Farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a Stallion.

But some People chuse to buy Horses at Smyrna in Anatolia, and from thence, as likewise from Constantinople, transport them to England by Sea; which, state Wind serve right, arrive in England in a month, though generally the Merchants make their Voyages

little less than a Quarter of a year.

The Barb is little inferior to any of the former in humy, only the is accounted by our Modern Breeders too flender and Lady-like to breed on : and therefore in the North, at this instant, they prefer the Spanish

Horfe

Horse and Turk before him. He is so lazy and gligent in his walk, that he will flumble on Canground. His Tror is like that of a Cow, his so low, and with much ease to himself. But he is a the most part sinewy, and nervous, excellently wind and good for a Courfe, if he be not over-weighted.

ou pl

1360

i-on

是黃言芸君

查查

見包室

mea

Col

men drin

1

from

bet

ate

to st

old,

11.6

The Mountain-Barbs are accounted the best be cause they are the strongest and largest. They be felves, as they are priz'd by any other Nations, at therefore they will not part with them to any Po fons except to the Prince of the Band to which the belong; who can at any time, at his pleasure, command them for his own use. But for the other more ordinary fort, they are to be met with pretty con mon, in the hands of feveral of our Nobility and Go try; or if you fend into Languedoc and Provence in France, they may be there bought for forty or fin Pistols a Horse. Or if you will fend into Barbary you may have one for Thirty Pounds, or thereabouts. But here too the charges and journey will be great; for though from Tunis to Marfelles in France be no great Voyage, yet from Marfelles to Callais by Land measures the length of all France, and from thence they are shipt for England.

The next thing of course to be treated of, is the choice of your Mares, and the fittest Mare to breed out of, according to the Duke of Newcastle's opinion, is one that has been bred of an English Mare, and a Stallion of either of these Races; but if such a Mare be not to be got, then make choice of a right brid English Mare by Sire and Dam, that is well fore-hand ed, well underlaid, and strong put together in general; and in particular, fee that she have a lean Head, with Nostrils, open Chaul, a big Weafand, and the Windpipe straight and loofe, and chuse her about five or fix year

espe-

and be fure that the Stallion be not too old. for the Food of the Stallion, I would have you him as high as possible for four or five months the time of Covering, with old clean Oars, and Beans, well bull'd to which you may add, if please, Bread, (such as in this Book shall be heredirected) and now and then, for variety, you give him an handful of clean Wheat, or Oats walht in his Perfection of Hersemanship, and them superfluous whilst the Horse is in health, the form the first led them superfluous whilst the Horse is in health, and cleansed from Dust, and good Wheat-straw to the sign of the fair running spring, or else a clear standing in the Meadow or level piece of Ground, where you my gallop him after he hath drunk. think his Fill at the first, but after he has taken his the draught, gallop and scope him up and down a lite to warm it, and then bring him to the water aain, and let him drink what he please, and after that allop him as you did before, never leaving the Watertill you find he will drink no more. means you will prevent raw Crudities, which the Coldness of the Water would produce to the detriment of the Stomach, if you had permitted him to wink his fill at first; whereas you allowing him his (though by degrees) at last, you keep his Body from drying too fast. And this I take to be much better for your Horses than (according to the foreotted Morgan) to incourage his Water with Whitewine, wqualifie the cold quality thereof: for Nature it self the best Directress for the expulsion of her Enemies,

100

nd

CC

8

C

especially in Brutes, where usually she can comment the Appetite: and therefore Lesteem his own was beat, for warming his water, to be better than the which proceeds from any other. Now as to do gan's Direction of Sweating him every day early at the Morning, which he says will not only perfect the gestion, and exhaust the moisture from his Seed, he also strengthen and cleanse his Blood and Body from all raw and imperfect humors; I am of opinion that both dry up the radical Moisture too fast, and she wise instead of heightning his Pride and Lust, (which he alledges,) weaken him too much. Other said might be given as to the ordering of them after water, and the Hours of Feeding, with the quantity to but these will be fitter to be handled in another place.

1

and therefore no more of them here.

Now when your Stallion is in Luft, and the Time for Covering is come, which is best to be in May, that the Foles may fall in April following, otherwise they will have little or no Grafs, if they should be put is gether (according to Markham's opinion) in the middle of March, tho he holds that one Fole falling is March is worth two falling in May, " because (lath he) he possesseth, as it were, two Winters in a year, and is thereby fo hardened, that nothing can al 'most after impair him. The time I say being come to put your Stallion and Mares together, pull off his hinder Shoes, and lead him to the place where the Stud of Mares are, which you intend for covering, which place ought to be close well fenc'd, and in ita little Futt for a Man to lie in, and a larger Shed with a Manger to feed your Stallion with Bread and Com, during his Abode with the Mares, and to Shelter him in the heat of the Day and in Rainy weather, and this Close ought to be of sufficient largeness to keep your Mares well for two months. Before

冒耳目

另內司事件司

hat bey a de in th

ar, al ne

is

he

5

h

1

More you pull off his Bridle, let him cover a Mare then tirn him loofe amongst them. pet all your Mares to him, as well those which are Foate, as those which are not a for there is no in it; and by that means they will all be ferv'd wie height of Luft, and according to the imention Materia. When your Scallion has cover d them admit him he ferder; and when his business shift'd, he bearsthe Pale, and attempts to be at Lit which when your Man finds; (who is Night Day to observe them, and to take care thatone Mares are put to your Horse, and to give you secount, which take the berfe, and which ner & oud whim be raken up, and let him be well kept as before dayou may at the first give him a good Mash or to help to reffere Nature, for you will find him Iven of Be fure give him never above Ten or Twelve Mares in a Seafon, at most; otherwise you flarce recover him against the next Years Cover-Without the belottes with

When your Stallish is past this was then buy another sibut be sure never make use of a Horse of your makered, for by so doing the Best Kind would in the degenerate abut you cannot do better (the betrost Newcastle says) than to let your own Mares be used by their Sire, for saccording to dissoyn words adoption) there is no Insest in Horses and by this mais they are nearer, one degree to the Purity and had of the Fountain, from which they are derived, here is no Insest in the fame fine Horse world fine Horse gon them, and the same fine Horse world had the same fine Horse gon them.

Now though the Duke of Newcastle assums this to bethe true way for covering Mares talledging that Make is wifer than Art in the Ast of Generation, and

that by this way of a dozen Mares he dare that two hall not fail: yet it may not corre with the Interest of fome private Gentlemen who Breeders for Profit as well as Pleafaire; for a good tion bearing fuch an extraordinary rate, and having but One, have reason to be cautions, to s much as can be all bazardow Experiments with fubrillion to the Duke's Indement) the fome cafes may prove. For first, there have been fee of great spirit, that have kalka themselves three theif of Luft, being left to range at their liberty chole that have been confin'd to an Enclosion, & al number of Mares, have wet in one Weeks frame weaken'd Naturey that not above half the Mares held Secondly, fome Maries are of fo ber and fitution of Nature, and their Luft fo violent, that they are permitted to run long with the Horse, and they have conceived, will (if they be high in fight lafty) defire the Horfe again, which generally hards the Lofs of the Embrio they go with.

lay you down an other Method (as briefly as my be,) which is called covering in hand, as the form is generally term'd out of hand, and the way is the wise when you have brought both your Hore and Mare to as proper condition for Breed by an and good feeding, then fet some ordinary so have by that means she will be so prone to Lust, that he way that means she will be so prone to Lust, that he way fem to her either early in a Morning, or late in able ning, for a day or two together, and let himmore in hand once, or twice if you please, at each time, observing always to give the Horse the advantage of Ground, and that you have some one ready with a Pucket of rold water to throw on the Mare's Ship,

make het retain the Saed received the better, scially if you get on her back, and trot her about carter of an Hours space, but in any case have a seof beating, or straining her; and it will not be is, if after every such act you let them fast two it, and then give each of them a warm Mash; and sodds but this way your Mares may be as well served the other, and yet your Stallion will last you much

Thall fay no more as to the keeping the Mares duthe time of their being with Foale, nor of their ling; only this, that if you take care to house an all the Winter, and to keep them well, their will prove the better. When they are fooled, them run with their Dams till Martin-mass, then them, and keep them in a convenient House, tha low Rack and Manger on purpose; litter them and feed them with good Hay, and Oats and bran mix'd, which will make them drink, and well. The first year you may put them all toger, but afterwards they must be separated, the Coles from the Fillies; and if you have choice Houses, you may put Tearings together, Two years together, and so Three years old together, for eir better satisfaction and agreement; as little Chilbelt agree together.

In a warm fair Day you may grant them liberty to mand scope in some enclosed Court or Back-fide, but him to take care to put them up again carefully, that her be not hurs. When Summer is come, and there a plenty of Grass, put them out in some dry Ground, hat hath convenient watring, and so let them run till statiumass again: then house them as before, and order them in all points as older Horses, till they are full five years old, then take them up for good and all,

and let your Groom back them if he have skill, or fome skilful Rider. You may if you please just be your Fillies at Two years and half old, and let them cover'd at Three; and by that means they will be tame and gentle, as not to injure themselves or the Foals. But in case of sickness, or any accidental comity, as Lameness, &c. you must then commit the

to the Farrier's Care.

The reason why I propose the Housing of them & very Winter, with dry Feeding and Lodging, is, the they may be the liker their Sire in Beauty and Show. For the primary Cause of the fineness of Shape Beauty in Horles is Heat, and dry Feeding. And this is prov'd from the feveral Races we have already mertioned, viz. the Spanish Horse, Barb, and Tarks Hor'e, all which Countreys are under an Hor Cimate, and by consequence afford little Grafs: There fore in our more moderate and cota Countries we are to affift Nature by Art; and to supply the want of Heat by warm Housing, and dry Feeding. This is callly made evident by Example. For take two Colts be got by the same Sire, on Mares of equal Beauty, and house the one every Winter, and feed him as directed, and expose the Other, till they are Four years all and fit to be back'd; and you shall find the form like his Sire in all respects, and the other fitter for the Care than Hunting, as being a dull, heavy, flatty, Jearce animated Clod; and all this proceeds from the Humidity of the Air and Earth. From hence you may infer, that tis not only Generation, but, as I may term it, Education, that makes a compleat Horle ; and fuch yours will be, if you order them according to the former Directions; for you may with ease break the Cole that is by fuch good management made gentle, and half back'd to your hand.

30

C

But I have dwelt longer on this Subject than I intended, my business being chiefly to inform the Grown

not the Master) what belong'd to his Office; and refore I will wander no further from my purpose, leave it to the Rider to sollow his own Method rendring Coles sit for his Masters Service: whilst I are some sew Directions to those Gentlemen who will bestow either trouble or charges on Breeding, thave the Will but not the Convenience to do it, how

welect an Horse fit for this Exercise,

tha

m e

The way for a Gentleman to furnish himself with an Horse, that may be worth training for Hunting, is eiter to enquire out some noted Breeder (of which there me many in the North,) or else to go to some famous Fair, as Malton and Rippon Fairs in Yorkshire, the ormer held on the 23. day of September yearly, and the latter on May day: Or to Richmonds in the me Shire, (which, as I am inform'd, does now of late years exceed both the fore-mention'd, being feithwin the middle of the most celebrated part of the breeding Country;) its Fairs are held in Easter week, and at Rood tyde. Northampton has several Fairs in the per likewise, as on the 23, day of April, the 8th. of September, 17th, of November, with several others. There are several other Fairs, as Lenton-Fair in Notinchamshire, Pankrido-Fair in Staffordshire, &c. which for brevities fake I omit. At any of these places he may make choice of a Horse, which as near is can be ought to have these following Shapes: viz. His Head ought to be lean, large, and long; his Chaul thin, and open; his Ears small, and pricked, or if they be somewhat long, provided they stand upright like those of a Fox, it is usually a sign of Mettle and Toughness His Forehead long and broad, not fat, and as we term it Mare-fac'd, but rising in the midft like that of a Hare, the Feather being plac'd a. bove the Top of his Eye, the contrary being thought by some to betoken blindness. His Eyes full, large,

B 2

and bright; his Noftrils wide, and red within, in open Noftril betokens a good Wind; his Mouth be deep in the wykes, and hairy; His Thropple, Weat or Windpipe, big, loofe, and streight when he is rem in by the Bridle; for if, when he bridles, it be in like a Bow, (which is called Cock-throppled it to much hinders the free passage of his Wind His H must be so set on to his Neck, that there must be space felt between his Neck and his Chaul; for to be Bull-neck'd is uncomely to fight, and prejudicial to Horses wind, as aforesaid. His Crest should be fine thin, and well rifen; his Neck long, and ftraight, not loose, and pliant, which the Northern-men ten Withy cragg'd; his Breaft strong, and broad; hi Cheft deep, his Chine short, his Body large, and col thut up to the Mucklebone; his Ribbs round like Barrel, his Belly being hid within them. His Film large, his Burrocks rather oval than broad being well let down to the Gascoins. His Cambrels upright, and not bending, which is called by some sickle-bought. though some hold it a fign of Toughness and Speed His Legs clean, flat, and streight. His Joynes short well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the Par borns and the Hoof, having but little Hair on his Fa-His Hoofs black, strong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat. And laftly, his Main and Tail should be long, and thin rather than thick, which is counted by some a mark of Dulness.

As to his Colour and Marks, I rather incline to believe them grateful to the Eye, than any infallible bedexes of Goodness; for as the Goodness or Badness of a Man does not confist in his Complexion, but in his is ward Vertues, so neither do Colour or Marks certainly demonstrate the Goodness or Badness of an Horio because his Qualifications proceed from his inward Disposition. But yet I wholly different from the opi-

nion

of Mr. Morgan, p. 31; who holds, That Colour Marks are no more assurance of a good Horse; a the having a Feather in a Mans Hat does prove a good Man or a had; inserring that inherent race of no greater Eminency or Value, than external ones are which may be taken or laid a-

at a man's own will and pleasure.

四世間はは、時間がなれたからの

2

ŀ

ow.Lay, that altho Marks and Colour do not tely give testimony unto us of a Horses goodness, by as well as his shape do intimate to us in some us Disposition and Qualities. For Nature, not befective, frames every part of the fame matter reof the whole is formed, and therefore the Faseing formed of the copulative Seed of its Sire Dam, does from them derive as well the acciasthemore effemial Qualities of its temperaand composition And for this Reason Hair may often times receive the variation of its from the different temperature of the Subject of which it is produced. And to confirm this are pale my word, that wherever you shall meet an Horse that both no White about him, estably in his Eore-head, though he be otherwise the best reputed Colours, as Bay, Black, Sorrel &c. That Horle I dare affirm to be of a dogged and fuladiposition; especially if he have a small pink Eye, and narrow Face, with a Nose bending like a Hawks

But yet I am not positive, that Horses even of the apply yet I am not positive, that Horses even of the apply yet I am not positive, that Horses even of the apply prove the best; bocause I have seen those Horses with bald Faces; and all the Leggs white above he are. But I rather attribute the Cause thereof the I may once of the Rider, that had the training

B 4

of those best marked Horses of than to any in Nature; for Nature is no Countersell often is, to make a thing shew to the Event as I would not have men put too great dence in Marks and Colours; so I would not them esteemed of so lightly, as the former aparison of Mr. Morgans would make them; to a constant and inteparable quality for them produce Hair, which is given them by Natural and if it be shaved off, gat at, or any walks removed or taken away, nyer it will grow as but a Feather may be put to, or taken from Mans Hat at his pleasured in 1991.

Therefore fince Calour formeth to feel form to Beauty of an Horfe, you may for Offiament is and to please your Eye, make choice of all light that is either a Brown-Bay, Dapple Bay, Plat Such for with Flaxen Main and Tail, is that the have either a White Star, Blaze, or Ship, with a White Foot; Dapple Grey, or White Tyard with Black Muzzle, Eye, and Ear. Any of these are replied by most men to give a Grace to have the in themselves they are no parfett fighs of Goodness.

But for his internal Endowments, they are more material, and therefore take care that he by Nature be of a Gentle Disposition, to his Reper trastable and docide free from those ill Qualities of Biting, Striking, Restiffness, Lying down in the Water, Starting, Running away with his Rider, Plunging, Leaping, &c. Not but that well, if not all these ill habits may be rectified by Art, For Experience has shewn us, that Horses which have not been of such a perfect Natural Composition,

con, as might be desired, have yet been temered by Art, and have not only been reclaimed on their vicious. Habits, but have been likewise rought to great performance in Heats, as well Having, as I could Instance in several if it were recessary.

And therefore lines Art was invented to perted Nathres if (notwithflanding your care) you we met with a Horse subject to any of these ill
tealities aforesaid, you must search into the causes
tie, which Art will help you to discover and renove: and then the Cause being taken away, the
isself will cease. So that probably, contrary to
nost peoples Opinions a Vicious Horse, by good
unagement and Gravernment may be brought to
well an Hunse that has arbetter Reputation and
and in the judgment of the generality of Horse-

stread a conded to the Timbanan in of this , by least ranging fuch Obed ence, as that he will rea dilly over with the factonis Heles and Convestion both or no fridle, the Find, the Foice, the oal of the August the Saure that he can rell how to tere his way forward, and much grimed a true temper of Mount, and a right placing of his Mant and that he there the dead from and then readily; for without the sings are perfectly caught, and as it were late for a Boundation. In con never proceed effectively. I had though a of enlarging upon this particular Subject, but I find my Polomyle is like to fixell beyond its bounds, forther I am oreed to enit it, and there !! PARA Dond only tell you that its convenient in the sectional be it & stars old, and well mit es breditto Pate him. For though it beil giant es granno de boton dishotal modia

6. 程度。 1. 多种和最高

d-

ne fe

d tot

You please

er t

tica

and

Wi

Be

of

mentileer victo and the HAA Hold seen as well begin to green the contract of t

d Humaing Car I could infrance

ion, at mign be defined, have year been tent

of the Age a Hunter spould be of before
be be put to Hunting of the Stable
and Groom, and of the Horse's firs
taking up from Grass an order to bis
further Dieting.

Aving gotten a Horse answerable either to the former Descriptions, so your own Satisfaction at least, is amitto suppose that by a skill up Rider had already grounded in the Fundamentals of this by being taught such Obedience, as that he will readily answer to the Horseman's Helps and Corrections both of the Bridle, the Hand, the Voice, the east of the Leg, and the Spur; that he can tell how to take his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of Mouth, and a right placing of his Head, and that he hath learn'd to stop and turn readily; for without these things are perfectly taught, and as it were laid for a Foundation, he can never proceed effectually.

I had thoughts of enlarging upon this particular Subject, but I find my Discourse is like to swell beyond its bounds, so that I am forced to omit it, and therefore I shall refer you to the Directions and Prudence of your Rider, and only tell you that tis convenient, your Horse should be Five years old, and well may'd before you begin to Hunt him. For though it bea general Custom amongst noted Horsemen to train

Horfes up to Hunting at Fant years old, and no fooner, yet at that Age his Joynts not being full it for he come to his best strength and cowage, is disabled from performing any matter of peed stoughness: and indeed being put to fore Labour Toil so young, he runs a very great hazard of min, and the putting out of Splems, Spavins, Curbs if Windgalls, besides the daunting of his Spirit, and thing his natural Courage, infomuch that he will some melancholly, stiff, and rheumatick, and have the distempers of old Age, when it might be exceed he should be in his Prime.

Your Horse then being full Five, you may if you hade put him to grass from the middle of May till burbolmen-ride, or at least from the middle of Samertill that time; for then the Season being so violaty bot, it will not be convenient to work him: there whilst he is sporting himself at liberty in his lature, we will if you please take care to provide a god Stable for his Reception at his taking up, and a god Groom to look after him; both which are more dentially necessary to the Humer than to other Horizon, which require not that exact care in keeping.

first then as to the Stable, I could wish every Genteman would be careful to scituate it in a good Air, and upon hard dry and firm ground, that in the Winter the Horse may go and come clean in and out and if possible let it be seated on an Ascent, that the lime, Foul Water, or any Wet, may be convey'd way by Trenches, or Sinks cut out for that purpose. Seture to suffer no Hen-houses, Hog-styes, or Houses of Easment, or any other filthy Smells to be near it; for Hen-dung, or Feathers swallow'd, oftentimes prove witel, and the ill Air of a Jakes as often is the cause of Blindness. likewise the very smell of Swine will sequently breed the Farry, and no Animal what-soever

foever more delights in cleanlines, or is more of ded at unibolesome savours than the Horse.

Let your Stable be built of Brick , ra than Seene, fince the latter is subject to furnim wet weather: which Dampness and Moilton the Original of Rheums , and Catarrhs. Let you Wall be of a good convenient thickness, as bout Eighteen or Twenty Inches thick, both for fafety and warmth in Winter, and to keep to Sun from annoying him in Summer, which would hinder Concoction. You may (if you please) make Windows both on the East and North fides, the you may have the benefit of the Air during Sunmer, from the North, and of the Morning Sunda ring Winter from the East. And I would advis you to Glaze your Windows, and make then with Salbes, to let in Air at pleasure, and to keep out Poultry, for the reasons afore recited; and likewise to make close Wooden Shutters, that during the middle time of the Day the Stable may be dark, which will cause him to take his Rest as well in the Day as the Night. Let your Floor, (I mean that part on which he is alwaies to stand, or Ive down on, be made of Oaken Planks, and not pirch'd, for tis easter and warmer for the Horse to ly on Boards than Stones. be fure to lay them level; for if they are laid higher be. fore than behind (as they generally are in Ims and Horfe-courfers Stables, that their Horfes may appear to more advantage in Stature,) his binder-leggs will frell, and he can never lye at ease, because his Hinder parts will be still slipping down. Lay your Planks eross-way, & not at length; and underneath them fink a good Trench, which receiving the Urine thro holes bor'd on purpole in the Planks, may convey it into some common receptacle. Let the ground behind him be railed even with the Planks , that he may continually ftand

25 4

vouk

号章

at

D.

er

es.

e.

d

0 4

t

on a Levell. Let the Floor behind him be bitcht minall Pebble : and be fure let that pare of vour where the Rack Stands be well Waihfoodd ail d have two Rings placed at each fide of his Stat, his Halter to run through; which must have a wooden Lagger at the bottom of it, to poife Horse, or to hinder him from entings in-ad of a fix'd Manger, I would have you have taker, or Drawer, made in the Wainkote parmy take in and out to cleanle at pleasure mixed via formay remedy that at your Malurey by allowing ben allowed the the confidence of the larger. ep pof Provender, you are to put in at a transport of the letter of your need not make it was largenist and the letter of advice you to make any Racky but inpof Provender, you are to put in at a time asmot lead thereof (according to the Italian shihaba) to ave yoth Horde his Haylind then bround memons be Liner; or elle you may with please and lowe Minds in the form of a The day which you may his Hay, and the Boards will brevent him from way is to m keufe of the Hogifford Bas gailfair Some possibly may object that this way of feeling him, may Spoil his Groft and that the blaving to the Holling his Crest, it rather frengthencit, and makes it firm, whereas, on the congrary to lift op his Head high to the Rack will make him wibytragged! but the way forementioned, he willifectly as telyes, which will be for his safe and fatisfaction. As to the quantity of his Hay , you are congue lichim in fuch Small Proportions, (thouthe ofteneys) mhad it may be eaten before his Preath can in the lent have tainted it. But the chief Reafor why I advile

advise you to this way is this, because the receive his Hay down upon the Ground, will help to che his Head from any Rheum or Dofe, which he may gotten by negligence and over-exercise, and in him by freezing to throw out all manner of warra wers that may annoy his Head. If your Stable allow, you may build feveral Partitions of Board and at the Head towards the Manger let them beat vanc'd to that height that one Horse may not or finell to another; and so divide the Whole into many equal Seands or Seguils as it will admit of lowing to each Room enough to turn about in, and down at pleasure. You may make one of your State close, which may ferre for your Groom to lie ma case of a March , Sickness, &c. and where he me burn Candle without the Horle's discerning of it. hind the Horses I would have a Range of Preffes mate with Reges in them to hang up Saddles, Bridles, His ing solearly, sec. as likewife Shelyes to place you Gurry quembs, Brushas, Dusting-cloatha, Oppuments, Wa-

rerajor any other Nocellaries upon. alle Now that you may not gumber your Stable with Out-Birms, I think it necessary to tell you that the best way is to make use of the Invention of Mr. Farme of Talmore in Oxford-Shire Which is done (according as it is described by the Ingenuous Dr. Plat, in his Natural History of Oxford-foire) the letting the "Our down from a Loft above, out of a Vefel lie the Hopper of a Mile whence they fall into a fquare . Pipe let into the wall, of about four Inches Diagonal 4 which comes down into a Capboard also set into the swall, but with its end to near the bettom that there sifiall never be above a Gallon, or other delireable A Quantity in the Cupboard at a time, which being A taken away and given to the Horfes, another Gallen presently succeeds; so that in the lower part of the Stable,

IN H

th th

h

D

a

where the Horses stand, there is not the licht from taken up for the whole proving of Ont; the licht Contrivance bath also this further Converted, that by this Motion the Ontare kept contity sweet (the taking away one Gallon moving whole their above,) which laid up any otherwise great quantities, grow frequently amply well-

Now I would have you have two mades the one for our spite, other for your splir Beam, and both let to your Range of Profes; the Partitions may earlie made over head, to separate your off from the Beam. Or if you like not this way, you may exter traite an Haytoft; or Chalates for your rows, which you fancy; but whatever you make color of pet the Flor overhead be fell a, that he but from above fall upon your Horfes. But if you have the convenience of a Rick yard, for that you keep our Hay abroad, it is the opinion of some knowing holemen, that to ruck it out of the Rick by little and little, as you have occasion to use it, makes it spend much better than it would otherwise do out of the lies Talles.

As to the rest of its Perquisites, a Dung yard, a lamp, or a Conduit, are necessary; and if you can have that convenience, some Pond or running River near hand. But be sure, never let the Front of your Stable be without Litter, that by frequent practice your Horse may learn to empty his Bladder when he is come from Airing, which will be both healthful for your

Horfe, and profitable for your Land.

Having thus laid down a Modell for a Stable, my next business is to tell the Groom his Duty! I mean not those which generally appertals to all Servants, such as and Obedience Parling, Parience, Diligence &C. but those more essentially belonging to this Office. First then he must love his Horse in the next degree

to his defen, and to endeavour by fair Illage to a quire a recipiocal kove from him again; and an end Obscience, which if he know how to positive his flow, he will the better be able to track it his flow, and both the one and the other, are to be obtained fair means, rather than by Pallion and Outrage! In those who are so irresimal chemselves, as not tole able to command their own! Balsions, are not fir to undertake, the reclaiming of an Horse, (who by a ture is an impaired Creature) from his.

one t

des

mth

fram gene

syes

WILE

flam

coff

3

ing Th

H PP

He must then put in practice that Patiences which I would have him Mafter of at all times, and by that and fair means he shall arrain his End : For pothing is more madable than an Herfer if you make use of Kindness to win him, Next, Nearness is requisite in Groom, to keep his Stable clean fwept and in order; his Saddles, Houling cleat ha Stroops, Leat bers, and Ginh, cleans, and above all his Horficlean dreff dand rubbid Diligence in the last place is requisite both in a daily practice of his Duty, and in observing any the Smallest Alteration whether defual or actidemal, either in his Countenance, as Symptoms of Sickness, or in his Limbs and Date, as Lameness, or in his Appetite, as for saking his Meat, and immediately upon any fuch Discovery to leek out for Remedy. This is the falstance of the Groom's Duty in general, and which! shall treat of more as large as Occasion shall offerit Hote may learn to empty his Bindder when he is calla

In the mean time fince Bartholomen-tide is now come, and the pride and shrength of the Grass nipp'd by the severe Frosts, and cold Dews which accompany this Scalen, so that the Nourishment thereof suppeth into raw Soudities, and the Coldness of the Night (which is an Enemy to the Horse) a bates as much Flesh and Lust as he getteth in the Day, we will now take him up from Grass whilst his Coat lies smooth and sleck.

Having brought him home, let your Groom fo Night fet him up in some secure and spacious Hule, where he may evacuate his Body, and so be lought to warmer keeping by Degrees; the next by table him. But tho it be held as a general Rule mongst the generality of Grooms, not to cloath or faling, I can find no Reason but Custom to perswade. me to it; But it being little conducive either to the dvantage or prejudice of the Horse, I shall leave it mtheir own Fancies: But as to the giving of Wheatfrom, to take up his Belly, (a custom us'd by Grooms merally at the Horse's first Housing,) I am utterly werle from it. For the Nature of a Horse being and dry, if he should feed on Straw, which is so likewife, it would fraighten his Guts, and cause an Infammation of the Liver, and by that means diftemper the Blood; and besides it would make his Body so offive, that it would cause a Retention of Nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty; wherea fall Feeding would expell the Excrements, accordine to the true Intention and Inclination of Nature. Therefore let moderate Airing, warm Cloathing, good old Hay, and old Corn, supply the place of Wheat-ftraw.

the town distribution of the state of the st

To begin then methodically, that your Groom may not be to feek in any part of his Duty, I shall acquaint him, that his first business is, after he hath brought his Horse into the Stable, in the morning to water him, and then to rub over his Body with a bard Wisp a little moisten'd, and then with a woollen cloath; then to cleanse his Sheath with his wet hand from all the Dust it had contracted during his Running, and to wash his Yard either with White-wine, or Water. Then he may trim him according to the manner that other Horses are trimm'd, except the inside of his

ajo

be c

Feet

fan

vill

E

to s

kt

Va

the

and

OT

Fo cle

Ears, which (though some still continue that it shion) ought not to be meddled with, for fear of mar

ing him catch cold.

When this is done, let him have him to the Fo. rier, and there get a Sett of Shoos answerable b the shape of his Foot, and not to pare his Foot that it may fit his Shoo, as too many Farriers do, not only in Brabant and Flanders, but here likewife, Be fure let his Feet be well open'd betwixt the Quarters and the Thrush, to prevent Hoof-binding; and let them be open'd straight, and not fide-ways, for by that means in two or three Shooings, his Heels (which are the strength of his Feet) will be cut quite away. Pare his Foot as hollow as you can, and then the Shoo will not press upon it. The Shoo must come near to the Heel, yet not be let fo close as to bruise it; nor yet so open as to catib in his Shoos, if at any time he happen to over-reach, and so hazard the pulling them off, the breaking of his Hoof, or the bruifing of his Hell. The Webbs of the Shoos must be neither too broad, nor too narrow, but of a middle fize, about the breadth of an inch, with flop'd Spunges, and even with his Foot; for though it would be for the advantage of the Travelling Horse's Heel, to have the Shoo fit a little wider than the Hoof, on both fides, that the Shoo might bear his Weight, and not his Foot touch the ground; yet the Hunter being often forc'd to gallop on rotten fpungy Earth, to have them larger would hazard Laming, and pulling off his Shoos, as hath been shown before.

There is an Old Proverb, Before behind, and Behind before; that is, in the Fore-feet the Veins lie behind, and in the Hinder-feet they lie before. Therefore let the Farrier take care that he prick him

mak

Fa.

ole m

that not

wife

the

ding;

his

II be

VOD

The

fet

atth

Der-

the

eel.

00

2-

nd or

to

is

him not, but leave a space at the Heel of the Forefet, and a space between the Nails at the Toc. When your Shoo is set on according to this Diretion, you will find a great deal of his Hoof lest to be cut off at his Toc. When that is cut off, and his feet smooth'd with a File, you will find him to fand so firm, and his Feet will be so strong, that he will tread as boldly on Stones as on Carpet-ground.

By that time he is shood, I presume 'twill be time to water him, therefore rake him to the River, and it him, after he has drank, stand some time in the Four, which will close up the boles (according to the opinion of some Horsemen) which the driving of the Nails made. Then have him gently home. and having ty'd him up to the Rack, rub him all over Body and Legs with dry Straw; then stop his feet with Cow-dung, sift him a Quarter of a Peck of clean old Oats, and give them to him; then litter him, and leave him a sufficient Quantity of old Hay to serve him all Night, and so leave him till the next Morning.

under a set talk underseed and seed wie, vou interest thou feel his Asset last and seed and seed with their

drie". State of the contribution and the state of the state of the contribution of the

Sich sil il are protisillo a la lice haid

abo of the state of the control of the first

you are also

you and len

Th

get mit all

25

Li

di

RNA

CA

CHAP. IV.

How to order the Hunter for the first Fortnight.

I prefume by this your Horse will have evacuated all his Grass, and his Shoes will be so well fetled to his Feet, that he may be fit to be rid abread to Air without danger of surbating. Therefore is now necessary that I begin in a more particular manner to direct our unexperienc'd Groom how he ought to proceed to order his Horse according to Art.

First then you are to visit your Horse early in the Morning, to wit, by Five a Clock if in Summer, or Six, if in Winter, and having put up his Little under his Stall, and made clean your Stable, you shall then feel his Ribs, his Chaule and his Flank, for those are the cheif signes by which you must learn to judge of the good, or evil state of your Horses body, as

shall now shew you.

Lay your Hands on the lower part of his forribs, near the Flank, and if you feel his Fat to be exceeding soft and tender, and to yield as it were meder your hand, than you may be confident it is most sound, and that the least violent Labour, or Travail will dissolve it: which being dissolved, e're it be hardned by good Dyet, if it be not then remov'd by scouring, the Fat or grease belonging to the outward parts of the Body will fall down into his Heels, and

because gowtiness and swelling. I need not trouble won with the outward figns of this Distemper, they re evident to the Eve : but tho every Groom can morm you when a Horse is said to have the greafe allen into his Heels, yet may be he cannot instruct ou in the cause why Travail disperseth it for a time, and when the Horse is cold it returns with more vioknce than before. The reason therefore is this: The Greafe which by indifcreet Exercise, and negligence in keeping is melted and fallen into his Legs, fanding Still in the Stable cools and congeals, and fo wmes it felf with other ill Humours, which flow to the affected part, fo that they stop the natural Circulanon of the Blood, and cause inflamations, and swellings saforefaid: but Travail producing warmth in his Limbs thaws as it were the congeal'd Humours, and disperses them throughout the Body in general; till Reft gives them opportunity to unite and fettle again. Now tho most Grooms are of opinion that this Distemper is not to be prevented by care or caution, that when it has once feaz'd a horse it remains incureable; yet they are mistaken in both, for by Art it may be prevented, and by Art cured: altho the cure is so difficult to be wrought, that a Groom cannot be too careful to prevent it.

oad

tis

an-

ght

10

er

ill se

As for the nward Grease which is in his Stomack, Bag, and Guts, if when once melted it be not remov'd by Art, Medicine and good I ceping, it purisses, and breeds those mortal Diseases, which inevitably destroy the Horse, tho it be half a year, or three quarters of a year after. And this is generally the source of most Feavers, Surfeits, Consumptions, &c. and such other Distempers which carry offinshite numbers of horses, for want of the Farriers knowledge in the first Causes of the Distemper; which to prevent you shall follow the ensuing Directions.

After by feeling on his Ribs you have for his Fat foft and unfound, you shall feele his Chan and if you find any flesty substance, or great round Kirnells or Knots, you may be affured. that, as his outward Fat is unfound, fo inwardly he is full of glut, and purlive, by means of gross and tough Hemours cleaving to the hollow places of the Lungi flopping fo his Windpipe that his Wind cannot find free passage, nor his Body be capable of much La-Therefore the chief end and Intention of Art is by good found food to enfeame and barden his Fat, and by moderate Exercise, warm cloath. ing, and gentle Phisick to cleanse away his inward Glut, that his Wind, and other parts being freed from all grossness, his courage and activity in any labour or fervice may appear to be more than redoubled.

The same Observations you must make from his Flank, which you will find alwaies to correspond, with the Ribs and Chaule, for till he is drawn clean it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enfeam'd, you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three Observations of the Ribs, Flank, and Chaps, you may, at any time passan indifferent Judgment of your Horses being in a good

B

condition or a bad.

When you have made these Remarks, you shall sift your Horse a handful or two (and no more) of good old sound Oates, and give them to him, to preserve his Stomack from cold Humours that might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better. When he hath eaten them, pull off his Coller, and rub his Head, Face, Ears, and Nape of the Neck with a clean Rubbing Cloth made of Hemp, for 'tis soveraign for the Head, and dissolve hall gross and sithy Humours. Then

take a small Snaffle, and wash it in fair water, and me it on his head, drawing the Reins through the headstall, to prevent his slipping it over his head, and so tye him up to the Rack, and dress him

thus :

II of

Hn.

ung: find

Laof

des

th.

ed ed

oy in

5

1

First in your Right hand take a Curry Comb fuitable to your Horses skin, (as if your horses coat be hort and smooth, then must the Curry-Comb be hunt, but if long and rough, then must the Teeth be long and and sharp, standing with your Face opwhile to the Horses, hold the Left cheek of the Headfall in your Left-hand, and Curry him with a good hard hand from the Root of his Ears, all a long his Neck to his Shoulders: then go over all his Body with a more moderate hand, then Curry his Buttocks down to the hinder Cambrell with an hard hand again: then change your hand, and laying your Right Arm over his Back, joyn your right fide to his left, and to Curry him gently from the top of his Withers, to the lower part of his Soulder, ever now and then fetching your stroke over the left side of his breast, and so Curry him down to Knee, but no further: Then Curry him all under his Belly, near his Fore-bowels, and in a word all over very well, his Legs under the Knees and Cambrels only excepted. And as you dress'd the left fide, lo must you the right likewise.

Now by the way take notice, whether your Horse keeps a riggling up and down, biting the Rack-staves, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his Leg to strike at you, when you are Currying him: if he do 'tis an apparent sign of his displeasure by reason of the sharpness of the Comb, and therefore you must sile the Teeth thereof more blunt: but if you perceive that he plays these, or such like Tricks through Wantonness and

the

the Pleasure he takes in the Friction, then you had ever now and then correct him with your Whip gently for his Waggishness.

that

WETE TO FO

NOT

milli

tha

tha

10

pi

III G

This Currying is only to raise the Dust; and there. fore after you have thus curried him, you must take either a Horse-tail (nail'd to an Handle) or a clean dusting-Cloath of Cotten, and with it strike off the loose Dust rais'd by your Curry-comb. Then dres him all over with the French-Brush, both Head, Bo. dy, and Legs to the very Fet-locks, observing always to cleanfe the Brush from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the Hair, by rubbing it on the curry-Then dust him the second time. Then with your Hand wet in water rub his body all over, and as near as you can leave no loofe bairs behind you; and with your wet hands pick and cleanfe his Eys, Ears, No. firils, Sheath, Cods, and Tuel, and fo rub him till he be as dry as at first. Then take an Hair-patch, and rub his Body all over, but especially his Fore-bowels under his Belly, his Flank, and between his hinder Thighs. Lastly, wipe him over with a fine white linnen Rub ber.

When you have thus drest him, take a large Saddle-cloath (made on purpose,) that may reach down to the Spurring-place, and lap it about his Body; then clap on his Saddle, and throw a cloth over him for fear of catching cold. Then take two Ropes of Straw twisted extream hard together, and with them rub and chase his Legs from the Knees and Cambrels downwards to the Ground, picking his Fetlock-joynts with your hands from Dust, Filth, and Scabs. Then take another Hair-patch kept on purpose for his Legs, (for you must have two) and with itrub and dress his Legs also.

Now by the way let me give you this necessary

tion, be fure whilst you are dressing your Horse thin not stand naked, his Body being expos'd to be penetration of the Air, whilst you are telling a lawry flory to some Comrades, that accidentally one into the Stable, as I have seen some Grooms, has would stand losling over their Horses, when they were uncloath'd, and trisse away their time by listning in some idle Discourse; but when you have stripp'd imfall to your Business roundly, without any intermission till you have sadded him, and thrown his cosh over him.

And the reason why I advise you to throw a Cloth over him, whilst you are dressing his Legs is this; that although tis a general Rule amongst Grooms, that an Horse cannot take cold whilst he is dressing, yet is that Saying to be understood only of his Body, not of his Legs; for the rubbing of his Legs will

not prevent catching cold in his Body.

When this is done, you shall with an Iron Picker pick his Feet clean, (that the stopping of his Feet may not be a means of his taking up Stones in them,) comb down his Main and Tail with a wet Main-comb, then spirt some Beer into his Mouth, and so draw him

out of the Stable.

Whip

here.

take

lean

the

refs

Bo.

al-

om

ry-

ith

25

be

6-

e

is

r

Being mounted, rake or walk him to some Running River, or fresh clear Spring, distant a Mile or two from your Stable, (which will refine his Month which he may have lost, during his Summers Running, and will likewise settle his Body upon his Rake,) and there let him drink about half his draught at first, to prevent raw Crudities arising in his Stomach. After he hath drunk bring him calmly out of the Water, and so ride him gently for a while; for nothing is more unbeseeming a Horseman, than to thrust his Horse into a swift Gallep, as soon as he comes out of the Water, for these three Causes. First, it is not only

only bazards the breaking of his Wind, but also and redly endanges the incording, or bursting of him a condity, it begees in him an ill habit of running as soon as he hath done drinking. Lastly, the forming hight he hath of such violent Exercise, makes aim of tentimes result to quench his Thirst: and therefore (all said) first walk him a little way, and then put him are a gentle Gallop for 3 or 6 score, then give him wind; and after he hath been rak'd a pretty space, then her him the Water again, and let him drink what he pleases, and then gallop him again; and thus do the will drink no more, but be sure to observe always that you gallop him not so much as either to chase, or swear him.

Now by the way observe, that in his galloping fin water, (after the first weeks enseming,) if sometime you give him a watering Course sharply, of twelve or twenty score, (as you find your Horse,) it will quiet his spirits, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to mannage his Limbs more nimbly, and to

fretch forth his Body largely.

When your Horse hath done drinking, then rake him to the Top of the next Hill, (if there be any near your Watring-place, for there in the morning the Air is purest, or else to some such place, as he may gain best advantage both of Sun and Air, and there air him a foot-pace an hour, or so long as you in your discretion) shall think sufficient for the state of his Body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your Horses Airing, you will easily perceive several marks of your Horses satisfation, and the pleasure which he takes in this Exercise. For he will gape, yawn, and as it were shrug his Body. If he offer to stand still, to dung, or stale, which his Airing will provoke, be sure give him leave, as likewise to stare about, neigh, or listen after any noise.

Now

Citi

di

110

C

Abbill

f fore

im of

e(as I

m into

wind:

1 Chew

at he

o till

Ways

10 4

efter

Mes

10.9

ken

ind

to

ke iy ig ne d n f

Now Airing brings feveral Advantages to the First, it purifies the Blood, (if the Air be and pure,) it purges the Body from many grofs difficating Humors, and fo hardens and enfeams Horles Fat, that it is not near fo liable to be difby ordinary Exercise. Secondly, it teaches him on to let his Wind rake equally and keep time with mother Attions or Motions of his Body. Thirdly, harpens the Appetite, and provokes the Stomach, mich is of great advantage both to Hunters and Collegers, who are apt to loofe their Stomach through intels or want of Exercise): for the sharpness of the fir will drive the Horses natural Heat from the extenor to the interior parts, which Heat by furthering Concollion creates an Appetite. Lastly, it increases Luft and Courage in him, provided he not too early ar'd.

But whereas Mr. Markam, in his Way to get wealth, pag. 44. directs, if your Horse be very fat to air him before Sun rife, and after Sun-fet; and that the Author of the Gentleman's Jockey, 8°. pag. 14. fays, that nothing is more wholfome than early and late Airings; I think the contrary may be made out from Experience. For in this Art, all things that any ways hinder the frength and vigor of Nature, are to be avoided; now, that extreamity of Cold, and being out early and late do fo, is evidently feen by Horses that run abroad all Winter, which however hardily bred, and kept with the best care and Fodder, yet cannot by any means be advanc'd to fo good cafe in Winter as an indifferent Pasture will raise them to in Summer. And this holding true of the Nocturnal Colds, must needs be verified in some proportionate measure of the Morning and Evening Dews, and that piercing Cold which is observed to be more intense at the opening and close of the Day, than any part

part of the Night. Besides that, the Dews and mil-Rimes do as much Injury to a Horse, as the sharped Colds or Frosts: since (as I have found by experience) a Horse any ways inclinable to Catarrhs, Rhomes, or any other cold Distempers, is apt to have the Hamors augmented, and the disease most sensitive increase

by these early and late Airings.

But if he be not had forth to aire till the same be risen, (as you must cast to have him dress'd, and ready to lead forth against that time) his spirits will be chear'd and comforted by that universal Comforms of all living Creatures; and indeed all Horses naturally desire to enjoy the Sun's warmth, as you may observe by those Horses which lie out all Night, who as soon at the Sun is risen, will repair to those places where they may have the most benefit of his Beams, and by them be in part reliev'd from the coldness of the foregoing Night. And besides the benefit of the Sun, the Air will be so mild and temperate, as it will rather invigorate than prey upon his spirits, and more increase his Strength than impair it

Neither, tho we disallow of Early and Late airings, need we be at a loss to bring down our Horses fat, and from being pursive, and too high in Flesh, to reduce him to cleanness, and a more moderate state of Bodv: For if you do but observe this one Rule of keeping a fat Horse so much longer out at a time both Morning and Evening, you will undoubtedly obtain your end by fuch long Airing, joyn'd with true found Heats, which you may expect indeed, but will never find from those that are shorter, how early and late foever: for this Method joyn'd with good feeding is the best Prescription can be given in this case, and tis from the length of your Airings only, that you must hope to bring your Horse to a perfect Wind, and true Courage. And therefore a Horse that is high in Flesh, is a fitter subject to work on, than that is low, because he is better able to endure ther, whereas the other must of necessity be so formed in training, to improve his Strength and the that he is in danger (without he be under the of a very Skilful keeper) of proving thick wind-

of for want of true Exercise in Training.

and

rter

raj-

TYC

n as

hey

em

ing

ate 11\$

s,

When you are returned from Airing, and are dissounted, lead your Horse on the Straw, which (as I told you before) should always lye before the stable door; and there by Whistling and stirring upthe Litter under his Belly will provoke him to stale, which a little practice will bring him to, and is advantagious for the Horses Health, and the keeping of your Stable clean; Then lead him into his stant (which ought likewise to be well littered) and having ty'd up his head to the empty Rack, take off his Saddle, rubb his Body and Leggs all over with the French-brush, then with the Hair-patch, and last of all with the Woollen sloath.

Then you shall cloath him with a Limen cloath next to his Body, and over that a Canvas cloath, and both made so fit as to cover his Breast and to come pretty low down to his Legs, which is the Turkish way of Cloathing, who are the most curious People (sales the Duke of Newcastle) in keeping their Horses, and esteem them the most of any Nation. Over the forementioned put a Body-cloath of six, or eight Straps, which is better than a Sircingle and Pad stuft with wisps, because this keeps his Belly in Shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these Cloathes will be sufficient for him at his first Stabling, because being inur'd to the cool Air he will not be so apt to take cold, the weather likewise at that season being indifferently wasni, but when sharp weather approaches, and that you find his Hair rise about his oneward parts that are

uncloathed, as Neck, Gaforins, &c, then add ther Cloath, which ought to be of Woolen, and for ny Horse bred under this Climate, and kept onlyle ordinary Hunting, this is cloathing fufficient,

Now the design of cloathings is only by their heb joyn'd to the warmth of the Stable, and the Litte (which must alwaies lye under the Horse) to keep his Body in such a moderate Natural Heat, as hall be sufficient to assist Nature, that skilful Physitian in expelling her Enemies, by dissolving those re and gross Humours which are subject to amon the Horse, and which would very much prejudice him if they were not removed; which warm cloathing does in a great measure by dispersing them into the outward paris, and expelling them by sweating as he fleeps and Ives down, which will be a meanes to purge his Body, and keep it clean from glue, and

is C

alser.

fac

on t

da

B

700

a fig

if b

kno

dim

op

CNA

tip

ter

an

Sp

III to

P

redundant Humours.

But yet (as in all things the golden mean is best) there is a meane to be observed too here : for as too few Cloathes will not affift Nature Jufficiently in the expulsion of her Enemies, do too many will force her too much, and cause weakness in your Horse by too violent swearings. Therefore you must have a care of following the Example of some ignorant Grooms, who because they have acquired a falle Reputation by living in some Noblemans or Gentlemans Service, that are noted Sportsmen, think they are able to give Laws to all their Fraternity, and therefore without any reason heap Multiplicity of Cloaths on the Horse as if they meant to bury him in Woolen. You must know, that both the temperature of the Weather and the State of his Body are to be observed; and that all Horses are not to be cloathed alike. Your fine-Skined Horses, as the Barb, Turk, Spanish horse &c. require more clothes then our English common Hor-

that are bred in a colder climate, and have avally thicker skin's, and a longer Coat. But you may not erre I have told you already you are to clearh your Horse, and therefore only add this one General Rule, That a Coat shews want of Cloaths, and a Smooth Cloathing Sufficient : ever observing, that by Countenance, his Dung, and other outward Chaders (which I shall by and by give you more at. lare) you perceive your Horse to to be in health, yet notwithstanding your Horses Coat still feet, you must add more cloathes till it lye ; as on the other hand if it will live withe the affiltof a single Linnen Cloath it is sufficient.

help arter keep thail tian the him the But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to sweat in the Night, 'tis align that he is over-fed, and wants exercise: but if he sweat at his first coming from Grass, you must show that there is cause rather to encrease, than diminish the Cloathes I have alloted at his first Housing; for it proceeds from the foul humours which oppress Nature, and when by exercise they are evacuated, Nature will cease working, and he will con tione in a temperate state of Body all the year af-

ter.

to

od

0

e

t

When he is cloath'd up, pick his Feet cleane with an Iron Picker; and wash his Hoofs clean with a Spung dipt in fair water, and then dry them with Straw or a Linnen cloath, and if there be occasion and that you find your Horses Legs durry, you may bathe them likewise, only you must be fure to rub them dry before you go out of your Stable, then leave him on his Snaffle for an hour, or more; which will affift his Appetite.

When an Four is expired. you shall come to him again, and having tuck'd an haidful of Hay, and dusted it, you shall let your Horse sease it out of your hand till he hath eaten it; then pull off his Bride and having rub'd his Head and Neck clean, with the Hempen-cloth, as before, pull his Eares, and so his Nostrils to make him snore, which will help to bring away the moist Humours which oppress his Brain, and then put on his Coller, and give him a Quarter of Oats clean drest, in a Sive, having sint made his Locker, or Manger clean with a Wispe of Straw, and a Coth.

Whilst he is eating his Corn, you shall sweep out your Stable, and see that all things are neat about him, and turning up his Cloaths, you shall rub his Fillets, Buttocks, and Gascoins over with the bairpatch, and after that with a Woolen-cloth; then spread a clean Flannel Fillet-cloth over his Fillets and Buttocks (which will make his Coat lye smooth) and turn down his Housing-cloaths upon it. Then anoint his Hoofs round from the Cronet to the Toe

with this Ointment, viz.

Take Four Ounces of Venice Turpentine, Three Ounces of Bees wax, Two Ounces of the best Rossin, One pound of Dogs-grease, Halt a Pint of Train Oyle, Melt all these Ingredients (except the Turpentine) together, being melted remove them from the Fire, and then put in the Turpentine, and keep it stirring, till all be well incorporated, then put in a Gally pot, and when it is cold cover it close from dust, and reserve it for use.

After this pick his Feet with an Iron Picker, and for them with Cow-dung; and by this time your Horse (if he be not a very flow Feeder) will have earn his Oates, which if you find he does with a good Stomack, sift him another Quart, and throw them mi

d d

201

DEO DOE

tha

tra

dr

00

10

G

fal

h

fyour

With

lp to

bis

im a

first

/ifpe

out

THOO

his

air-

ead

M-

and

Toe

ee o-

in

r.

n

P

thim by little and little, whilft he eats with an merite; but if he fumbles with his Corn, then give no more at that time.

And this I think a better Direction than to pre-Tibe a fet quantity of Provender, as all Authors I have met with have done. For without doubt no certain countity of Meat can be allotted for all forts of Horles. more than for all forts of Men; and therefore proportion the quantity to the Horses Appetite: be fure at all times give him his full feeding, for that will keep his Body in better state and temper, and icrease his strength and vigor. Whereas on the conmary, to keep your Horse always sharp-set, is the ready way to procure a Surfeit, if at any time he can come at his fill of Provender; according to the common Proverb, Two hungry Meales make the third a Glutton. But the you perceive he gather Flesh too fall upon fuch home-feeding; yet be fure not to fine him for it, but only encrease his Labour, and that will affift both his Strength and Wind,

When these things are done, you shall dust a pretty quantity of Hay, and throw it down to him on his Litter, after you have taken it up under him; and then shutting up the Windows and Stable door, leave him till One a Clock in the Afternoon; at which time you shall come to him, and having rubb'd over his shead, Neck, Fillets, Buttocks, and Legs, as before, with the Hair-patch and Woollen-cloath, you shall feed him as before. and then leave him till the time of his Evening watring, (which should be about three of the clock in uinter, and four in Summer;) and then having put back his soul Litter, and swept away that and his Dung, you shall dress and saddle him as before, and mounting him you shall rake him to the water, and after

HS.

im.

ats

1

let.

110

ari Id

ka

feet

th:

CX

th

ba

O

to

7

after drinking and galloping you shall air him along by the River side, till you think it time to go home; then order him in all points, as to rubbing, seeding, stopping his Feet, &c. as you did in the morning; and having fed him at six a clock, be sure feed him again about Nine; and having litter'd him well, and thrown him Hay enough to serve him for all Night, you shall leave him till the next Morning. And as you have spent this day, so you must order him in all respects for a forenight together, and by that time his Fiesh will be so harden'd, and his Wind so improv'd; his Month will be so quicken'd, and his Gallop brought to so good a stroke, that he will be sit to be put to moderate Hunting.

Now during this Fortnights keeping you are to make several Observations, as to the Nature and Dif position of your Horse, the temper of his Body, the course of his Digestion, &c. and order him accordingly. As first, if he be of a churlish Disposition, you must reclaim him by Severity; if of a loving temper, you must win him by Kindness. Secondly, you must observe whether he be a foul Feeder, or of a nice Stomach; if he be quick at his Meat, and retain a good Stomach, then four times of full Feeding, in a Day and a Nights space, is sufficient; but if he be a flender Feeder , and flow at his Meat, then you must give but a little at once, and often, as about every two hours, for fresh Meat will draw on his Appetite; and you must always leave a little Meat in his Locker for him to eat at his own leifure betwixt the times of his Feeding; and when at any time you find any left, you shall sweep it away, and give him fresh, and . expose that to the Sun and Air, which will prevent mustiness and reduce it to its first sweetness, before it was blown upon. Now

then Stop.

and

gain

OWI

hall

for

will

ate

to

if.

he r-

n,

ng ly,

a

a

2

ı

V

Now as to the manner of Feeding, you may sharpen in Stomach by change of Meat, as giving one Meat due Oats, another Oats and split-Beans, and (when we have brought him to eat Bread) you may give him another meal of Bread, always observing to give him ofteness that which he likes best; or if you hease you may give him both Corn and Bread at the lime time, provided you give him that last which he as best, and which has the best Digestion.

Tis observ'd of some Horses, that they are of so in a Constitution, that without they may drink at every bit they cannot eat, and those Horses usually early no Belly; in this case therefore you must let a law of Water stand continually before them, or at hast offer them Water at Noon, besides what they such abroad at their ordinary times.

Next you are to observe the nature of his Digestion, that is, whether he retains his Food long, which is the sign of a bad Digestion; or whether Nature does capel the Dung more frequently; which if he do, and that his Dung be loose and bright, tis a sign of a good babit of Body; but if he dung hard, and seldom, then on the contrary tis a sign of a dry Body; and therefore to remedy this, you shall once in a day give him a handful or two of Oats, well washed in good strong. Me, for this will loosen his Body, and keep it moist, and you will sind it also good for his Wind, notwithstand-the opinion of some to the contrary.

CHAP V.

いた

Of the Second Fortnights Diet, and of his first Hunting, and what Chases are most proper to Train him.

BY that time you have from this Fortnight, according to the foregoing Rules, your Horse will be in a pretty good state of Body; for the gross Humers will be dry'd in his Body, and his Flesh will begin to be harden'd, which you will perceive (as I told you at first) by his Chaul, his short Ribs, and his Flank; for the Kernels under his Chaps will not feel so gross at first they did, his slesh on his short Ribs will not feel so foft and loose, nor the thin part of his Flank so thick as at his first housing; so that now you may without hazard adventure to hum him moderately.

But before I proceed, I think it necessary to clear one point, which I have heard much discuss d amongst Horsemen, which is, What fort of Chase's most proper for the training of a young Horse? some being of one Opinion, some of another. For some would have a Horse, which is design d either for a Buck-hunter or Fox-hunter, us'd from the beginning to the Chase which they are design'd for. Others think those Chases too violent for a young Horse, and therefore chuse to train him after Harriers; and of this Opinion I must own my self to be, since Experience has sully shewn me the Advantages of the one, and the Inconvenience

miences of the other. Now to prove this Affertion, was take a slight-view of the several Chases which are commonly used by our Nobility and Gentry, where the Horse is made a Companion and Member of the Spore, and they are these; the Stag, Buck, Hind,

Fox, Otter, and Hare.

l of

ases

ord-

be

Hors

to

YOU

ık;

as

cel

ick

ut

ir

ge

As for the three first here mention'd, as there is not much difference in the hunting of them; fo the Inconveniences from each Chase are in a manner the same For which foever you hunt, tis either in Covert, or at force. Now if Deer be hunted in a Park, they mally chuse the most woody parts of it, as a Refuge from the pursuits of their Enemies, which is both moleafant to the Rider, and troublesome to the Horse. to follow the Dogs thro the thick Bulbes; and belides. shally the Ground in Parks is full of Mole-banks. Trenches, &c. which is dangerous for a young Horse to gallop on, till he has attain'd to some perfection in his Stroke. But if they be turn'd out of the Park, and behunted at force, you will find, that as foon as you have unharbour'd or rous'd them, they will immedistely make out end ways before the Hounds five or fix. may fometimes ten Miles, they following in full Cry foswiftly, that a Horse must be compell'd to run up and down hill without any intermission; leaping Hedg, Ditch, and Dale, nay often croffing Rivers, to the great danger of the Rider, as well as of the Horfe. So that in my opinion tis altogether improper to put a young Horse to such violent labour at the first, till by practice and degrees he hath been made acquainted with hard fervice.

Now besides the swifiness and violence of this Chase, and the danger of cracking his Wind; and bursting his Belly; besides the straining of his Limbs by such desperate Riding, and the creating in a young Horse a loathsomness to his Labour, by undergoing

fuch

fuch violent and nousnal service; the feafers for the Chases begining about Midfummer, and ending about Moly-Rocal tide, which is that part of the year is which the Sun's heat is excessive, and so seepsches the Earth, that a violent Chase would hazard the molting his Grease, and the weight of the Rider, by reason of the hardness of the Ground, would occasion Foundaring, Splents, and Windgalls, insomuch that in short time the Horse would prove altogether refeless.

Gere

YET

pre

But here I cannot but defire to be rightly underflood, fince tho I object against these Chases as improper for young Horses, yet I do not mean that Horses should be excluded this Recreation; but I would have those which are imploy'd herein, to be Horses of flay'd years, and by long practice and experience have been rightly train'd to Hunting. "Young Horses (as the Duke of New castle says) being as subject to Difeates as young Children, and therefore he advises any man that would buy a Horse for use in his ordinary occasions, as for fourneys, Hawking or Huming, never to buy a Horse untill the Mark be out of bu Mouth, and if he be found of Wind, Limb, and Sight, 'he will last you Eight or Nine years with good keeping, and never fail you; and therefore {purfues he I am always ready to buy for fuch purpofes an old Nag, of some Humsman, or Falconer, that is found, and that is the uleful Nag, for he gallops on all Grounds, leaps over Hedges and Ditches; and this will not fail you in your Journey, nor any where, and is the only Nag of use for Pleasure or Journey Thus far the Duke. And if it may be permitted to add to his Advice, I would have them Brait-bed ed clean-timbred Nags, fuch as may be light, nimble, in ! of middle stature, for those Horses are not near to tubject to Lamness as those of bulk and Arength,

n of

time

der-

ro.

fes

ve

of

ve o s horeth, the causes whereof have been already de-

The next Chase propos'd was that of the Fox, hich although it be a Recreation much in use, and highly applauded by the generality of the Nobility and Gentry; yet with submission to their judgment I never could find that pleasure in it which has been represented to me by some of its Admirers: and I am fire it is inconvenient for the training of a young Horse, ince it is swift without respite, and of long continuance, both which, as I have already shew'd, are difafful to him; but the greatest Inconvenience that happens to a Horse in this Chase is this; that when For is unkennel'd, he seldom or never betakes himof to a champion Countrey, but remains in the trongest Coverts, and in the thickest Woods; so that altorfe can but feldom enjoy the pleasure of accompamying the Hounds, without hazarding being fubb'd, or other as dangerom Accidents. The fittest Horses for this Chase are Horses of great strength and ability, fince this Chase begins at Christman, which is the worft time of Riding, and ends at our Lady-day, when the Ground is best for it.

The next Chase to be spoken of is the Otters, which although it may seem delightful to some, yet I cannot by any means think it convenient for a Horse: for he that will truly pursue this Amphibious sport, must aften swim his Horse to the equal hazard both of the Rider and the Horse.

But to conclude with the last, and the best of Chases, and that is the Hare. It is in my opinion the most pleasant and delightful Chase of any whatsoever, and the most beneficial for training a young Horse. It

DA

is fwift, and of some indurance, like that of the Fax, but far more pleasant to the Horse, because Horse commonly run the Champion Country; and the some not being so hot as the Foxes, the Dogs are officer at default, and by that means the Horse has many Sobbs, whereby he recovers Wind, and regains new Strength. This Chase begins at Michaelmass, and lasts till the End of February.

Now the best Dogs, to bring your Horse to perfection of Wind and Speed, are your fleet Northern Hounds; for they, by means of their hard-running, will draw him up to that extraordinary speed, that he will not have time to loiter, and by continual practice will be so inur'd and habituated to the violence of their Speed, that in a short time he will be able to ride on all forts of Ground, and be at such command upon the hand, that he will strike at what rate you please, and three-quarters speed will be less trouble-some to him than a Canterbury-gallop.

I have often thought this one of the Reasons why your Northern Breeders for the generality excel those of the South; since certainly the speed of their Hounds contributes much to the Excellence of their Horses, and makes them endure a four mile Course without Sobbs; which some Horsemen call Whole-Running; but of this more in another place.

you shall order him on his days of as to his Dressing, hours of Feedin aring, &c. as in the first Fortnight afore direction; only since his Labour is now to be increased, you must endeavour to increase his Strength and Courage likewise; and this will be effected by adding to his Oats a third part

of

of :

th

it 1

it l Br

OT

Fex.

Hares

frat

nany

new

and

PETH

y,

3

ce

to

ų

.

ofclean old Beans spelsed on a Mill, and as an overties to allow him Bread made after this manner.

of Wheat, and grind them together, and fift the meal throw a Meal-fieve of an indifferent finencis, and knead it with warm water and good flore of Barm, and let it lie an hour or more to swell, for by that means the Bread will be the lighter, and have the easier and quicker Digestion; after which being with a Brake or any other way exceedingly well-kneaded, make it up into great Houshold Peck-loaves, which will be a means to avoid Crust, and prevent its drying too soon; bake them thoroughly, and let them stand a good while in the Oven to soke, then draw them, and turning the bottoms upwards let them stand to cool.

When your Bread is a day old you may venture to feed your Horse with it, having first chipt away the Crust; and sometimes giving him Bread, sometimes Outs, and now and then Outs and spelted Beans, according as you find his stomach; you need not fear but such Feeding will bring him into as good condition

36 you need defire for Ordinary Hunting.

When your Bread is prepar'd, and you first Fortnight expir'd, you must then pitch upon a Day for his first going abroad after the Dogs, and the Day before you hant you must always order him after this manner. In the morning proceed in your usual method as before, only observe that day to give him no Beans, because they are hard of digestion, but give most of Bread if you can draw him on to eat it, because it is more nourishing than Oats; and after your Evening Watering, which ought to be somewhat earlier than at other times, give him onely a little Hay out of your hand, and no

more till the next day that he returns from Humin; and to prevent his eating his Litter, or any thing elebut what you give him, you shall instead of a Muzzle put on a Cavezone joyn'd to a headstall of a Bridle, being lin'd with double Leather for sear of burning him, and tying it so straight as to hinder his Eating; and this will prevent Sickness in your Horse, which is incident to some Horses when their Muzzle is set on, notwithstanding the invention of the Lattice-window, now adays so much in use; but this way your Horses Nostrils are fully at liberty, and he will never prove sick. But as to his Corn, give him his meals, both after his Watering, and at nine a clock, at which time besure to litter him very well, that he may the better take his Rest, and leave him for that

を記して

by

des

25

C

Night.

The next morning come to him very early, as about four a clock, and having dress'd a Quarter of a Peck of Oats very clean, put them into his Locker, and pour into it a Quart of good strong Ale, and after having mix'd the Oats and Ale very well give him them to eat, whilst you put back his Dung and foul Litter, and make clean his Stable, but if he will not eat wash'd Oats then give him dry; but be sure put no Beans to them. When he has done eating, Bridle him, and tie him up to the Ring, and dress him. When he is dress'd saddle him; then throw his Cloth over him, and let him stand till the Hounds are ready to go forth. But be fure not to draw your Saddle Girths straight till you are ready to mount, lest by that means he become fick. But generally old Horses are fo crafty, that when an ignorant Groom goes to girt them up hard, they will freth out their Bodies to fuch a bigness by holding their Wind, (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that twill appear diffcult togirt them; but afterwards they let go their When Wind, and their Bodies fall again.

uzzle

idle,

rting

ing;

h is

is

the

this be

im

ck,

be

ar

ut

k

d

r

2

When the Hounds are unkernell'd, (which should make till Sun-rising) go into the Field along with them, and rake your Horse up and down gently till a slee be started; always observing to let him smell wother Horses Dung, (if he be desirous of it) which all provoke him to empty himself, and let him stand sid when he does so: and if you meet with any dead by, Rushes, or such like, ride him upon them, and by whistling provoke him to empty his Bladder.

When the Hare is started, you are not to follow the Hounds as the other Hunters do, but to confider, that this being the first time of your Horses buntin, he is not fo well vers'd in the different forts of Grounds as to know how to gallop smoothly, and with use on them; and therefore you are not to put him as yet to above half his speed, that he may learn to carry a staid body, and to mannage his Legs both upon Fallows, and Greenswarth. Neither are you to gallop him often, nor any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and breeding in him a dislike to this Exercise; but observing to cross the Fields still to your best advantage, you shall make in to the Hounds at every default, and still keep your Horse (as much as these Rules will allow you) within the Cry of the Dogs, that he may be us'd to their Cry; and you will find, that in a very short time he will take fuch delight and pleasure in their Musick, that he will be defirous to follow them more eagerly.

Now if at any time the Chase be lead over any Carpet ground, or sandy High-way, on which your Horse may lay out his body smoothly, you may there gallop him for a quarter or half a mile, to teach him to lay out his Body, and to gather up his Legs, to enlarge and shorten his Stroke, according to the different Earths he gallors

Earc

after

fb

floo

clo

wh

hit

to

b

I

gallops on, as if on Green-swarth, Meadow, Morn Heath, &c. then to stoop, and run more on the Shoulders, if amongst Mole-hills, or over high ridges and fur rows, then to gallop more roundly, and in less compass, or according to the vulgar phrase two up and two down, that thereby he may strike his Furrow clear, and avoid setting his Fore-seet in the Bottom of it, and by that means fallover; But by this way of galloping, tho he should happen to set his Feet in a surrow, yet carrying his body so round and resting on the Hand in his gallop, would prevent his Falling; and to this perfection nothing but use, and such moderate

Exercise can bring him.

According to these Rules you may spend your Time in Hunting, till about Three a Clock in the Afternoon, at which time you shall have him home in a foot pace as you came out in the Morning, and befure that he be cool before you bring him out of the Field; and as you are going home confider with your felf, whether or no he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time;) but if not, then gallop him gently on some Skelping Earth, till he sweat at the Roots of his Ears, a little on his Neck, , and in his Flanck, but it must be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compullion of Whip and Spur! and then when he is cool as aforesaid, have him home and Stable him, and befure avoid walking him in hand to cool him, for fear he cool too fast, or washing him, for fear of causing an obstruction of the natural course of the Humours, (which are thought by some Horse-men to abound most in Winter) and by that means cause an inflamation in his Legs, which is the Parent of the Scratches:

When you set him up in his Staul (which must be well litter'd againsthis coming home) tye up his Head

fuy.

on.

and

OW

tom

ray

na

on

nd

te

le

a

him well with dry Straw all over both Head, Neck, suchowels, Belly, Flank, Buttocks and Legs; and afterwards rub his Body over with a dry cloth till there be not a wet hair left about him, then take of his Saddle and rub the place where the Saddle flood dry likewise, and so cloath him with his ordinary Cloaths with all speed, for fear least he take cold; and if you think him too hot throw a spare cloath over him, to prevent his cooling too fast, which you may abate when you please, and so let him stand on his Snaffle Two Hours or more, stirring him with your Whip now and then in his Staul, to to keep his Legs and Joynts from growing stiff.

When that time is expired, and you think it may be throughout cold, then come to him, and having drawn his Bridle rubbed his Head, and pick'd his Feet from Durt and Gravel which he may have gather'd abroad, put on his Coller, and fift him a Quart, or three Pints of Oates, and mix with them a handful of clean dusted Hempseed, and give them to him; but give him not above the quantity prescribed, for fear of taking away his stomack, which will be very much weakned through the heat of his body, and want of water. Then remove the spare-cloth (if you have not done it before,) for fear of keeping him hot too long, and when he has eaten his Corn, throw a pretty quantity of Hay clean dusted, on his Litter, and let him rest two or three Hours, or there abouts.

Whilest you are absent from him, you shall prepare him a good Mash, made of half a Peck of Mants well ground, and water that is boiling bot, observing to put no more water than your Mants will sweeten, and your Horsewill drink, and then stir them together with a Rudder, or stick and then cover it over with cloths, till the water has extracted the strength of the Malt, which will be evident to your rafte and touch, for twill be almost as sweet as blaney, and feel ropy like Birdlime; then when it is cold, that you can scarce perceive it to smooth, offer it to your Horse, but not before, lest the steam ascend into his Nostrile, and thereby offend him with its scene; and when he has drunk the water, let him if he please eat the Malt also. But if he resule to drink, yet you must give him no other water that night, but by placing it in one Corner at the head of his Stall, in such manner that he may not throw it down, (which you may effect by nailing a Spar across before the Bucket) let it stand by him all Night, that he may drink at his pleasure.

Now you will find this Mash, or (as some call it) Horse-Caudle, very beneficial to your Horse on several Accounts; for it will comfort his Stomach, and keep his Body in a due temperate heat after his days Hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of Grease and gross humours, which have been dissolved by this Days labour, and the sume of the Malt-graim, after he has drunk the water, will disperse watry Humours, which might otherwise amoy his head, and is allowed by all Horsemen to be very advantageom on that account.

When he has eaten his Mash, then strip him of his Clothes, and run him over with your Curry-comb, French Brush, Hair Patch, and Wollen Cloath, and clothe him up again, and then cleanse his Legs as well as his Body of all Dirt and Filth which may annoy them, as you have been directed in Dressing; then remove him into another Stall (that you may not wet his Litter) and bathe his Legs all over from the Knees with warm Beef-broth, or, which is better, with a quart of warm Urine, in which four Ounces

of

d S

47.15

or E

hox

reft

nig

to i

1

TOT

flee

fla

YOU

15

fer

if

(7

P Pit

ci

y

3

t

As the Peter hath been diffolv'd; then rub his Legs when you came in from Water, fet him into his Seall, and give him a good Home-feeding of Oats, or Bread, (which he likes best) or both, and having thook good store of Litter under him, that he may not the better, and thrown him Hay enough for all night on it, shut up your Stable close, and leave him

whis Rest till morning.

feel

you

rfe,

ils.

he

falt

ive

in

er

ef-

it

à.

t)

PLIF

d

The next morning come to him betwixt fix and feven a clock, for that is time enough, because the Mormings reft is as pleasant and refreshing to the Horse as it is to a Man, for then the meat being concocted the her is more sweet, and the brain is at that time more thin and pure. If he be laid diffurb him not, but flay till he rifes of his own accord, (aud to know this you ought to have a private peep hole) but if he be rifen, then go to him, and the first thing you must do is to put back his Dung from, his Litter, and to obferve what Colour it is of: observe whether it be grease, and shining outwardly, and break it with your Feet, that you may fee whether it be so inwardly; for if it be grease and foul either within or without. (which you may know by its outward shining, and by foots like Soap, which will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and harder than it was, it is a fign that your former days hunting was beneficial to him, by diffolving part of the inward glut which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt you must increase his labour but a little. But if you perceive no fuch Symptoms, but that his Dung appears bright, and rather foft than hard, without greafe, and in a word that it holds the same pale yellow colour it did before you hunted him, then tis a fign that days Hunting made no disolution, but that his Body remains in the same state still, and therefore the next days Hunting you may almost double his Labour.

When

When you have made these Remarks from his Dung, you shall then proceed to order him as in his days of Rest, that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of Oats before Water; then dress, wa-

ter, air, feed, &c. as in the first Fortnight.

Now as to his Feeding you must remember the way I have already shew'd, of changing his Food; as giving him one while Bread, another Oats, a third time Oats and Beans, which you find he likes best; observing always, that variety will sharpen his Appetite. But Bread being his chief Food, as being more nourishing and strong than the others, you must feed him

often'ft with it.

And as in the first Fortnight I directed you to obferve his Digestion, whether it were quick or slow, so
likewise must you do now that he begins to eat Bread.
If you find him quick, and that he retains his Bread
but a little while, then (as I have already directed)
you shall only slightly chip your Bread; but if he be
slow, and retains it long, cut away all the Crust, and
give it to some other Horse, and feed your Hunter
only with the Crum; for that being light of Digestion soon converts to Chyle and Excrements, but the
Crust being slow of Digestion requires by reason of its
hardness longer time before it be concotted.

The next day after he has refted, you shall hant him again as you did the first day, observing from the Remarks you have made, to hunt him more or less, according as you find the temper and constitution of your Horse; and when you are return'd home, observe to put in Practice the same Rules which you have just now read; and thus hunt your Horse three times a week for a formight together, observing to give him his full feeding, and no other Scowrings but Mashes, and Hempseed, which is equal in its Vertue to the for-

ie,

Dan

A

not

my

and

beta

EXT

met

the

nen

MY

miš

Pr

mo

oper 1 b

by

qu

by

be

fm

Ki

20

ni

te

D

0

8

4-

he

as

)-

.

n

ò

d

e

in and only carries off Superfluous Humours in the Dung.

And here before I conclude this Chapter, I cannot but take notice of the Abuse of Scowrings, and my own Ignorance, being led away by the perswasions and my mistaken spinion of other mens Skill, who heanse they could talk of giving a Scowring, (tho Erperience has fince taught me, that they never hew the Operation of them, nay nor the Disposition of the Horses which they kept) I thought most emiment and skilful Horse-Doctors. But indeed I found to my Coft, that my Ignorance led me into the same mistake with those men, that take Physick by way of Prevention, and by that means render their Bodies more lyable to Diseases, their Pores being so much mened by Physick. In like manner I found that tho Ibought Horses of found and frong Constitutions, yet by following the falle Rules and Practices of Others I mickly brought them to weak babits of Body; and by continually using them to unnecessary Physick, to be tender, and apt to take Cold and Surfeits on every small occasion: which taught me to know, that as Kitchen Physick is best for a Man, (unless he languish under some more than ordinary Distemper) so natural and true found Feeding is best for a Horse, it strengthning his Constitution, and keeping his Body in good temper; for a Horse that is full-fed with good natural Diet is not subject to costiveness; and from hence I infer, that a Horse which is found, and in health, and of a ftrong Constitution, needs little Physick more than good wholsom meat, and his fill of it, provided you order him as he ought to be when he is come from Hunting.

But as Horses no more than Men are free from Di-E stempers,

par you

gu

hir

hi

the

15

to

He it ag

da

are

ly M

F

as

W

há

it

DI

ih

t

stempers; but by reason of abuses and unkind Masters are rather more liable to them, (it being become a Proverb, As many Diseases as a Horse); so when a any time they happen recourse must be had to Physics, and as it is good in its true use, so I shall in the subsequent part of my Discourse set down when, and what manner of Scourings are useful, and how they are to be applied with skill, and safery; of which in its proper place.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Horses Third Fortnights Keeping, and first thorough. Sweating.

By this time your Horse will be drawn so clean, his Flesh will be so inseam'd, and his Wind so improved, that he will be able to ride a Chase of three or four Miles without much blowing, or swearing; and you will find by his Chaul and Flank, as well as his Ribs, that he is in an indifferent good state of body, and therefore this next Fortnight you must increase his labour, by which means you will come to a true knowledge of what he is able to do, and whether or no he will ever be fit for Plates, or a Match.

When your Horse is set over night, and sed early in the morning. (as in the last Fortnights Preparation for Hunting was directed) then go into the Field with him, and when your Horse is empty, as he will be by that time you have started your Game, you shall follow the Dogs at a good reand rate, as at half-speed,

hed, and so continue till you have kill'd or lost your first Hare. This will so rack your Horses wind, and by this time he will have fo emptied himself, that he will be fit to be rid the next Chase briskly; which as foon as begun you shall follow the Dogs at three quarters speed, as near to them is confiftent with the discretion of a good Horseand a true Huntsman; but be fure as yet not

to frain him.

lers le 8

nat

fick:

ble hat

to TO-

r d is

d

3

C

During this daies Riding you shall observe your Horse's sweat, under his Saddle, and Forebowels, if it appear White like Froth, or Soap-sudds, 'tis a agn of inward glut and foulness, and that your daies sport was fully sufficient, and therefore you hall have him home, and order him as before you are directed. But if your Sport has been fo irdifferent, as not to fweat your Horse thoroughly, then you shall make a Train-fent of Four Miles long, or thereabout, and laying on your Fleetest Dogs, ride it briskly, and then having first coold him in the Field, ride him home and use him as aforefaid.

Now that I may not leave you in ignorance what a Train-scent is, I shall acquaint you that it has its Name, as I suppose, from the manner of it, viz. the trailing or dragging of a dead Cat, or Fox, (and in case of Necessity a Red-Herring) three or four Miles, (according to the Will of the Rider, or the Directions given him) and then laying the Dogs on the fcent.

But this Cavent let me give all Huntimen, to to keep about two or three Couple of the fleetest Hounds you can possibly procure for this purpose only. For although I have feen skillful Sportsmen use their Harriers in this Case, for their diversion;

516

the

hris

mal

4or das

upc

10

æl

Ou

Ou

car

int

led

Sn

Pi

tł

b

t

f

2

1

yet I would perswade them not to use them to it often; for it will teach them to lie off the Lim, and sling to wide, that they will never be worth any thing.

When you unbridle your Horse, give him instead of Hempseed and Oates, a handsome quantity of Rye bread, (to which end I would advise you to bake a Peck Loaf for this purpose) which being cold and moist will assist in cooling his body after his Labour, and prevent Costiveness, to which you will find him addicted, then give him Hay, and afterwards a Mash, and then order him in all points

as formerly.

The next morning if you perceive by his Dung that his Body is distempred, and he is hard and bound, then take some Crumms of your Rye-bread and work it with as much sweet fresh Butter as will make it into Paste, and then making it into Balls about the bigness of a large Wallnut, give him s or 6 of them in the morning fasting; and then fetting on your Saddle upon his Cloth, mount him, and gallop him gently in some adjoyning grass-Plat, or Close till he begin to sweat under his Eares, then lead him into the Stable, and let him be well rub'd, and throwing a spare Cloth over him, and good store of fresh Litter under him, let him stand two hours on the Bridle, then give him a quantity of Rye-bread, then throw him some Hay to chew upon, and after that get him another warm Malh, and then feed him with Eread and Corn as much as he will, and be fure to allow him what Hay he will eat. The next day water him abroad, and order him as in his daies of reft.

The day following Hunt him again, but by no means

meanes so feverely as you did the time before till the Afternoon, but then ride him after the Dogs briskly, and if that does not make him sweat throughly make another Train-scent and follow the Dogs three quarters speed, that he may sweat heartily. When you have a little cooled him, have him bome, and upon his first entrance into the Stable give him two or three Balls as big as Wallnuts, of this most excellent Scowring; viz.

Ounces, Gromell Broom and Parfly feeds, of each one Ounce, Anifeeds, Liquorish and Cream of Tartar, of each half an Ounce, Fallap an Ounce make the Seeds into Powder, and stir them into a Paste, with the Electuary and the Butter; knead it well, and keep it

dofe in a Pot for ufe.

As foon as you have given your Horse these Balls rub him dry, then dress him and cloath him up watm and let him stand two or three hours on the Snaffle, then give him two or three handfulls of Rye-bread, and order him as you did before as to Hay Provinder, Mash &c. and so leave him till the Mor-

ming.

rth

ad

Rye

ke

old

his

pill

er.

its

id is

0

n

1

1

Then come to him and first observe his Dung whether it keep the true Colour, or whether it appear dark, or black, or red and high coloured; next whether it be loose and thin, or hard and dry. If it be of the right colour I mean Pale yellow tis a sign of bealth, strength and cleanness; if it be dark, or black, then tis a sign there is Grease and other ill humours stirred up which are not yet evacuated: if it be red and high coloured, then tis a token that his Blood is Feaverish and distempered through inward heat: if it be loose and thin, tis a sign of Weakness, but if hard and dry, it shews the horse to be hor inwardly, or else that he is a foul feeder: But if his dung carry a

Ito

200

be

m

th

WHP

medium betwixt hard and foft, and smell frong, tist fign of Health and Vigour.

When these Observations have been taken notice of concerning his Dung, then you shall feed, dress, water, &c. as in his former days of Reft; observing always to give variety, and his belly full of Corn and Bread. The next have him abroad in the Field again, but by no means put him to any labour, further than to rake him from hill to hill after the Dogs, to keep him within found of their Cry; for the defign of this Day's Exercise is only to keep him in breath, and get him an Appetite. Observe as you ride, that you let him fand still to dung; and look back on it that you may draw Inferences from the Faces. When the Day is well nigh frent bring him home without the least sweat, and order him as at other times, only obferve to give no Scourings, nor Rye-bread. You may if you please water your Horse this day, both at your going into the Field and at your coming Home, obferving to gallop after it, to warm the water in his Belly. The next is a day of Reft.

In the fame manner in every respect as you have spent this Week you must spend the next likewise, without alteration in any point; and by that time assure your self that your Horse will be drawn clean enough for any ordinary Hunting; so that afterward observing to hunt your Horse moderately twice or thrice a week, according to your own pleasure, and the constitution of your Horses body, you need not question but to have him in as good state and strength as you would desire, without danger of his Wind, Eye-sight, Feet, or Body.

Now when you have thus according to art drawn your Horse clear, you will perceive those signs which

Itold you of, verified; for his Flesh on his short Ribs and Buttocks will be as hard as a Board, his Flank will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double skin, and chaps so clean from Fat, Glut or Kernels, that you may hide your Fifts in them; and above all his Exercise will give plain Demonstration of the Truth of this Art, for he will run three or four Miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce blowing, I fay when this is perfected, you must avoid all scourings after hunting, (because Nature has nothing to work on) but Rye-bread and a Mash, except wour Horse be now and then troubled with some little Poze in the Head; and then you shall bruise a little Mustard feed in a fine linnen Rag, and freep it in a quart of strong Ale for three or four hours, and then untying the Rag mix the Mustard-seed and the Ale with a quarter of a Peck of Oats, and give it your Horfe.

Lastly, when your Horse is drawn clean, you must beware that he grows not foul again thro want of either Airing, or Hunting, or any other Negligence, lest by that means you procure to your self and your Horse double pains and labour, and no thanks from

your Mafter.

ice

efs,

ing

ınd

n,

an

ep

of

be

H

at

ie

e

7

try

bo

to

an

th

ti

c h

CHAP. VII.

Of making a Hunting-Match, its advantages and disadvantages.

Since many Persons of Honour delight in good Horses, both for Humers as well as Gallopers, it may not be improper to speak a word in this place concerning the Advantages or Disadvantages which happen in making of Hunting-Matches; since he that proceeds cautiously and upon truegrounds in matching his Horse is already in a great measure sure of gaining the Prize, at least if the Proverb be true, that a Match well made is half won.

The first thing to be consider'd by him that designs to match his Horse, for his own advantage and his Horses credit, is this; That he do not flatter himself in the opinion of his Horse, by fancying that he is swifter than the wind, when he is but a flow Galloper; and that he is whole-running, (that is, will run four miles without a fobb at the height of his speed) when he is not able to run a mile.

And the ground of this Error I suppose arises from a Gentleman's being mistaken in the speed of his Hounds, who for want of Tryal against other Dogsthat have been really sleet, has supposed his own to be swift, when in reality they were but of middle speed; and because his Horse (when trained) was able to follow them all day, and at any hour to command them upon deep as well as light Earths, has therefore false

failly concluded him to be swift as the best; but upon tryal against a Horse that has been rightly train'd after Hounds that were truly sleet, has to his cost bought his Experience, and been convinc'd of his Error.

Therefore I would perswade all Lovers of Hunters to get two or three Couple of try'd Hounds, and once or twice a week to follow after them a Train-scent; and when he is able to top them on all forts of Earth, and to endure Heats and Colds stoutly, then he may the better relie on his Speed and Toughness.

it

ce

h

it

-

f

That Horse which is able to ride a Hare-chase of five or fix miles briskly, and with good courage, till his body be as it were bath'd in |weat; and then upon the death of the Hare, in a nipping frosty morning can endure to stand still, till the sweat be frozen on his back, fo that the cold may pierce him as well as the heat; and then even in that extremity of Cold to ride another Chase, as briskly and with as much conrage, as he did in the former: That Horse which can thus endure hears and colds oftenest is of most value amongst Sports-men. And indeed tis not every Horse that is able to endure such extraordinary Toyl; and I my felf have feen very brave Horses to the Eye, that have rid the first Chase to admiration, that when the Cold had struck to them, and they began to grow stiff, have flagg'd the second, and given quite out the third Heat.

Therefore to make a judgment of the goodness of your own Horse, observe him after the death of the first Hare, if the Chase has been any thing brisk; if when he is cold, he shrinks up his Body, and draws his Legs up together, tis an infallible token of want of Courage; and the same you may collect from the sackning of his Girths after the first Chase, and from

the fetting of his Teeth, and the dulnels of his Comme nance; all which are true marks of Faintness, and Tyring: and therefore there is no reliance on fucha

Horse, in case of a Wager.

But if on the contrary, you are Master of a Horse (not only in your own judgment, but in the opinion of knowing Horsemen) that is approved for Speed, and Toughness, and you are desirous to match him, or otherwife to run for a Plate; I will to the best of my power tell you the advantages that are to be gain'd in Matching.

But before I enter upon the subject propos'd, I think it convenient to tell you the way our Ancestors had of making their Matches, and our modern way of deciding Wagers. First then the old way of Tryal was by running fo many Train-scents after Hounds, (as was agreed on between the farties concern'd) and a Bell-Course, this being found not to uncertain and more durable than Hare-hunting, and the advantage confifted in having the Trains led on Earth most fuitable to the nature of the Horses. Now others chose to bunt the Hare till fuch an bour prefix d, and then to run the Wild-goofe-Chafe, which, because it is not known to all Huntsmen, I thail explain the use and manner of it

The Wildgoofe Chase received its Name from the manner of the flight which is made by Wildgeefe, which is generally one after another: fo the two Horfes after the running of Twelvescore Yards, had liberty, which Horse soever could get the leading, to ride what ground he pleas'd; the hindmost Horse being bound to follow him, within a certain distance agreed on by Articles, or elfe to be whipt up by the Triers or Judges which rode by, and which ever

Horse could distance the other won the Match.

But

C

2

0

g

g

0

t

.

But this Chase was found by Experience so inhumone, and so destructive to good Horses, especially when two good Horses were match'd; for neither being able to distance the other, till ready both to sink under their Riders through Weakness, oftentimes the Match was fain to be drawn, and left undecided, tho both the Horses were quite spoyl'd.

3

ſę

d

r-

y

of

al

s, d

d

.

e

n

t

d

e

)

This brought them to run Trainscents, which afterwards was chang'd to three Heats, and a straight Course; and that the Lovers of Hunting-horses might be encouraged to keep good Ones, Plates have been erected in many places of this Land, purposely for Hunters, and some their Articles exclude all others, (namely Gallopers) from Running.

But whether you design to match your Horse against any One Horse in particular, or to put him in for a Plate, where he must run against all that come in general; yet tis necessary that you know the nature and disposition of your Horse, before you venture any wager on his head; that is to fay, whether he be bot and fiery, or cool and temperate in Riding; whether he be very swift, but not hard at bottom, or flow, but yet fure, and one that will flick at mark; on what fort of Earths he most delights to gallop on, whether to climb or run down hills, or elfe to skelp on a Flat; whether to run on deep, or light Grounds; whether on rack-ways, or Carpetground ; whether amongst Mole-hills, or on Meadow ground; whether he be well-winded, or thick winded, fo that tho he will answer a Spur, and mend upon Lapping, yet he must have ease by Sobs. All these things must be known, to the end that you may draw those advantages from them which may be offer'd in matching; as this for Example. If

· If your Horse be hot and fiery, tis odds but he is fleet withall (for generally those Horses are so) and and delights to run upon light and hard flats; and must be held hard by the Rider that he may have time to recover Wind by Sobbs; or elfe his Fury will choak him. But whereas it is the general opinion that nothing that is violent can be lasting; and therefore that it is impossible that such hot mettled Horfes can be tough and hard at bottom, this I conceive may be but a popular Errour; for I have fometimes feen by Art those two Qualities reconciled, at least so far, as to make the most Fiery Horse managable, and to endure both Whip and Spur; and then tho he should not prove at bottom so truly tough as the craving Drudge, yet by his Riders management his Speed shall answer it in all points and serve in its fread; But to return to my Subject ..

The best way to March such a Horse is to agree to run Train-scents and the sewer the better for you, before you come to the Course: Also in these Train-scents the shorter you make your distance the better: and above all things be sure agree to have the leading of the first Trayn, and then making choice of such grounds as your Horsemay best shew his Speed, and the Fleetest Doggs you can procure, give your Hounds as much Law before you, as your Tryers will allow, and then making a loose try to win the Match with a Wind; but if you saile in this attempt then Beare your Horse, and save him for the Course at last.

But if your Horse be flow, yet well Winded, and a rue Spurr'd Nagg; then the more Trainscents you run before you come to run the straight Course the better. Observing here too, to gain the leading of the first Train, which in this case you must lead it upon such deep Earths that it may not end near any light Ground. For this is the Rule received among

Horle-

Hersemen that the next Train is to begin where the last ends, and the last train is to be ended at the starting Post of the Course. Therefore observe to end

your last on deep Earths as well as the first.

d

è

H

n

.

.

e

-

it

i-

S

t

S

4

>

g

d

r.

II

b

n

u

e

tys

In the next place have a care of making a Match of a suddain, and in Drink, for fear least you repent when you are Sober. Neither make a match against a Horse, which you do not know, without first confulting some skilfull or trusty Friend, on whose Judgment and Honesty you can fafely rely, and who is able to give a good Account of your Adversaries Horfe's Speed and his manner of Riding; and if you find him any ways correspondent to your own in speed or goodness be not too Peremptory to venture, but upon some reasonable probabilities of Winning: for tis neither Braggs nor Fancy that will make your Horse run one jot the better, or your Adversarys the worse: and remember this, that there is no Horse so good, but there may be another as good; and then if you proceed on good Grounds, and true Judgment, you may be the bolder to go on, and stand to your March, notwithstanding the opinion of other men may be against you.

One material Advise I had like to have forgot and that is this; before at no time give advantage of Weight, for you will find the inconvenience of it at the latter end of the Day: for tho a Horse feel it not when he is fresh, yet it will sink him very much when he grows weak: a Horse-length lost by odds of Weight in the first Train, may prove a distance in the streight Course at last; for the Weight is the

same every Heat tho his ftrength be not.

But, if on the other side you gain any advantage of Weight, article that the Horseman shall ride so much weight as you are agreed on, besides the Saddle, for by this means the Rider (if he be not weight of

him felf) must carry the dead weight somewhere about him, which will be troublesome to the Rider as well as the Horse; and the more to the latter, since tis more remote from his Back then if it were in the Saddle, and by consequence will more disorder his stroke if the Rider incline to either side then if it were nearer the Center; as you may see by a pair of Scales, where if the Pin be not placed exactly in the midst of the Beam, the longest part (as being most distant from the Center) will be the heaviest.

Now as to the time that you take for dyeting, that must be according to the Nature of your Horie, and the present state of Body he is in; for the he may be clean enough for ordinary Hunting, yet he may be far distant from that perfect State of Body, that is required in a March, and to keep him in such strict Dyet all the Season, (except on such extraordinary

Occasions) would be an unnecessary Expence,

As to your Horses Disposition for Running, you must know it by use and Observation, for in this Point Horses very much differ, for some run best when they are high in case, others when they are in middle Condition of Flesh, and some again when they appear to the Eye Poor, and Low in Flesh; therefore according to your Horses Nature, and the time required to bring him into his best State, you must order your day for the tryal of your March to be.

But if you design to put him in for some Hunting Plate; there neither the choice of your Ground, the Weight, nor the Horses you are to run against are at your disposal, but you must take them as you find them; only the time for bringing your Horse into a good Condition is at your own discretion, since you may begin as soon or as late as you please to keep him in strict Dyet, the time for all Plates being usually fixt, and annually the same.

CHAP.

Pl

an wl

of

th

Gr

wa

of

pen

bo

the

wit

he

at

VOI

v h

fer

e.

is e

yytty

i st

CHAP. IX.

Of the Ordering the Hunter, for a Match or a Plate.

When you have either Matcht your Horse, or entertained thoughts of putting him in for a Plate, you must consider that you ought to reserve a Month at the least, to draw his Body perfectly clean, and to refine his Wind to that degree of perfection which Art is capable of attaining to.

First then you must take an exact view of the State of his Body; both outwardly and inwardly; as whether he be low or high in Flesh, or whether he be dull and Heavy when abroad, and this occasioned through too much hard riding, or through some Grease that by hunting has been dissolved, but for

want of a scowring has not been removed.

If he appear fluggish and Melancholy from either of these causes, than give him half an Ounce of Diapente in a pint of good old Malligo Sack, which will both cleanse his Fody, and revive his Spirits: and then for the sist week you shall feed him continually with Bread, Oats and split Beans, giving him sometimes the one and sometimes the other, according as he likes, always leaving some in his Locker to eat at his own leisure when you are absent; and when you return at your Hours of Feeding to take away what is lett, and to give him fresh till you have made him wanton and playfull. To which end you shall observe that though you ride him every day merning

and evening on Airing, and every other day on Huming, yet you are not to sweathin, or put him to any violent Labour, the design this week being to keep him in Wind and Breath, and to prevent pur-

à

6

4

11

in

ot

be

W

hi

in Bo

21

Bi

W

D

siveness.

But you are to observe that both your Oats, Beans and Bread are to be now ordered after another manner then you did before, for first you must dry your Oats well in the Sun, then put them into a clean, Bag and beat them foundly with a Flail or Cudgel, till you think they are hulled; then take them out of the bagg and wimnow them clean both from hulls and duft and fo give them to your Horse as you have occasion. Your Beans in like manner must be separated from the hulls which are apt to breed Glut, and must either be thrown away or given amongst chaf to some more ordinary Horse. And for your Bread whereas before you only chipt it, now you must cut the Crust clean away, and dispose of it as you please; for tis hard of digestion, and will be apt to hear and dry his Body. And now that you are to put him into fritter keeping, you are to make a finer fort of Bread then before, as thus;

Take two Pecks of Beans, and two of Wheat, and grind them together, but not too fine, to prevent too much Bran being in the Bread; and dress one Peck of the Meal through a fine Range, and knead it up with new Ale-Barm, and the Whites of a dozen new layd Eggs, and so bake it in a Loaf by it felf, and the rest dress through a Boulter, and knead it only with Ale and Barm; and use it in all other points as the former: Now the Peck-loaf is to be given your Horse when you fer him, and the other at ordinary

times.

This Bread affifts Nature much in increasing the Strength, Courage and Wind of your Horse, provided

te

to

r.

715

1-

11

1,

ill

ne

ft

n.

ne

75

e

e

172

of

y.

+

2,

ď

t

e

d

n

d

y

S

y

ded you add thereto (as I have always told you) true Labour, as any Bread whatsoever; nay even as either of M. De-Greys sorts of Bread, which he mentions in his Compleat Horseman 4° p. 232 ed. 4° especially his last, which he says is better Bread, and a greater Color; and which he prescribes to make thus,

Take wheat Meal one Peck, Rye-meal, Beans and One-meal, all ground very small, of each half a Peck, Aniseeds, and Licerish, of each one Ounce, White Sugar-Candy sour Ounces all in fine Powder, the yolk; and whites of Twenty Eggs well beaten, and so much VV hite-wine as will knead it into a Passe, make this into great Loaves, bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this Bread, but chip away the One side.

Now the Reason why I have cited this is, because Ihave heard several (who would be thought knowing Horsemen) applied this very Bread beyond any other to be met with in any Book, tho for my part I can find nothing excellent in the whole Composition.

For first Oat-meal tho it be strong, yet it is a dry grain, hard of digestion, and a great dryer up of the Blood. The Wheat is of a drying quality likewise, tho it be light; for the Aniseed and Licorish, they are not only Physical but hot also; so that the Body becomes over heated, and thereby costive. And yet these People will not be perswaded, but these Drugs will make him long-winded; possibly they might assist him in Neighing, as some men say it doth Songsters in Vocal Musick, wherein there is no Exercise of the Body used; but where bodily strength is required, I am apt to believe it more prejudicial than prostable.

But here some will object that there is Rye and Beanes both which are moisting; especially the Rye which is both cold and moyst, and is the very reason DeGrey himself gives why he put Rye into his latter.

r

Bread, because (says he) Rye is a Loofner and a Gooler, and therefore it will make the Horse more foluble.

Thave already said, that if his Body have Feeding proportionate to his Labour, the Horse will continue in a right state of Health. Yet since he is both by Nature, and Labour might increase his natural Heat, and render him cossive, therefore I have all along prescrib d him Rye-bread alone as Physical. But here let the Horse be in what condition soever, whether bound in his body or laxative, yet Rye being a part of your Bread, our Horse must continually feed thereon, which has this undeniable disadvantage, that if he be loose in his body, this Bread (to use de Grey's own words) will make him more soluble.

And now whillfold aim discoursing of Horsebread; I cannot but condemn another curressity in some Heeders, who think, by diesling their Meal to the utmost degree of Fineness they do wonders, and that such pure Food must of necessity bring him to the greatest perfection imaginable both of Body and Wind.

But in this point I think they are deceived, for the Meal being dress'd so very fine, nothing remains but the quintesence of it; which tho it be lightned by Barm and Whites of Eggs, yet when it is above a day old twill begin to harden, (as may be observed by Manchet) and especially if Outmeal be in it, by reason of its drying quality, whereby it will not be so easie of digestion, as it would be otherwise if it had no Bran in it; and by consequence will be more apt to oppress his Stomach, if he be heated, before it be throughly digested, and so breed raw crudities, and an instammation of the blood, and by that means hazard a Surfeit, than which nothing can be of worse consequence to a Horse that is match'd.

And

1

01

b

TO

for

fe

w

21

bu

bu

ma

(wi

at.

ma

in

ing

And therefore tis that I advise, that your Horse-bread should only be made of Wheat and Beans, and that it should not be dress'd too sine, nor too course, but so, as that there may be neither so much Bran left as to annoy the blood, nor so little as to make your Bread too close and solid; but you may leave some on purpose to scowr the Maw, and surther your Horses Digestion. And thus much by way of Digression.

0

8

f

e n

1

5,

OU

re!

7

ie it

y

2

y

1-

0

10

0

90

d

ale

ad

Having spoken to the first condition of Horses which we proposed, viz. melancholly, and low in steff, we are now to speak of those which are brisk and lively; which if your Horse be so, that when you lead him out of the Stable he will leap and play about you, then you must not only avoid giving him the Scowring last mention'd of Sack and Diapeme, but any other whatsoever: for there being no foul Humours, or any superfluous matter lest in his body for the Physick to work on, it will prey upon the strength of his body, and by that means weaken it, which it must be your utmost endeavour to preserve by sull Feeding and sound Labour, which will necessarily produce a persect Wind, which is the Support of Strength, for when his Wind once fails, his Strength avails nothing.

As to the manner of it, if your Horse be ingag'd in a Hunting-match, you shall sweat him twice this week, but not by hunting him after the Hare, as formerly, but by Train-scents, since the former on this Occasion may prove deceitful; for the Hounds be very swift, yet the Scent being cold the Dogs will often be at fault, and by that means the Horse will have many Sobs, so that when he comes to run Train-scents in earnest your Horse will look for ease, his Wind being not so perfect as in Art it ought to be.

Therefore lead your Train-scents with a dead Cat

over such Grounds as you are likely to run on and hest agrees with yous Horses Humour, and be sure make choice of the Fleetest hounds you can get, and then your Horse will be kept up to the hight of his speed.

As to the Number of Train-scents that you are to ride at a time, that you must order according to your Match, or (which is better) according to your Horse's strength, and ability for performing his Heats. For if you labour him beyond his strength, twill take him off his speed, weaken his Limbs, and daunt his Spirit. If you give him too little Exercise, it will give opportunity for pursiveness and ill humours, as Glut, oct. to increase in him, and gain in him a habit of Lassness, that when he comes to be put to labour above his usual rate, he will grow restiff, and settle like a Jade, either of which will redound to your discredit, and therefore it must be from your own knowledge in the state of his Body, and not from any general Directions in writing, that you must steer your Course.

Only this Direction may be given you, that if you are to run Eight Train-Scents and the ftraight Course, more or less, you are to put him to fuch fevere labour not above twice in your whole Months keeping; and and if it be in the first Formight, twill be the better, for then he will have a compleat Fortnight to recover his strength again; and for his labour in his last Fortnight, let it be proportionate to his strength and wind, as sometimes half his Task, and then three parts of it. Only observe, that the last Tryal you make in the first Forenight be a Train-scent more than your March, for by that means you will find what he is able to do. And for the proportion of his Exercise, twice a week (as I have already faid) is sufficient to keep him in breath, and yet will not diminish or injure his Vigour.

But if your Hunting-match be to run fewer Trainfcents •

eH.

ke

nen

to

JUC

le's

or

im

rit.

or-

xc.

23-

ove

ea

lit,

in

ali-

ou

rfe,

OUT

nd

er,

ver

rt-

nd.

it.

the

ch,

do.

eek

im

Vi-

in-

nts

feents, then you may put him to his whole Task the oftner, according as you find him in condition; only observe that you are not to strain him for Ten daies at least before he ride his Maich, that he may be led into the Field in perfect strength and vigour.

If you intend him for a Plate, let him take his Heats according to this Direction, only let it be on the Place, that he may be acquainted with the Ground; and as for the Hounds you may omit them, as not being ty'd to their speed, but that of your Adversaries Horse's. But as to your Number of Heats, let them be according to what the Articles exact; only obferve that as to the sharpness of them, they must be regulated according to the temper of his strength, and the purity of his Wind. And when you beat him provide some Horses upon the Course to run at him, which will quicken his spirits, and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his pleasure. And here too the same Rule must be observed, not to give your Horse a Bloody beat for Ten daies or a Forenight before the Place be to be run for : And let his last beat which you give him before the day of Tryal be in all his Cloathes, and just skelp it over; which will make him run the next time much more vigoroufly, when he shall be stript naked, and feel the cold Air pierce him.

But now that I am speaking of sweating, it may be expected that I should lay down some Rules how to order a Horse that is in keeping for a March in Frasty weather, or in case he be an old strain'd Horse, so that you dare not heat him in hard weather, for fear

of Lameing him a fresh.

In these cases some Horsemen have practic'd sweating their Horse in the House, by laying on him multiplicity of Cloathes, being first made hos at the Fire; which is the most unnatural way of sweating a Horse

that

that can be, fince 'tis provok'd by heat atisfing from the outward parts, and is too violent, the extreamity of the heat joyn'd to the weight of the Cloathes, not

only weakning, but almost smothering him.

The next way in use, is to give him his Heat abroad, as I just now mention'd in his Cloathes, but this too is not so natural and kindly, as without his Cloathes, since here too the heat is augmented from without, and consequently abates his strength the more, and yet doth not altogether so well improve his Wind.

Therefore if either you have a Horse that has been strain'd, or otherwise the weather be unseasonable, find out some dead Jog, or sandy way, though of but half a Miles length, and there breath your horse till he sweat as you would have him. I remember to have heard of a Gentleman having match'd his horse for a very considerable summ; and the weather proving hard, took this course to keep his horse in breath; he caused Straw, and foul Litter to be spread all along round an adjoyning Close, and every morning his Servnats shook it up and turn'd it, to keep it hollow and soft, and then the Horse was had forth to gallop on it after his Water, and by this meanes kept his Horse in tollerable Wind.

Now during this Month both on his Refing-daies, and after his sweats on Heating-daies, you are to observe the same Rules which you were taught in the first week of your Third Fortnights keeping; only you are to omit all scourings, but Rye-bread and Masher; since your Horse being in so perfect a state of Body has no need of any. Only if you think there may be any occasion, and that your Horse prove Thirsty, about Eight or Nine a Clock at Night you may give him

this Julip to, cool him and quench his Thirft.

Take Barly-water Two Quarts: of Syrrup of Violets 3 Ounces, of Syrrup of Lemmons 2 Ounces, mix them uty

not

ad,

is

es,

nd

et

èп

od

uf ne

re

2

g

6 5 -1

hem together, and give them to your Horse to drink; if he refuse, fasten it from falling as you did the Mass, and so let it stand by him all Night.

During the last Formight, you must not only dry your Ones, and hull them by bearing, but likewise take half a Strike of Oats and mash them in the Whites of a dozen or twenty Eggs, and stirring them therein let them soke all Night; then the next Morning take them and spread them abroad in the Sun, till they be as dry as at first, and so give them to your Horse, and when they are spent prepare more in the same manner. This food is light of Digestion, and very sovereign for his Wind.

His Hears must be order'd as before only give them not so frequently, if he will eat his Oars without them; and for his Bread this Fortnight let it be three parts Wheat to one of Beans, and let it be ordered as before directed. And likewise if you find him inclin'd to costiveness forget not to relieve Nature by giving him Oats wash'd in two or three Whites of Eggs and Ble beat together; for that, as I have told you already, will cool his Body, and keep it moiss.

During the last Week omit giving him a Mash, only give the Barly-water as before; but as to Hay let him have as much as he will eat (which will not be much, if he have his fill of better food) till a day before he is to ride his Match, but then you must hold your hand, that he may have time to digest that which he has eaten, and then and not before you may muzzle him with your Cavezone; and be fure that day, and so till the morning he is led out, to feed him as much as possible, for such a days Labour will require fomething to maintain frength. Therefore in the Morning, an hour before you are to lead out, give him a Tost or two of White bread steept in Sack. which will revive his Spiries, and so lead him into the F 4 Field. But

But if you are to run for a Plate, which usually is not till three a clock in the After-noon, then by all means have him out early in the morning to air, that he may empty his Body, and when he is come in from Airing feed him with Tofts in Sack; for you must consider, that as too much fulness will endanger his wind, so too long fasting will cause faintness. When he has eaten what you think sit to give him, put on his Cavezone, and then having chast d his Legs soundly with Piece-grease and Brandy warm'd together, or Traineyl, (which ought likewise to be us'd daily at Noon for a Week before the Match, or longer if you see cause,) shake up his Litter, and shutting up your Stable close, and preventing any Noise to be made near him, leave him to his Rest till the hour come that he is to go into the Field.

As to platting his Main and Tail, shooing him with Plates, pitching his Saddle and Girths, and the like preparations, they are things which every Groom can instruct you in, and therefore I shall not trouble you with Rules concerning them, but in lieu thereof shall add some farther Directions how to judge of the State of your Horses Body, and if you find any

thing amis therein how to redress it.

CHAP.

CHAPIX.

Of the Means to judge of your Horses State of Body, and of curing all Casualties that may happen after Matching.

There are several Observations to be made by you during your Dieting your Horse, which if you miscarry in, may be the loss of your Match, or your share in the Plate. Therefore, that you may know how to proceed regularly in this Art, I shall endea-

your to fumme them up.

not ans nay lir-

onnd, has

Caith

on fee

14-

ar

is

th

ke

100

le

of

of

y

First then you are to observe his Chaule, his Ribs, and his Flank, according to the Rules formerly laid down; for if he be clean within, he will also be clean there; but yet he may feel clean there, when he is not clean within; and therefore those Grooms are very conceited, who upon their first view of a Horse and handling of his Flank, pronounce him to be in a true state of Body; for gentle Airing, warm Cloathing, scanty Feeding, may disperse the gross Fat and Glut, and drive it from the outward parts, so that he may appear clean, when in reality he is not so: and therefore you are only a competent Judg, who know how he was cleansed.

Therefore you are to observe, first, whether in all points you have proceeded according to Art in his Training; as whether he performs his Heats with vigor and true courage, whether he have been all along home-fed, whether you have not suffer'd pursivenels to increase by too little labour, or abated his Flesh and

Strength

frength by too much. These things are the very grounds of Keeping, and therefore ought to be scan'd

and consider'd with judgment.

Next you are to observe his manner of Feeding, as whether he holds his Appetite or no; and observe what fort of Food he likes best, and of that give him oftenest; and in case his stomach abate, keep him out longer Morning and Night, at his airings.

In like manner you must observe his Dung, which tho it be as fallacious oftentimes as a Sick-man's Water, it being liable to alteration on the change of Dyer, or being influenc'd by the air, yet being clean and in bealth it will usually be a pale yellow colour, and be voided in round Pellets; but if it be loose, and soft, it is an infallible sign of weakness, and therefore must by good Feeding be remedied as soon as possible. But if it be hard and dry, so that he cannot dung but with difficulty and straining, then you must endeavour to relieve Nature, but not with scowrings, which would weaken too much, but rather chuse to give him this Glister, which will both cool and refresh him.

ar

fp

Lod

P

b

Ja y b

(

thi

Take a Quart of Whey, of Syrrup of Violets, and Pulpe of Cassia, of each Four Ounces and of Manna half an Ounce; this will Purge him gently, and is most excellent to cool his Bowels.

The next thing to be considered is Lamness, which if it proceed from old strains you must make use of this Oyntment, which I have several times experimented with good success.

Take fresh Butter, Oyle of Bayes, Dialthea, and Turpentine of each Two Ounces, mix and boyle them together on a fost fire, and when they are well incorporated, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, amount the

the Hotle twice a day, and give him exercise, by Airing him abroad Morning and Evening a foot pace, and you will find it a certain Remedy for any Strain in the Shoulder, Clap on the back sinews, or any grief what soever, that proceeds from Strains.

But if you only fear Lameness from Old Strains, then you must be careful that your Exercise be moderate, and alwaies when you come in from Water and his Legs are rub'd dry, amoint them with such supple Oyntments, as are accounted good for the Limbs, as Linseed, Train, Sheepsfoot, Neatsfoot, Nerve-Oyle and the like; all which may be used on his daies of Rest, but on his heating daies Urine and Salteter. Some Horsemen make use of Brandie and Salteter. Some Horsemen make use of Brandie and Salteter Oyl mix'd, and bathe his Legs, and afterwards heat it in with a hot Iron, and commend it as the best thing for the Limbs of an Old stiff Horse.

But if your Horse through Negligence, or any casualeie happen to have the Grease fall into his Heels, you must endeavour ro remove it by a good found heat, and a scowring after it, and apply to his Legs

this Poultifs.

rery

an'd

ng,

rve

im im

ich

Va-

et,

in

be

it

by

th

to

d

is

d

Take of Honey a Pound, of Turpentine, common Gum, Meal of Linseed, and the Meal of Fenugreek, of each 4 Ounces, and the Powder of Bay berries well search'd 3 Ounces, mix and boyle all these well together; then take it off, and put to it a Pint of White-wine, then boyle it again, till it be very thick: and with this, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, lap his legs about Plaisfer-wise, and renew it only once in three daies, and it will certainly bring his Legs within compass-

If your Horses Feet be bad, either surbated, or foundred, then instead of Cow-dung, you may stop them with blew-clay and Vinegor tempered toge-

ther,

ther, and on his Heating-daies at Night stop them with grey-sope, and keep it in with a peice of an old Shoo-sole.

If your Horse be troubled with any Dose in his head give him Mustard-seed amongst his Provender, but is it be a worse Cold, which you will perceive by his Railing, then give him this Lambitive, or Electu-

ary.

Take of Honey and Treacle, each half a Pound, having mixt theie together, add to them Powder of Cumminsced, Liquorish, Bay-berries, Annisceds, each an Ounce, mix all theie together, and put them to the Honey and Treakle, which will make it of a thick consistance. If your horse hath a Cold, instead of his Oates before Water, give him the quantity of a Walnut of this Lambitive on the top of a stick or in a Spoon, and let him lick it off; and the same do after siring, when first you come in, and you will find the advantage of it.

These at present are all the Inconveniencies that I can call to mind, which are lyable to Hunters, or Gallopers in their Keeping; and tho through inadvertency, or want of memory I should have omitted any, yet from these Grounds, you may form your Remedies for any common Accident or Distemper; and now that we draw near to the Match-day, and the End of our Discourse, we will only discuss some sew Rules relating to the Tryal of the Hunting Match. I mean Rules to be observed in Riding, and so con-

clude.

Ò

•

old his

by

of

an he n-

tes.

of

d

en

t.

I

1-

1-

CHAP. X.

Of riding a Hunting-Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the Advantages belonging to each.

Have endeavoured to shew the Necessity and the Manner of Training and Dieting Horses, but this alone is not sufficient to the winning of either Match or Plate Without a knowing and an honest Rider, and a skilful Judge or Tryer be joyn'd thereto; but since no man is fitter to ride the Horse than he that has the training of him, I shall lay down some general Rules how to ride to the best Advantage either a Hunning-Match, or three Heats and a Course for a Plate.

The first Requisite in a Rider, next to faithfulness in his Trust, is to have a good close Seat, his Knees being held firm to his Saddle-skirts, his Toes turn d inward and his Spurs outward from the Horses sides, his lest hand governing his Horses Month, and his right commanding his Whip; observing during all the Tryal throughout to sit sirm in his Saddle, without waving, or standing up in his Stirrops, which very much incommodes the Horse, notwithstanding the conceited Opinion of some Jockeys that it is a becoming Seat.

When you four your Horse, firite him not hard with the Calves of your Legs, as if you would beat

TH

A

be

hi

to

F

I

y

y forth

y

G

n

S

0

0

t

beat the wind out of his body, buff just turn your Toes outwards, and bring the Spurs quick to his sides; and such a sparp stroke will be more serviceable to the quickning of your Horse, and sooner draw blood. Be sure not to spur your Horse but when there is occasion, and avoid spurring him under the fore bowels, between his Shoulders, and his Girths near the Heart (which is the tend'rest place) till the last Extremity.

When you whip your Horse let it be over the shoulder on the near side, except upon hard running, and when you are at all; then be sure with a strong jerk to strike your Horse in the Flank, for there the skin is sender st, and most sensible of the Lash,

Observe when you whip or sour your Horse, and that you are certain he is at the top of his speed, if then he clap his Ears in his Pole, or whish his Tail, be sure that you bear him hard, and give him as much comfort as ever you can, by saving his Snaffle to and fro in his Mouth, and by that means forcing him to open his Mouth, which will comfort him, and give him wind.

If there be any high wind stirring when you ride, observe if it be in your Face to let your Adversary lead, and to hold hard behind him till you see your opportunity of giving a Loose; yet you must observe to ride so close to him, that his Horse may break the Wind from yours, and that you by stooping low in your Seat may shelter your self under him, which will assist the strength of your Horse. But if the Wind be in your Back, ride exactly behind him, that your Horse may alone enjoy the benefit of the Wind, by being as it were blown forward, and by breaking it from him as much as you can possible.

cs;

he

Be

ca-

ty.

ul-

be

rk

n

dif

l, h

d

0

a

Next observe what Ground your Horse delights to run best on, bearing your Horse (as much as your Adversary will give you leave) on level Carpet-ground, because your Horse naturally will be desirous to spend himself more freely thereon. But on deep Earths &c. give him more liberry, because he will naturally favour himself thereupon. Be sure, if you are to run up his, to favour your Horse and bear him, for sear of running him out of wind; but down his, (if your Horses Feet and Shoulders will endure it, and you dare venture your own Neek) always give him a Loose.

Only take this for a general Rule, that if you find your Horse to have the Heels of the other, that then you be careful to preserve his Speed till the last Trainfeent, if you are not to run a straight Comfe, but if so, then till the Confe, & so to husband it then too, that you may be able to make a Push for it at the last Post.

Next you are to observe the nature of your Oppofires Horse, and if he be fiery, then to run just behind, or just cheek by joul, and with your Whip make as much noise as you can, that you may force him on fasser then his Rider would have him, and by that means Spend him the sooner. Or else keep just before him upon such a slow Gallop, that he may either over reach or by treading on your Horses Heels (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Observe on what ground the contrary Horse runs worst and on that Earth be sure to give a loose that your Adversaries being forced to follow you, may hazzard stumbling, or clapping on the back Simms.

Observe likewise in your Riding the several Helps and Corrections of the Hand the Whip and the Spur, and when and how often he makes use of them; and when you perceive that his Horse begins to be blown by any of the former Symptoms, as Whisking his Tail;

clap-

clapping down his Ears, holding out his Nose like a Pig &c. you may then take it for granted that he is at the top of what he can do; therefore in this case observe how your own rides, and if he run cheerfully and strongly without Spurring, then be sure keep your Adversary to the same speed without giving him ease and by that means you will quickly bring him to

日はなり

7

de

Ol

b

it

Ī

a

h

F

2

then

give out, or elfe diftance him.

Observe at the End of every Train-sent what Condition; the other Horse is in; and how he holds out in his Labour; which you may be able to give a judgment of by his Looks, the Working of his Flank, and the flackness of his Girths. For if he look dull tis a fign his Spirits fail him; if his Flanks beat much, tis a token that his Wind begins to fail him, and then of necessity his Strength must too. If his Wind fail him, then his Body will grow thin and appear tuckt up, which will make his Girths appear flack to the Eye. And therefore take this for a Rule that there is no greater Sign of Weakness then this which I have last mentioned; fo that if your Adversaries Horse want girting after the first Scent, provided he were closegire at his first farting, you need not much dispair of winning your Wager.

When each Train-seem is ended (and so likewise after every Heat for a Plate) you must have dry Straw, and dry Cloaths both Linnen and Woollen which have been steep'd in Orine and Salt-Peter a day, or two, and then dryed in the Sun; and likewise one, or two of each which have been so steeped, must be brought wet into the Field; and after the Train is ended you must have two or three Helpers, and after your Groom has with a Knife of Heat (as the D. of New-Castle calls it) which is an old piece of a Sword blade, scrapt off all the Sweat from your Horses Neck, Body &c. you must see that they first with Straw, and

then with their dry Cloaths rub him dry all over, whilst others are employed about his Leggs; and as soon as they are rub'd dry then chase them with your wet cloaths, and never give over till you are called by the Judges to Start again. This will keep his Joynts plyam and nimble, and prevent any instammation which might arise from any old Strain.

The next thing to be considered is the Judges, or Tryers Office, which is to see that all things are ordered according to the Articles, which to that end ought to be publickly read before the Horses Start.

Next that each Tryer on whose side the Train is to be led, according to the Articles give directions for its leading according to the advise of the Rider, or his Knowledge of the Nature and Disposition of that

Horse on whose side he is Chose.

Next that each Tryer be so advantageously Mounted, as to ride up behind the Horses, (but not upon them) all day; and to observe that the Contrary Horse ride his True-ground, and observe the Articles in every particular, or else not to permit him to proceed.

Next that after each Train scent be ended, each Tryer look to that Horse against whom he is chosen, and observe that he be no ways relieved but with rubbing, except Liberty on both sides be given to the

contrary.

ea

he

his

er-

ep

im

to

m

ut

g- :

bi

gn

a

of

1,1

,

e.

0

ft

it

e-

7

è

e

)

L

Next, as foon as the time which is allow'd for rubbing be expired, which is generally balf an hour, they shall command them to mount, and if either Rider refuse, it may be lawful for the other to stare without him, and having beat him the distance agreed on, the Wager is to be adjudg'd on his side.

Next, the Tryers shall keep-off all other Herses from croffing the Riders, or leading them; only they themselves may be allowed to instruct the Riders by

J

word of month how to ride, whether flow, or fast, according to the Advantages he perceives may be

gain'd by his Directions.

Lastly, if there be any weight agreed on, they shall see that both Horses bring their true weight to the starting place, and carry it to the end of the Train, on penalty of losing the Wager.

The same Rules are to be observed (especially this last) by those Gentlemen which are chosen to be Judges at a Ruce for a Plate; onely they usually stay in the Stand, that they may the better see which Horse wine the Stand.

Now for running for a Plate, there are not so many Observations to be made, nor more Directions required than what have been already mention'd; onely this, that if you know your Horse to be tough at bottom, and that he will stick at mark, to ride him each Heat according to the best of his performance, and avoid as much as possible either riding at any particular Horse, or staying for any, but to ride each Heat throughour

with the best speed you can.

But if you have a very fiery Horse to manage, or one that is hard month'd, and difficult to be held, then start behind the rest of the Horses with all the coolings and gentleness imaginable; and when you find your Horse to begin to ride at some command, then put up to the other Horses, and if you find they ride at their Ease, and are hard held, then endeavour to draw them on faster; but if you find their Wind begin to rake hot, and that they want a Sob, if your own Horse be in wind, and you have a Loose in your hand, keep them up to their speed, till you come within three quarters of a Mile of the End of the Heat; and then give a Loose, and push for it, and leave to Fortune and your Horses Goodness the Event of your Success.

Many

ci

×

1

10

n

is

es

18

73

d

ď

3:

-

.

r

1

3

7

.

r

1

1

1

ŝ

ì

Many more Rules there are which may not occur at present to my memory, and others which I purposety omit; but these may serve the honest Jockey, and for the others which relate to Foul-play, as crossing, hanging on the Posts, learning on the other Horseman, joking, &c. I desire not to instruct any one in them, and could wish that they might never be made use of, but be wholly relinquished by all bonest Horseman.

Lastly, when either your Huming-Match, or your Tryal for the Plate is ended, as soon as you have rubb'd your Horse dry, you shall cloath him up, and ride him home, where the first thing you give him shall be this Drink to comfort him.

Take a Pint and a half of fweet Milk, and put three Tolks of Eggs beaten into it; then make it lakewarm, and put in three penny-worth of Saffron, and three Spoonfuls of Sallet-oyl, and give it him in a Horn.

When this is done, dress him slightly over with your Curry Comb, Brush, and Woodlen Cloth; and then bath the place where the Saddle stood with warm Sack to prevent Warbles, and wash the Spurring-places with Piss and Sale, and then afterwards annoins them with Turpensine and Powder of Fee mix'd together; and be sure let the Stable be very well lister'd; and then cloath him up with all speed, and so let him stand two hours. Then seed him with Rye-bread, after that with a very good Mash: then give him his Besty sull of Hay, and what Corn or Bread he will eat. Then bathe his Legs well with Urine and Sale-peter, leave him Corn in his Locker, and so let him rest till the next Morning; at which time order him as before directed in his days of Rest.

Thus I have imparsed to the Fublick what my own

iles rake it like.

Experience has ranghe me, relating to this bar Honfemanship. I defire no Perforto vely on it furth then they shall find it advantageons upon Praffice Tryal. If others more skilful would be as free to a municare their Observations on this Subject, this pr fitable part of Knowledge might then perhaps be in provid to perfection. The giving a Specimen was all the is here defign'd. If the Reader finds any Errors. is desir'd either to pardon or amend them. To the that either know no better, or want other Helps, this possibly may prove no unwelcome piece of Service.

ti our asismi sont to Mer contin ons , will a drick R.R.A.T.A. in

some, wikite the infliction you give him thell bethis

Par. 15.1. 19. for rorreda moot. p. 22. l, 22. for Lyare r. lyard pl 38. 1.2. for Dofer, Pole. P. AS. 1. 7. for that by r. that if by. P-47. Listor to feed him den in fome copies , 7. him, and fo feed him by Little and little. p. 41 4, 26. for Dalen Pale. p. 73. A z. for fois Surpage, r. too inhumane ib. Il a. dele for was the Spirring places

with Lagrance and Co. 150 is a mix'd together;

Salt, and if or afterwards andoing them

then werth him by while of bead, and folet him stand some the led him with Kindred after that with any ty good Alest after give tom his god matte Hangard wing, Gooder Bridd be walkent. The

lime in intig I orker, in 1 to be him of while man Men and to have established as a gaintel